Richard Coeur de Lion:
An Edition from the London Thornton Manuscript

2 Volumes

María Cristina Figueredo
Submitted for the degree of Doctor in Philosophy

VOLUME 2

University of York
Centre for Medieval Studies
December 2009
Table of Contents

Table of Contents 2
Editorial Practice 3
Richard Coeur de Lion 5
Explanatory Notes 148
Textual Notes 197
Appendix 2 227
Glossary 234
This Edition

Editorial practice

Where a form has been emended, the emendation appears in square brackets in the edited text. The emended and the original forms are given in Textual Notes. Square brackets are also used for the lacunae editorially provided, as well as to indicate an illegible part of the text. All of these are documented in Textual Notes. Whenever the scribe has repeated a word or words in error, this is recorded in Textual Notes, but the repetition is corrected and not indicated in the edited text. Likewise, the Textual Notes point out the occasional editorial deletions, but these do not appear in the edited text. The same applies to the marginalia found in the manuscript. All corrections and emendations made by Thornton himself are signalled in Textual Notes, but they are not visible in the edited text.

Expansions of contractions and abbreviations appear in italics. Superscripts that are not abbreviations – for example: \( j^c \) and \( j^s \) – are edited as a complete word. Capitals have been regularized according to modern usage; this also applies to the medieval capital F (ff). Apart from being used for all proper names, in keeping with manuscript practice, every line begins with a capital. The letters \( u/v \) are transcribed as they appear in the original. However, because the distribution of ‘i’ and ‘j’ is very irregular, it has been regularised according to modern usage. Yoghs \( (3) \) and thorns \( (p) \) have not been modernised, but the Tironian ‘et’ is shown as ‘&’. Wherever a ‘p’ is placed instead of a ‘y’, it has been regularized. The bar through ‘l’ has been disregarded. Paragraphs follow the manuscript; the larger capitals follow the manuscript layout and image.

Finally, wherever B is defective, the missing text, marked off by brackets, is supplied from C with the appropriate page number in the right-hand margin.
Glosses

The glosses are intended as an aid to understand the general idea of the line or passage; they do not offer a literal translation. Few lines are entirely glossed; for most lines, only difficult words or phrases have been glossed. If a word in the glosses starts with a capital, it refers to a capitalized word in the edited text. Glosses are separated by a slash when they do not refer to consecutive words in the edited text.
Richard Coeur de Lion
from the London Thornton Manuscript
Lorde Jhesu Criste, kyng of glory,
The faire grace and the victorye
Pat thou sent to Kynge Richerde,
Pat neuer in his lyue was funden cowerde,
It is righte gude to heryn in neste
Off his prowesche and his noble conqueste.
Also full fele romance men makis nowe,
Of gude knyghtis pat were stronge & trewe,
Of paire dedis men redys romance
Bothe in Yglonde and eke in Fraunce:
Of Duke Rowlande and of Sir Olyuere,
And also of euereylke a duggêpere.
Of Alexandere and of Sir Gawayne,
Of Kyng Arthur & of Sir Charlemayne,
How they weren gude and also curtayse,
Of Bischope Turpyn & Sir Ogere Danays.
And also of Troye men redis in ryme,
Whate werre there in olde tyme,
Of Ectoure and also of Achilles,
And whate folkes were slayne þer in þat prese.
In Fraunce bokes thies rymmes men wrote,
Bot in Ynglys lewede men knewe it note.
Lewede men kan Fraunce righte none,
Amanges ane hundrethe vnnethes one.
Bot nowe will I schewe 30w with gude chere,
3iff that 30w lyke to lythe & here,
A noble geste, I vndirstonde,
Off doughty knyghtis of Inglonde.
And therfore nowe I will 30w rede,
Of a kyng that was doughty in dede:
Kyling Richerde þat was þe werryoure beste
Þat men redis offe in any geste.
And to alle þat heris ðis ilke talkyng,
Jhesu now graunte theym his dere blyssynge!
Now schalle 3ee herken & heris byforne,
How þat kyng Richerd was getyn & borne.
His fadir was callede Kynge Henry,
In his tyme þe secounde, als I fynd sekirly.
And also, as I hafe herde men saye in sawe,
Saynt Thomas of Cantirbery was in his tyme yslawe
At Cantirbery, at his heghe awtire stone;
There many miracles hafe bene done.
When he was twenty wyntter alde,
He was a stronge knyghte & a baulde,
Bot he ne wolde no wyffe hafe, I vndirstande,
With grete tresours þoghe he þam fande.
Bot at the laste so gretely hafe his barouns hym redde
That he graunted a wyfe to wedde.
And hastily he dide sende his sandis
Thurghe many regyons & dyuerse landis,
To the faireste woman þat moughte be founden one lyue,
Men schold brynge hir hym to weyfffe.
MESSengers weren redy dyghte
To schippes þay went þat ilke same nyghte.

Þære saylles full swiftily vp þay droughe
And þe wynde þam seruede wele ynoghe.
Bot when þay come in þe myddis of þe see, as I herde saye,
No manere of wynde than þere hadde þay;
And therefore þam was full swithe woo.

Bot anoþer schipe þam cowntirde soo,
Swilkone ne sawe þay neuer none;
For alle it was of ruelle bone,
And euery nayle was golde wyre,
Off betyn golde topcastelle and are,
The maste it was of yvorye,
Off white satyne þe sayle was, sekerly,
And the ßlanße also was of tuly silke.
Als white als any mornnes mylke
This noble schipe was alle withowe,
With clothis of golde sprede alle abowte,
And theire lofe and theire wyndas,
Off azoure colour forsothe it was.
Also in þat schipe was there dighte,
Knyghtys and ladys þat weren full bright.
And also a lady therein was,
Þat schone als brighte als þe sonne dose thorowe þe glasse,
& hire men appon þe borde gane stande,
And sees þat oþer schipp es come to þaire hande.
They preyede þam faire with þeym to duelle,
And theire conselle thereto they to telle.
And they ansuerde, righte sone with skylle,
For to telle þeym alle þeire will.
They seyde: ‘To wyde landes hafe we ment,
For oure Kynge Henry forthe vs hase he sent,
For to seke to hym a qwene.
The faireste lady that [e]wre myghte bene.’
Than vp rase a kyng owte of a chayere,
With that worde they spake so faire –
The chayere wasse alle of carbuncle stone,
Swilkone ne sawghe they neuere none –
And two dukes stode hym besyde,
Ful nobill men & of mekill pride.
And faire welcomede þan euerilkone,
And into that schipe then þay went sone.
Thirtty knyghttys þan, withotttyn lye,
Weren alle in that companye.
And into þat riche full sone þay went,
Als messangers þat weren curtaise & gent.

sent / envoys
Through
To [find]/ alive
should bring her to marry him
prepared
very
very / they drew up
served them / well enough
in the open sea
there was no wind
they were extremely afflicted
encountered them
such as they had never seen
walrus ivory
made of gold
leaf gold / topcastle / oars
satìn / certainly
pennant / vermilion silk
morning
on the outside
spar / windlass
blue / in truth
arranged
asked / remain
advice
f.125va
purposed [to go]
ever
rose / chair
was / carbuncle
Such as they had never seen
much
then everyone
soon
in truth
rich [ship]
noble
Knyghtis, ladyse come pam agayne,
Seuen score and ma, I dare wele sayne,
And alle þay welcomede þam with one worde.
Þay sett þe tristis and layde the borde,
Clothis of silke thereone was sprede.
And the kynge hymselfe bede
100
That his doughtire sold forthe be fett,
And in a chayere before hym sett.
And trompetes than bygan to blawe,
And sho was þan fett forthe in a thrawe
With twenty knyghtis hire abowte,
105
That his doughtire sold forthe be fett,
And in a chayere before hym sett.
And trompetes than bygan to blawe,
And sho was þan fett forthe in a thrawe
With twenty knyghtis hire abowte,
110
And moo of ladys þat weren gaye & stowtte.
And alle they gane knelen hir vntoo,
Too wiete whate scho wolde hafe ydo.
They ete, they dranke, & made þam glade,
Als the kynge hymseluen badde.
115
And when þay hade nerehand etyn,
To speke of auntirs noghte þay forgetyn,
The kynge þam tolde than in his resoune
It come hym, he seyd, in ane avisyou
In his ownn londe, he seyde, there he come fro,
120
Into Inglonde that hym byhouede to goo.
And also his doughtire þat was hym dere,
For to wende with hym in fere.
‘And in this manere we hafe vs dighte,
Into that londe to wende full righte.’
125
And than ansuerde a messangere,
His name was hatten Sir Bernagere:
‘Forthire as nowe will we trete noghte,
Bot to my lorde sho schall be broghte.
When he hire with his eghne dose ysee,
We wote that wele apayede will he bee.’
Then wynde than rase owte of the northe este,
And seruede þam wele at the beste,
And at þe turn þay gan vp ryve,
To the lande the kynge went þan belyue.
130
The messangers to Kyng Henry hafe telde
Of that mayden so faire in felde,
There, als he laye in his heghe towre,
Off that lady als whitte als floroure.
Kyng Henry þan full sone hym dighte
135
With erles and barouns & many a kriyghte,
Agayne the lady than for to wende,
For he was ay curtayse and hende.
The dameselle thane one lande was lede,
And clothis of golde before hire were sprede,
140
And hire fadire hire byforne,
With a crownn of precyous golde cornen.
The messangers also bi ilke a syde,
And mynstralles þat weryn of mekill pride.
Kyng Henry þan lighte with grete hiynge, 
And welcomede full faire þat vncomuth kynge, 
And soo he dide þat faire lady alsoo. 
He seyde: ‘Welcome bene þe alle me too.’
To Westmynstere then þay went in fere, 
Lordis and ladys & alle þat there were.
Then trompetes bygan to þe mete to blawe, 
And scho was fochede forthe in a thrawe, 
Thereof to telle it es noo nede. 

Bot anone aftire the mete beynge, 
Than righte sone spakes Henry, oure kyng, 
Vnto þe kynge that satt hym by:
‘Telle me thy name Sir,’ he said, ‘I prye.’
‘Mi name Sir,’ he seyde, ‘es Corbarynge, 
Of Antioche I arne corownnde kynge.’
And tolde the kynge alle þer in resoun, 
Howe he come thedire thurghe a vesyoun.
‘And forsothe, Sir, als I tellen the, 
I hade ells broghte moo men3ee with me; 
Ful many and ma, withowtten faile, 
And moo schippes also with vetaile.’
Tha[n] askede he that lady brighte:
‘Whate highte thou, my swete wighte?’ 
‘Cassodoren,’ sho said, ‘withowte lesynge,’
Thus answerde sho till Henre, oure kynge.

‘Nowe Dameselle,’ he said, ‘brighte & schene, 
Will þou duelle here & be my qwene?’
And sho ansuerde pen with wordes full still,
‘Sir, I am at my fadirs will.’
Hire fadire graunted perto full sone, 
That alle his will it scholde be done.
Ful hastily þan were þay wedde, 
With honoure als to a qwene fallis to kynge bedde. 
They preyed hym for his curtaisy, 
It moughte be done preualy.

The spowssyng was done þat ilke nyghte; 
Therat dawnsed many a lady & many a knyghte, 
Ful mekill joye was þam emange. 
A preste full sone the messe sange, 
Bot righte before þe lauacyoun, 
þe qwene felle in a swounyng doun. 
þe folke woundrede & were adrede, 
And into a chambire scho was ledd. 
þan sho sayde: ‘For I am þusgates schent, 
Ne dere I neuer see the sacrament.’

Hir fadir at morne þan tooke his leue, 
Noo longare þan wolde he there byleue.
The kyng duellede still þere with his qwene,
Childre þay hade full faire þam bytwene;
Two sonnes and a mayden,
200 
Forsythe righte als þe booke vs saiden.
Richerde highte þe firste, ywysse,
Wareof this romance imaked es.
Jhon forsoto þe toþer was,
The thirde, his sistere Topyas.
205 
And thus þay duellid all in fere,
Till it was passede fiftene þere.
And one a daye, byfore the rode,
Als þe kyng at his messe stode,
There come ane erle of grete pouste:
210 'Sir,' he said, 'how may this be,
That thus my lady, the qwene,
Ne dare noghte þe sacrament sene?
Now, giffas vs leue to garre hir duelle,
Fro þat þe preste bygynn þe gosepelle,
215 
To þat þe messe be songen and sayde,
And þee shall see a full qwaynt brayde.'
The kyng comanded all, att his will,
To holde hir with strengthe stone still:
And þe kyng woundrde gretly of this thynge
pat sho thus villely made hir endynge.
Neuer more gaffe he hym noo women vntoo.
225 
Thane, when þe belle bygan to rynge,
And the preste solde þan make sacrynge,
Owte of þe kirke sho wolde awaye.
Ane erle sayd: 'For God, ma dame, nay!
Lady,' he saide, 'here þow schall habyde,
For anythyng þat may betide.'
Scho toke hir doghetir þan by þe hande,
230 
And Jhon, hir sone, wold sho nott wande,
And owte at þe kirke rofe sho gan hir dighte,
Aperly in þaire allere sighte.
Bot Jhon felle fro hir appon þe grounde,
235 
And brake his thee bane in þat stounde.
And with hir doghetir, thus, sho flowe away,
And no man sawe hir no more vnto þis day.
The kyng woundede gretly of this thynge
240 
Pat sho thusvilla made hir endyne.
And for lufe þat he was seruede soo,
Neuer more gaffe he hym noo women vntoo.
Bot ordeyned sone aftir his endynge,
His sone Richerde for to be kyng.
245 
Thus was Richerd, certaynyly,
Crownned kyng - aftir his fadir, Kyng Henry -
That was in his tyme nynetene þere.
He was a man of grete powere,
And dedis of armes he gaffe too,
Als falles to knyghttis and sqwyers also.

f. 126rb
He wexe so stronge in euerilke fighte,
Agaynes hym hade no man no myghte.
And in euerilke stede he toke honour.

Als noble kyng and conqueroure.
In þe firste 3ere that he was kyng,
At Salysbery he made a grete justynge
þat euerilke knyghte þat couthe hym were
Oper with schelde or with sper:

‘Erlles, barouns, euerylkon,
Lukes þat byhynd there byleue none
For forfetoure of wyfe and londe,
And for nothyng that they ne wande’.
That was the crye, I vnderstande,
þat was cryed thorowte all Yngland.
And alle was to looke and to see,
What knyghte beste doande rnyght bee.
And thedir they come at þe kynges will,
His commandement for to fullfill.

The parties weren þan insonde sett,
Toggedir þay went suythe, withowttyn lett.
King Richerde gan hym þan disgyse
In his qwayntise, one strange wiese.
And he come owte therof a valaye,
For to profe therof paire playe,
Als he had bene ane awnterows knyght.
His atire was alle qwayntely dighte,
Alle togedire it was cole blake,
His horse & his atire, withowtten lakk.

And one his creste a rauen there stode,
þat zarmede als it ware wode.
And abowte his swyre, a belle,
Wharefore it was there, I sall 3oww telle.
The kynde of þe rauen, forsothe it es,
In trauelle euer to bene, wyssse.
And the signyficacioun of þe belle
Es with holy kirke euer for to duelle,
And theym to noye and for to greue
þat are noghte in the righte bylue.

A schaft he bare was grete & strange,
þat was fourtene fote full lange,
And twenty ynche it was abowte;
þat was a schaft bothe grete & stowte.
Þe firste knyghte þat he with mett,
Grymly he appon hym sett
With swilke a dynt in myddis þe schelde,
þat his horse he strake doun in þe felde.
Horse and man he bare to þe grownde,
þat full nere he dyed righte in þat stownnde.
Pe nexte þat he mett with thare,
A grete stroke of hym he bare;
His gorgere with his coronalle tho,
And his nekke bone bothe he bare in two.
His horse felle downn dede to þe grownde,
And he diede in þat ilke same stownde.

Bot þan þe kynge gan hous & habye,
Giff any moo wolde to hym ryde.
And tromppetts þan bygan to blawe,
And knyghtis justed faste in þat thrawe.

Anôper knyghte, hardy & gud,
Satt one a stede als rede als blode.
He did hym in armes full wele dighte,
In þat countrre was noghte swilke a knyghte.

And he toke a schafte full grete & strange,
And said he wolde vnto hym ryde,
Gif þat he durste hym habyde.
Tromppettes one lowde gan blawe
And þerby wiste wele euerilke a man
that knew / every

That was full heuy & righte full lange,
And ferthoghte euer þat he come thare.

Kyng Richerd full sone of hym
was waITe
And hent his spere in haste reghte thare
And manly encontrede hym in þe felde

And bare awaye halfe his schelde,
His besygewe awaye gan gane,
And alswa of his schouldere bane,
His pesane & alswa his gorgere;

Hym forthoghte euer þat he come thare.

And wele he sees that there commes nonne,
Into a wodde owte of theire sighte,
And in anoþer atire he dose hym to dighte.
Appon a stede was rede als blode,
With alle þe atire þat one hym stode:

Horse & schelde, borthe armours & man
þat no man myghte hym knawe þan.
And appon his creste a reede hownde,
The taile trekillede appon þe grownde.
And þat was in signyficacyoun

The heythyn men to bryng adownn,
And þam to slaa for Goddis luffe,
And þe Cristyn men to brynge abouffe.
Than still he houede & habade thare,
Bot to hym wolde þay ryde noo mare.

He rode þe rawnge ofte alle abowte,
And byhelde þam faste within & withowte.
And a barownn he sees there houe hym bisyde,
And to hym he thoughte full euen for to ryde.
And forth he drewe a mace of stele,

And a strake he thoughte to sett reghte wele
Appon his helme, þat was so stronge,
þat thourghe þat dynt þe fire owte spronge.
And þe baroune torneð hym one syde,
‘Goo foole!’ he seyde, ‘and forþe þou ryde,

And with thi peris go chese the at playe!
Come no more, I pray þe, here awaye,
And sekerly, giffe þat thou doo,
The tidys a knoke or ells twoo.’
þe kyng wonndirde in his thoughte,

þat his stroke ne deryde hym noghte.
And commes agayne by anoþer waye,
And thoghte to make hym a bettire paye.
And in his sterappis vp heghe he stode,
And smote to hym with egre mode

Euen abownn appon his iren hatte.
Bot þe toþer full still in his sadill satt,
And hastily withowtten taryinge mare
His masse he hent in hande reghte thare,
þat was wele made of þottyn bras,

And hade grete wondir what deuyll he was,
þat slike a strake vnto hym lent,
For þerwith his feete owte of þe sterappes went.
And boþe thorghe plate & thorghe actoun,
Noghte lettyng neþer hawberke ne hawbergoun.

375 For slike a strake had he neuer are,
Neuer nane þat noyede halfe so sare.
Bot full swithe away þan gan he ryde,
Owte of þe presse faste þer besyde.
The kyng saide than reghte hastily thare:
Of slike strakes kepe I no mare.’
He went anone vnto a welle,
And of his helme he dranke his fille,
And watred his stede righte ther also.
And in the thride atire he dide hym do,

Alle þat atyre was white als mylke,
His trappours werfen alle of tuly silke.
And appon his schelde a crosse of rede,
þat bytakyned þat for Goddis dede,
With his enymys wolde he fighete,

To wynne the crosse gif þat he myght.
And appon the crosse a dofe white,
A signyficacyoun of þe Saynt Espiryte,
To be bolde to wyn the pris
For to distroye Goddis enimys.
Kyng Richerde in thies armours gan hym dight
Vntill anopér, a full noble knyght,
Sir Fuke Doly was his name –
Þe kyng hym luffed for his gudly fame –
And to hym a strake now hase he tighte,

Wel to sett it at alle his myghte.
He smate appon his bacenet,
A grete strake, withouten lett,
Þat it foundred to cheke bane.
Sir Fuk bade hym hys way gane,

Þat he no langare thare habyde:
‘For that þat may to the betyde!’
The kyng sees he felis noghte sore,
And he thougte to greue hym more.
And by hym he come anoþer brayde;

His mace appon his helme he laide,
And with gud will þat strake he sett.
The erle thougte he wolde hym lett
With his mace þat was of stele,
Reghte there he gaffe þe kyng his dale,

Þat his noble helme al torofo,
And he righte ouer his sadill drofe.
And his sterappes there he forbare,
Slike a strake had he neuer are.
He was so stonayed of þat dynt,

Þat he had nerehande his lyfe tynt,
For þe strake þat hym was raughte,
He wiste noghte whedir it was day or naghte.
Bot when he recouered of þat suoghe,
Vnto his palays he hym droughe,

And did comande righte hastily,
Harawdes of armys to make a cry:
Euerilkman for to wende
Home till his awnn frende.
The kyng anone a messangere gent,

Full preualy than furthe he sent
To Sir Thomas of Multon,
Þat was so noble a baroun,
And to Sir Fuk Doly,
Þat þey solde come to hym in hy,

And þat þey duelle in no manere,
‘Vntill þat þey be bothe here.’
The messangere his way is went,
And toide þat þe kyngge aftir þam sent
Swithe for to come hym too,

Withowtten delaye þat it were doo.
Thies barouns heyed and weren full blithe,
And to þe kyng þay come full swithe,
And sone full hendly þay hym grett.
And said to him with wordes fre:

‘Welcome, sirs, are see now to me!’

And in anythere hande he toke ane
Into a chambr he ar pay gane.

Quod Kyng Richard: ‘Lefe frendis twaye,

Tellis me pe sothe nowe, I nowe praye,
Of this justinges, now paramours,
Whatte knyghte he was hat rade pe beste course?
And who couthe therre beste his crafte,
For to demene wele a schaft

With dyme for to felle his fose?

And whilke of theym warne pe beste lose?

And whilk þe gretestynge tymbir brake?’

Quod Multoun: ‘One in atire blake
Come spurring on across ploughed land

Alle þat þer was hym byhelde
How þat he rade als he ware wode.
One rowme he houede and still he stode,
And one his creste was a rauen s[ w ]arte,
In takynynge he helde onewythir part.

A schaft he bare was stiffe & strange;
Fourtenye fote fully was it lange,
And twentty ynche it was abowte.
He askede þan att alle the rowte,
3if any man durste come & profe

A course, for his leman lufe,
With a knyghte awnterous there.
And thane a yonge knyghte, a stronge bachelere,
Anone hent a schaft & stede bystrade,
And to þe knyghte awnterous anone he rade.

And þe awnterous knyghte with hym þere mett,
And swilke a stroke one his schelde þer he sett
þat horse and man & alle ouer he threwe;
Bot þere was no man þat hym knewe.

Tromppes 3ode and harawdes cryede,
And alle the toper full sore þam drede
To ryde to hym ofte with launce,
Lesse þam betide swilke a chaunce.
Bot then an hardy knyghte, stowte & saugage,
Hent a schaft with grete rage,

Saide: ‘Now he hase one of oors felde,
Byfor alle mens sighte now in þis felde.
Sen he hase done vs this dispyte,
And agayme torne & passe alle qwyte,
þat he ne hafe firste a knoke!’

He prikked owte fro alle the floke,
With a lange schaft, stowte and hye,
And emyddes the course mett he and he.
The awnterous knyghte smote þe scheld amyde,
A wonder case ther our eyghte bityde.

The awnterous knyght felde hym *per*, all with ire,
Downn of his stede & brake his swyre.
The third knyghte þan to speke biganne,
Said: "This is a deuyll & no man
bat thusoure folke fellys this tyde.

Bot tyd me lyfe tyd me dede, to hym schal I ryde,
And I schall ones mete hym *3if* þat I may."
The awnterous þan with grete deraye,
So harde vnto our eyghte he drafe
That his schelde in two peces rafe.

The schelde with his schaft he brake,
And there he felle ouer his horse rake
Bat he ne dide hym no mare hanne.
be awnterous knyghte þan rode agayne,

And houded still, þe sothe to sayne,
To assaye giff any dorste juste with hym anymore.
Bot of hym þay were þan adred so sore,
Bat no man dorste juste with hym efte
For drede þat he hade hym his lyfe refte.

And when þat he sawe there com na mo,
He rade agayne there he come fro.'

A nd aftir that anoþer come,
be folkes of hym gude kepe nome.
His horse and his attire was rede –

Hym semyd wele to bene a quede –
A rede hownde one his helme abownn.
He come to seke & for to prouen
Gif any juste with hym dare,
Bot noghte one þer wolde, whils he was þer,

To hym with schaftes make ones a blenke.
And he rode riȝte sone forby alle þe renke,
The deuyll hym hange whereuer he be!
I ne wote what deuyll hym ayled at me.
His schaftes to a sqwyere he bitoke,

And bihelde me with grymly looke,
And smate me so with his mace
þat, ne had it bene thurgh Jhesu Cristes grace,
Mi swire bane hade bene broken in twaye.
Bot I bad hym ride forthe one his waye,

And dele with foles, als hymselfe was.
Bot agayne he come bi anoþer pase,
And gafe me ane was verse þan þat,
And jitt still in my sadill I satt.
Bot þan said many a modere sone:

"Alas! Sir Thomas of Multoun,
þat he es smyttyn with vnskille!"
Mi mace I hent þan with gud will

incident / happened
felled
broke / neck
speak
vanquishes / now
whether I live or I die
f. 128rb
paid close attention to him
seemed to be / devil
I do not know what the devil he has against me
handed over

neckbone / in two
fools
he took another run at me
gave me one [that]
yet / saddle
mother
hit wrongly
seized
Smate him that alle þe folke it sees,  
Downn of his horse almoste one knees.  

545 And when I hym had a stroke ysett,  
And jitt I wolde hafe blissede hym bett,  
No moo strokes he wolde habide;  
Awayne full swythe þan gan he ryde.'  
When Multoun had þis tale ytolde,  

550 Sir Fuke Doly, a barown full bolde,  
Saide þan vnto Kyng Richerde:  
‘The thirde come efterwarde,  
In atire als white als swanne,  
Ful many a man þere hym sawe.  

555 And in his schelde a cros rede als blode,  
A white dofe appon his helme þer stode.  
He houed & byhelde vs 3erne,  
‘3if there were any knyghte so steryn,  
So hardy & so stronge of bonys,  
bat dorste come & juste with hym ones.  
Bot there was none so stowte ne gryme,  
bat a course dorste juste with hym.  
ðan downn bi þe raunge he gase ful faste,  
And to me he come at þe laste,  

560 Forsothe, Sir Kyng,' quod Sir Fuk.  
‘I wen þat knyghte was a puk.  
And with his mace appon my bacennett  
With his riȝthe hande a dynt he sett  
With writh strange & egre mayn,  

570 þat nere alle stonayde was my brayne.  
I spake to hym wordes fewe:  
“Ryd forthe,” quod I, “þou wode schrewe,  
And playe with hym þat is thi pere!  
For come þou efte one this manere,  
For to be wyse I schall the teche!”  
Bot efte he gan mare conteke seche,  
And a wers stroke he gaffe me jitt.  
And than with my mace I hym grett,  
That bothe he his sterapys he forlese;  

580 And stonayde he rade owte of þe prese,  
Agayne vndir the wodde-boughe.’  
King Richerde satt righte still & loughe,  
And seyd: ‘Frendis, nowe sekirly,  
Takes noghte to grefe, I prey, for that was I!  

585 When 3e were gadirdle alle in fere,  
As awnnterous I come one þis manere;  
Who was strongeste for to assaye,  
And also who that couthe beste strokes paye.  
And, lordynges, whethir 3e ne wote noghte,  
What I hafe ordyneyd in my thoghte  
For certeyne the Holy Londe to wende vnto;  
We thre allone, withowtten moo.  

[And] struck him so that  
gladly struck him again  
face  
at once  
snow  
dove / stood  
waited / eagerly  
strong  
bones  
once  
a charge  
Then / jousting field / went  
came to me  
believe / devil  
[i.e. small helmet]  
right hand / blow  
Angri ly & with the utmost force  
stunned  
spoke  
Ride / mad rascal  
equal  
again  
teach you  
quarrelling sought  
lost  
away from the crowd  
forest canopy  
laughed  
Do not take offence at it  
gathered together  
came  
to test  
could deal the best blows  
did not know  
decided  
to go to  
no one else
And all the while we be clad in pilgrims' guise,
The Holy Land all for to devise.

And to me I will that ye be sworn:
No man to wite now that is borne,
Nowthir for wele ye sete for woo,
Till that we benecom and goo.
Pay grant hym all his askynge,
Without any disagreement
With hym to lyfe and for to dy,
Noghte lettynge nowthir for lawe ne for hy.
And appon be boke pay leyde their honde,
That forwarde feythfully for to stonde.

And kissed togedirs pan alle three,
Tewe sworn brethren for to bee.
Than trompes blew & madyn cry,
To be mete than went pay hastily.
Bot or the twenty dayes ende,
Weren pay redy for to wende,
With pyke, scrippe, & also with slawyne,
As palmers gose in paynym,
And forthe pay gone, in Goddis name,
To seke ferlys wel fere fro hame.

Now hafe pay dighte pan full sare,
Thyes thre knyghttis forthe to fare.
Bay sett vp the saile, be wynde was gude,
And sayled pan ouer the salt flode
Into Flawndirs, als I saye.

Bot pan Kyng Richerde & his felaws twey,
Forthe pay went pan with full glade chere
Thorowe many landis, bothe ferre & nere
Till pay come at Braundys,
That is a coste of full noble prys.

A noble schipe pan fonde pay thare,
That into Cypres was redy to fare.
The saile was raiseede of that schip strange,
And in be see they were full lange.
And at be laste, I vndirstande,

At Famagoste pay come to lande.
And thare pay duallyde wel a fourty dayes,
For to leren the landys layes.
And sythen dide pay pan vnto be see,
Euen vnto Acres, that riche cite,

And so forthe pay wente vnto Macedoyne,
And also to be cite of Babylolyne.
And fro thethyn vnto be cite of Cesare,
Of Nynyve than were pay ware,
And so to be cite of Jerusalem,

And also to be cite of Bedlem,
And also pay went to 3ebedy,
And to þe cite of Sudayn Turry,
And to þe Castelle Orgoilyus,
And to þe Cite of Appayrynous.

To Jaffeth and also to Saffrane,
To Taboreth & also to Archane.
And thus þay asspyede þe Holy Londe,
How þat þay myghte wynn þis into þaire hande.
And sythen homwarde þay gan þam dighte;

Till Ynglande warde with alle þaire myghte.
And when þay had passede þe Grekkis See,
To Almayne thies palmers three
There byhouede þam ete or þay myughte goo.
That tordede theym to mekill woo.

And I schall telle 3ow in whate manere,
Lystenys nowe and 3e may here!
A gose þay dighte to þaire dynere
In a tauerne there als þay were.
And Kyng Richerd there þe fire dide bete,

And Thomas of Multon to þe spete hym sett,
And Fuke Doly, he temprede the wose;
Bot full dere boughte those thre þat goso.
For when þay had therof wel eyn,
A mynstralle come righte than in

And seyd: 'Gud men, dose gladely, witterly,
Wil 3e hafe any mynstralsie?'
Kyang Richerd seide: 'We will ryse & goo'.
That Worde tornede þam sythen to mekill woo.
The mynstralle thoghte to þam in mynde:

‘Forsothe 3ee bene men righte vnkynde,
And giff I may 3e schall forthyneke,
3e bed me nowthir mete nor drynke;
For gentill men solde redily bede
To glewemen that abowte 3ede,

Off þaire mete, bothe wyne & ale,
For gude lose aryse of many mynstralle.’
He was ane Ynglys man & wele þam knewe,
By speche & sighte, bothe of hide & hewe.
And forthe he went hym in þat tyde

Till a castell was there besyde,
And tolde þe kyrng righte at þe none
þat thre men weren in his cite ycomen;
Starke men bothe bolde and fere,
That in the worlde were noghte þaire pere.

‘Kyang Richerde of Yngland is one of þaa men,
And Sir Fuk Doly is anoþer then,
The thirde highte Sir Thomas of Multon,
Ful noble men and of ful grete renownn.
In palmers gyse þay bene dighte,

Pat na manne sall þam knawe by sighte.’
The kyngse said to hym, ywiswe,
'That þou hase tolde, giffe sothe it is, 
þan sall þou hafe thi warysoun, 
þou sall chese thiselde a riche towne.'

695 Bot than þe kyng comaunde his knyghtis 
To arme þam alle wele at alle rightis: 
'And gose & takeþ þam alle thre, 
And bringþ þam hedire biforn mee.' 
Thane went thies knyghtis forthe in fere,

700 And toke thies palmer at þaire dynere, 
And brought þam swithe biforn þe kyng 
That said to þam in his askynge: 
'Palmers,' he seid, 'whethyn bene þee?' 
'Of Ynglande,' þai seid, 'þir, forsothe bene þee.'

705 'What highte thou, felaw?' quod he to the kyng, 
'Richerde,' he seide, 'withowten lesynge.' 
'And what highte thou, þir, þou eldare man?' 
'Fuk Doly, þir,' he seid righte than. 
'And what highte thou,' he said, 'þou þir grey hare?'

710 'Thomas of Multon,' he said righte thare. 
The kyng þam askede þan alle three, 
'Saise me, in my landes whate seke þee?' 
I say 3ow certanly, withowten lyes, 
3ow semys wele to bene some spyes.

715 Alle my landis bothe burghe & townn 
3ee thynke to do me some tresoun, 
Bot for als mekill als þou, Sir Kyng, 
And thies barouns, withowte lesynge, 
Ne semys noghte to bene thusgates dighte.

Do not seem to be dressed [like pilgrims]

720 Therefore, by lawe & thorow righte, 
3e schall alle bene put in my presoun, 
For 3e thynke to do me some tresoun.' 
Kyng Richerd ansuerde þan, with hert full fre 
'Sir, þan dose þou vs no righte, als thynke mee, 
Any palmer þat gosse bi the waye, 
þam to presone, by nyghte or by daye. 
Sir Kyng, for thi curtasye, 
Ne do vs palmer no velany. 
And for his lufe, þat we hafe soghte, 
Late vs goo and dere vs noghte. 
For awnnters also þat may þerfore betide, 
In unkonthe londis where þou may ryde.' 
Bot the kyng comande þan anone, 
That into his presoun þay scholde be done. 

730 And than the portere, I vndirstande, 
Takis Kyng Richerde bi the hande, 
And also alle his fellawes hym with. 
For langare there had þay no grithe, 
Vntil the toþer daye at pryme, 
þe kyngis sone come thedir in ill tym; 
Sir Ardryn, was hatten his name,
He was a man there of full grete fame,
He was a stronge knyghte & a fere;
In alle that lande was noghte his pere.

‘Portere,’ he seyde, ‘I comande the,
Thies presoners that þou late me see.’
The portere seyd: ‘Sir, at youre will,
Arely, late, bothe lowde and still.’
He broughte þam forthe þan all thre,

Kynge Richerd, forthirmaste come he
Ardryn, thane, spake to hym anone,
Seyd: ‘Arte thou Kynge Richerde, þat noble man,
Als men says of the in ilke a lande?
Dare thou stande a bofete of my hande,

And to morne I sall giff the lefe
Swilke anoþer me to gyffe?’
And thane, als tite Kynge Richerde
Grawnte to hym sone þat ilke forwarde.
The kyng sone was full ferse and stowte,

And gaffe Kynge Richerde an ere clowte
þat the fire owte of his eghne sprange.
Kynge Richerde thoughte þat he did hym wrange,
And sware his athe, bi Saynt Martyne:
‘To morne þan schall I paye myn.’

The kyng sone bad thane,
With full gud will,
That of gude metis & drynkes þay scholde hafe þaire fill.
Both of sothen & of roste mete,
Of þe beste þat þay wolde ete,
And hafe beddis in for to reste,

To qwite his dett that he be preste
þat he to na man hym noghte qwitte
For febilnesse that dynt to Smytte.
The kyng sone did full wele cortaisely, þat nyghte he made þam full wele at ly.
And sone at morne, at þe pryme of þe day,
Kynge Richerde rasse, als I 3ow say,
And wele sone aftir he hym dighte,
The sone schane bothe clere and brighte.
He went anone thane, bi my swire,

And waxid his handis agayne þe fire
A straa brede thikke & somedelle mare;
For he thoughte to Smyte sare.
Wele alle his hand thus hase he dighte,
To make the paye than hase he highte.

The kyng sone come full sone by thane,
To holde forwarde, als a trewe mane.
And bifoþre Kyng Richerde he stode,
And spake to hym with ire & mode:
‘Smytte one!’ he seide, ‘with alle thi strengthe & myghte.

Euen als þou arte a stal worthe knyghte,
Giff þat I owthir stoupe or helde,

Portere, he seyde, ‘I comande the, Thies presoners that þou late me see.’
The portere seyd: ‘Sir, at youre will, Arely, late, bothe lowde and still.’
He broughte þam forthe þan all thre,

Kynge Richerd, forthirmaste come he
Ardryn, thane, spake to hym anone,
Seyd: ‘Arte thou Kynge Richerde, þat noble man, Als men says of the in ilke a lande?
Dare thou stande a bofete of my hande,

And to morne I sall giff the lefe Swilke anoþer me to gyffe?’ And thane, als tite Kynge Richerde Grawnte to hym sone þat ilke forwarde.
The kyng sone was full ferse and stowte,

And gaffe Kynge Richerde an ere clowte þat the fire owte of his eghne sprange. Kynge Richerde thoughte þat he did hym wrange, And sware his athe, bi Saynt Martyne: ‘To morne þan schall I paye myn.’ The kyng sone bad thane, with full gud will, That of gude metis & drynkes þay scholde hafe þaire fill. Both of sothen & of roste mete, Of þe beste þat þay wolde ete, And hafe beddis in for to reste,

To qwite his dett that he be preste þat he to na man hym noghte qwitte For febilnesse that dynt to Smytte. The kyng sone did full wele cortaisely, þat nyghte he made þam full wele at ly. And sone at morne, at þe pryme of þe day, Kynge Richerde rasse, als I 3ow say, And wele sone aftir he hym dighte, The sone schane bothe clere and brighte. He went anone thane, bi my swire,

And waxid his handis agayne þe fire A straa brede thikke & somedelle mare; For he thoughte to Smyte sare. Wele alle his hand thus hase he dighte, To make the paye than hase he highte.

The kyng sone come full sone by thane, To holde forwarde, als a trewe mane. And bifoþre Kyng Richerde he stode, And spake to hym with ire & mode: ‘Smytte one!’ he seide, ‘with alle thi strengthe & myghte.

Euen als þou arte a stal worthe knyghte,
Giff þat I owthir stoupe or helde,
Kepe I neuer to bere no schelde!
Kynge Richerd þan vndir his cheke his hande he layde.¹
He that it sawe the sothe he sayde,

795 That þe flesche & þe skynne awaye he droughe,
And he felle doune in a dede swoughe;
In two he strake his cheke bane,
That he felle doune dede, als any stane.
A knyghte stirtth thane to þe kynge,
And tolde hym alle þat tythyng,

800 Howe that þe Kyng Richerd his sone hade slayne.
‘Alas!’, he saide, ‘nowe hafe I nane!’
And with þat worde, he felle to grounde,
Als a man þat was in woo ybounde.

805 He swouned for sorowe at þaire fete,
Thane knyghtis toke hym vppe full skete,
And seid hyrn: ‘Sir, dismaye 30w noghte,
Now it es done, it helpis righte noghte.’

The kyng than spake to hyrn in hy,
To that knyghte that stode hyrn by:
‘Do telle me swithe now of this case,
In whate manere þat he dede was?’
Ful still þan stode euerilkaman,
For sorowe myghte hym telle neuer ane.

815 Bot with þat noyse þan come the qwene,
‘Whate,’ sche seyde, ‘may alle this byrnene?
What es this sorowe and this fare,
Whaa hase broghte alle in care?’
‘Whate dame,’ seyd þe kynge, ‘ne wate þou noghte

820 That thi sone es to dede broghte.
Now sen that I was borne to man,
Slike sorow ne hade I neuer nane;
Alle my joye nowe es tomede to woo,
For sorowe I will myselven sloo.’

825 Bot when þe qwene that vndirstode,
For sorowe wele ne rene than wexe scho wode,
Hir kerchofes scho drewe, hir hare also,
‘Allas!’ scho seide, ‘what schall I doo?’
Scho skrattede hir sore in the vesage –

830 Als woman þat was in a rage –
That hir face fomede alle one blode.
Scho rent the robe þat scho in stode:
‘Allas!’ scho seide, ‘that I was borne!
Howe was my dere sone forlome?’

835 The kyng seid, als I telle the,
‘þe knyghte þat here standis tolde it to me.
þou telle þe sothe,’ quod þe kyng to hym than,
‘In whate manere this dede bigan.
And bot thou the sothe to me now saye,

¹ KR laid his hand under his [i.e. Ardryn’s] cheek.
A cruel death shall dye.
Bot than pe knyghte called to pe jauelere, And bade pe he scholde stonde hym nere, To bere witnesse of pe ilke sawe:
In whate manere pe kyng sone was yslawe.

The jauelere seid: "3istirdaye, at pryrne, Pe sone come in ane euyl tyne
Vnto the presonme dore to mee, And the palmes nedlynges wolde he see. And I fotchede theym forthe onane,
Als he was trewe knyghte in londe.

And than Kyng Richerd seid: "Sir, bi pis lighte, Smyte one hardely and do thi myghte." Than Ardren so sore Kyng Richerd smate, 
\[\text{f.130rb}\]
\[\text{head over heels} / \text{flew}\]
\[\text{I bid you}\]
\[\text{Tomorrow}\]
\[\text{parted} / \text{manner}\]

To morne anothir pe you gyffe me." 
Pou deper tide appon this wiese, And one pe morne gane Kyng Richerd aryse, And youre sone anone he came. And Kyng Richerd agaynes hym name,

Als couaunde was betwene pam tweye. Kyng Richerde hym smate, pe sothe to saye, Righte anone intwo his cheke bone, 
\[\text{Ah / angrily}\]
\[\text{prison} / \text{shall stay}\]
\[\text{shackles} / \text{fasten}\]
\[\text{such deeds} / \text{depraved}\]
\[\text{proceeded}\]

Righte thus it was, & one pis same manere.' Bot then pe kyng seid with full egre will: 
In presonne now sall he duell full still, And grete fetirs one hym loke pou do feste, For swilke dedis pat are vn[w]reste. ' 
\[\text{towards} / \text{went}\]
\[\text{agreement} / \text{two}\]
\[\text{hit him}\]

The portere 3ode than, als he was sent, To do his lordis comandement. That ilke daye ete pou no mare mete, Ne no drynke pou pay gete. The kynges dougethir laye in hir towre, 
\[\text{they ate no food}\]
\[\text{was} / \text{her tower}\]

And with hir maydynes pat waren of honoure; Margery, hir name was highte, Scho luffed Kyng Richerde with all hir myghte. And at pe middaye, bbefore the none, To the presone went scho full sone, 
\[\text{called}\]
\[\text{She loved}\]
\[\text{noon}\]

And with hir, scho toke maydynes thre. 'Jauelere,' scho seid, 'pou late me see Thi presoners now, hastily.' 'Ful blethily,' he seid, 'myn ownn lady.' He broghte pam forthe anone ryghte.
Faire gret Kyng Richerd pat lady brighte,
And seid to hir with hert full fre,
‘What is thi will, lady, with me?’
Bot when scho hym sawe with hir eghne two,
Hir luffe scho keste appon hym soo.

And said: ‘Kyng Richerd, saffe God aboffe,
Off alle thynge erthely, moste I the loue.’
‘Allas!’ he seid thane in that stounde,
‘With wrange nowe am I broughte to grounde.
Lefe, Damesell, whate myghte my lufe do the?
Ame I noghte a presonere, als thou may see?
And this nowe es þe toþer daye agone
That mete ne drynke ne hade I none.’
The mayden therof hade grete pite,
‘Now, certis,’ scho seide, ‘it schall amendide be.’

And than scho comande the jauelere
Mete and drynke to feche hym here.
‘And thies iryms fro hym þou take,
I comande the nowe, for my seke.
And aftir sepere, in the euenynge,
Vnto my chambire luke þou hym brynge,
In the atire of a sqwyere.
Miselfe, I schall kepe 30w righte there;
Bi Jhesu Criste and Seynte Semyoun,
Thou schalte hafe full wele thy warysoun!’

And at þe euynn, the jauelere ne forgat noghte,
Vntill hir chambre he hym broghte.
And with that mayden ther duelte he still,
To pley with hir righte alle his full will.
Than was he aspyede at þe laste of a knyghte,
Pat to hir chambir he come one nyghte;
And preualy he tolde the kynge,
That forlayne was his doghetir 3ynde.
Þe kynge than askede hym full sone,
Wha hase þat ilke dede swagates done.

‘Kyng Richerde,’ he seid, ‘þoure treytoure,
He hase done 30w this dishonoure.’
‘Sir,’ he seide, ‘be my Cristyndome,
I sawe when that he 30de and come.’
The kynge in hert þan sighede sare,
Bot to hym ne wolde he speke no mare.
Bot swiftly þan, withowtyn faile,
He sent aftire alle his consaile:
Erelis and barouns, and full wyse clerkes,
For to telle hym theire avise of thies werkes.

And swythe his messangers forthe are gane,
And comen are his consellers euerilke ane.
Bi that it was þe aughtyn daye,
Þay were comyn, als I 30w saye.
And alle at anes þay grett þe kynge,
25

940 þe sothe to saye, withouttyn lesyng.
‘Lordinges,’ he seid, ‘welcome are þe alle!’
And ledd them forthe vnto ane haulle.
Emanges theym, þan, þe kyng hym sett,
And seid: ‘I sall 30w telle, withoutten lett,
945 Whi þat I hafe aftir 30w alle now sent:
To giffe a treytoure his juggement,
þat hase me done full grete tresoun;
Kync Richard, þat es in my presoun.’
And alle he telde þam þan full sone,
950 How he hade slayne his dere sone,
And his doghetir also forlayne.
‘I wolde full fayne that he were slayne!
Bot now þan es it ordeyned soo:
Men schall no kyng to þe dede do.’
955 Than to þe kyng spekes a bolde baroun:
‘How come Kync Richard in 3our presoun?
He es holden soo noble a kyng,
To hym dare no man do no thyng.’
þe kyng þam tolde þan alle in whate wiese
960 How he hym fande in disagyse.
And with hym othire twa barouns,
Ful noble men & of full grete renownns.
‘I toke þam,’ he seid, ‘for susspecyoun,
In this manere to my presoun.’
965 He toke leue þan at þam uerilkone,
And into a chambre he bade þan gonne.
For to comon ther, in theire consaile,
Whatte in this case myghte moste availe.
In thaire comonynge, than, þay duelledede thare,
970 Twa dayes or thre and somdele mare.
And stryuen faste, als þay were wode,
With grete erroure and egere mode.
Some wolde sayne hafe hade hym ofdawe,
And some seide it was agaynes þe lawe.
975 And one this manere, in theire comonyng,
þay myghte noghte accorde for nonekyns thyng.
The wyseste seid than: ‘V errament,
We ne kane giffe hym noo juggment.’
And thus þan ansuerde þay þe kyngye,
980 Withouttyn any oþer lesyng.
Bot a knyghte þan spak vnto þe kyng,
And seid hym: ‘Sir, grefe the nathyng,
For Sir Eldrede, forsothe ywisse,
He kan telle the here of whate beste es;
985 For he es a wonder wyse man of rede,
And many a man hase he demyte to dede.’
The kyng comande þan, withoutten lett,
þat he were swythe before hym fett;
þan was he broghte before þe kyngye,
Pat asked hym sone, withouten lesynghe,
And seid: ‘Kane þou me telle, in any manere,
How one Kyng Richerd þat I vengid were?’
And he ansuerde with hert full fre,
And seid þerappon, I muste avyse me.

For 3e wote wele it es no lawe
A kynge to hange nor 3it to drawe.
Bot 3e schall done by my resoune:
Hastyly takes 3ou grete lyoune,
And withhaldis hym his mete

Thre dayes þat he noghte ne ete.
And than Kyng Richerde in a chambir 3e do,
And lates þan þe lyoune wende hym to,
And in þis manere & he were yslawe.
þan dose þou noghte agaynes þe lawe,

The mayden asspyede wele þat resoune,
þat he solde dy thus thurghe false tresoune.
And aftir hym full sone scho sent,

To warne hym of þis ilke juggement.
And when he to hir chambir come þan,
‘Welcome,’ scho seid, ‘my dere lemane!
Mi lorde has ordeynede thurgh false rede,
þat þe thride daye hythen þou mon be dede.
And into a chambir þou mon ben ydo,
And þe grete lyoun latyn in the[r] to,
þat es enhongrede righte full sore,
þan wote I wele þou leuys no more.
Allas, lefe leman!’ þan seid sche,
‘Pis nyghte we schall of lande flee,
With golde & siluere & grete tresoure,
Anoghe to hafe for euernore.’
‘Nay!’ quod Kyng Richerde, ‘I undirstande
þat were agaynes þe lawe of lande
I wote, to wende withoutyn lefe;
þe kyng wolde take it gretly to grefe.
And of þe lyoune giffe I righte noghte,
Hym for to sla, hafe I na thoghte.
And be pryme appon þat same daye,
I sall refe hym his herte, als I þe saye.’
Hir kerchofe he askede, þat was of silke,
þat was als white als mores mylke.
And to þe presoune þay hym brynge,
A littill byfore the euynynge.
And als sone als it to þe tyme come,
þe mayden to þe presonne nome,
And with hir a full noble knyghte;
Þaire sopere it was full wele ydighte.
Kyng Richerde bad his two feres,
Come to hym vnto the sopere.
‘And þou, Sir Portere, luke þou come also,
be lady comandes the to do so.’
pat nyghte þay were full glade yngoghe,
And euerilke man to his chambir droghe.
And sone at morne when it was daye,
Kyngh Richerde bad hire go hire waye.
‘Nay!’ scho seid, ‘bi God aboune,
I will here take þe grace þat God will sende.’
Kyngh Richerde seid þan: ‘A, lady, late be,
Now certis, bot þou wende swythe fro me,
I will me grefe swithe sore,
þat I ne schall lufe the no more.’
Bot there agayne scho seide: ‘Naye!
My dere leman, now hafe gud daye.
Now God, þat diede appon a tree,
Saffe the, giffe that it his will be.’
Hir kerchoffes he toke þan in his hande,
And alle abowte his arme he theym wande.
And thougth, in that same while,
To sla the lyoun with somekyns gile.
And sengly in a surcote he stode,
To byde the lyoun, ferse and wode.
And in comes thane the jauelere,
And othire two with hym in fere.
And the lyoun theym amange,
With pawes þat were bothe scharpe & lange.
The chambire dore þay hafe vndo,
And in the lyoun lete hym to.
Kyngh Richerde seid: ‘Now, helpe, Lorde Jhesu!’
The lyounhe than makis a venu,
And wolde hafe hym alle torent.
Besyde Kyngh Richerde þan he glent,
And one þe breste þe lyoun spornede,
þat alle abowte righte there he tournede.
Be lyoun was full hongrye & megyre,
He bett his taile for to be egree,
Full faste abowte, appon the wawes.
One brede he sprede alle his brode pawes,
And criede full lowde & gapide wyde.
And Kyngh Richerde bithoghte hym that tyde
What was beste, and to hym sterte,
And in at his throte his arme he gate,
Rente owte his hert with his hande,
Lounges & alle that he there fande.
The lyoun felle dede downn to pe grounde,
And Kyng Richerd haues noþer wem ne wounde.
Bot þan he felle one knes righte in þat place,
And thanked Jhesu þat of his grace.

Hym hade so kepide fro schame & harme.
He toke þe hert righte euynn aIle warme,
And broghte it into the haulle
Byfore þe kyng & his barouns alle.
The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & barouns full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.

The kyng at his mete satt one the desse,
With erles & baroons full prowde in presse.
þe salte celare appon þe table it stode,
Kyling Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode
And wett þe hert righte in þe salte.
1140 be halfendele schall come me to.
And when I am seruede of alle hat fee,
pan sall Kyng Richerde delyuerede bee.
And my doghetir, for hir owtrage,
Schall forgo hir herytage.

1145 And thus, 'he seid, 'it schall be do.'
And the baronage graunteved wele herto.
And aftir Kyng Richerd full sone pay sent,
To here pleyynly the kynge entent.
And to the courte than es he gone,

1150 And gret the lorde euervilke one.
Bot than the kynge seide to hym one his manere,
He seid: 'We hafe lokede amonges vs here,
That thou schall paye thi rawnsounes,
For the and thi two barouns:

1155 Off euervilke kirke es in thi lande,
Thou schall do me come to hande:
pare als two chalessis in be,
be tane schalle be sent to me.
Thurghe alle thi lands, weite you wele,

1160 I will pleyrnly hafe the halfuendele.
And when hat you thus hafes made thi paye,
I gifte the leue to wende thi waye.
And my doghetir also with the,
That I 3ow neuer with eghne see.'

1165 'Now Sir,' seid Kyng Richerd, 'als you has talde,
Vnto that forwarde I will me halde.'

Kyng Richerd was euerv cortays & hende
Seid: 'Who will nowe for me wende
Till inglande to my chancellere,

1170 pat my rawnsone be payed here?
Who so it will do withowtten faile,
I schall aqwitte hym wele his trauayle.'
And vp sterne thane hende knyghte,
And seid: 'Thi message will I do full righte.'

1175 Kyng Richerd did than a lettir to writte;
A full noble clerke gan it endite.
And made therin alle he mercyoun,
Bothe lesse and more of alle the rawnsone.
'And gretis wele,' he seide, 'als I 3ow seye,

1180 Bothe myn erbishoppes tweye,
And so 3e do my chauncellere,
To serue the lettir in alle manere.
And in no manere hat be lettir faile,
For sekirly it schall pam avayle.'

1185 His sele herto pan hase he sett,
The knyghte it takes withoutten lett.
And dightis hym & makes hym 3are,
Ouer the see for to fare.
When he was her ouer broghte, did not forget
To go his wayes forgotte he noghte. hastened
To London he rapede hym onone, everyone
For there he fonde pam euerilkone. bade / read
And than he toke þe lettir, als I ȝowe seye, broke the wax [i.e. seal]
Righte euyn vnto þe erbischoppes tweye, knew / it said
And bad theym that they scholde it rede,

To London he rapede hym onone, hastened
For there he fonde everyone
And than he toke þe lettir, als I ȝowe seye,
Righte euyn vnto þe erbischoppes tweye,
And bad theym that they scholde it rede,

To London he rapede hym onone, hastened
For there he fonde everyone
And than he toke þe lettir, als I ȝowe seye,
Righte euyn vnto þe erbischoppes tweye,
And bad theym that they scholde it rede,

To London he rapede hym onone, hastened
For there he fonde everyone
And than he toke þe lettir, als I ȝowe seye,
Righte euyn vnto þe erbischoppes tweye,
And bad theym that they scholde it rede,
Home agayne into Inglande –

Thankede be Jhesus Cristes sande!
Pay come to London, vnto pat cite,
His erles, his barouns, his felawes & he.
Bot his two felawes than wentyn home,
Paire frendis weryn full glade of paire come

And bathede there bodies pat were full sore,
For trauale pat pey haed hade before.
And thus they duellede halfe a 3ere,
And than byfelle, als 3e schalle here.
The kyng comand thorowt alle his lande –

Dorste neuer ane his commandement withstande –
At London he ordeynede a parlement;
Wolde none withstande his commandement,
Als pat pay wolde safe paire lyfe,
Paire childre, paire londis, or paire wyfe.

And to London vnto his somoun,
Come bispoches, erles, and baroun,
Abbottes, priours, and sqwyere,
Burgesse, and full many a bachelere,
Sergeandes, and many a frehaldande

The kynges heste to vndirstande.
Byfore pat tyme, many a grete contree
Pat was byzonde the Grekkes See:
Acrys, Surry, and full fele landes
Weryn in Cristyn mens hands.

And he crosse pat Criste was one dede –
Pat lorde pat boughe vs alle fro the quede.
And also alle contre abowte Bedlem,
And the cite of Jerusalem,
And Nayarethe, and Jeryco,

And alle the lande of Galyle also,
Pat ilke a palmere & ilke a pilgryme,
Pat wolde go thedir in that tyme,
Mighte passen safely with gud entent,
Withowtten rawnsoun, or any rent,

Owthir of siluyre, or ells of golde,
Into whatt place pat he go wolde.

Off Surry londe, the Duke of Melone
Was lorde & a full bolde baroun;
And mawgre the sowdane pat londe he helde,
Bothe with spere & eke with schelde,
He and he doughety Erle Reynawde
Wele ofte pey gaffe pe sowdane assawte;
And wele ofte righte, in pleyn batayle,
Pay slewe his knyghtys & grete pedayle

Of the Sarayenes pat misbyleuyde,
And theratt the sowdane was sore agreuede.

Christ's providence came
And return
exertion
stayed / year
happened / hear
throughout
No one ever dared / oppose
summoned
No one would
Because / save
lands / wives
summons
Came
Townspeople / students
Sergeants / freeholder
command
Mediterranean Sea
Acre, Syria / very many lands
Were in Christian hands
on which Christ died
region around Bethlehem

Galilee
every pilgrim to the Holy Land
in good faith
payment
Either / silver
wished to go

Kingdom of Jerusalem / Guy of Lusignan
despite the sultan [i.e. Saladin] / land
also
He [i.e. Guy] / Raynald [of Chatillion]
attacked the sultan battle
a great number of foot soldiers
Saracens / held a false belief
angry
But listynys nowe of a tresoure stronge
Of the Erle Rosse was þam amonȝe,
To whome þe Duke of Melon tristede mekill,
1290 And he was treytour false & fekyll.
þe sowdane full preauly vnto hym sent,
And highte hym golde, londis, & rent –
þe Cristyn folkes for to bytraye
When he mayn wyn þam to his paye –
1295 Of golde full many a thowsande pownde,
And the erle hym graunteðe [hytt] in þat stownde.
Anothir treytour highte Markes Feraunt,
He wiste of that ilke couaunt,
And he hade parte of þat golde þat þe erle toke,
1300 And aþirwarde his Cristyndom forsoke.
And thus þe tresone of þe Erle Rosse,
Surry was loste & þe holy croyse.
þe Duke Reynawde was hewedë full smalle
Alle to peces, so says þe cronkylls aIle.
1305 þe Duke Melon was gyffen his lyfe,
And fled awaye with his lyfe
– He was gyoure of Surry lande,
Kyng Bawdewyne sone, I vndirstande –
Bot no man wiste neuer sythe,
1310 Whare he bycome ne in what kythe.
Soo þat this losse and this pite
Sprange thorowte aIle Cristyante, aIle.
Ane holy pope was than þat highte Vrbane
þat sent to euereilke a Cristyn man,
1315 And assoyled theym clene of theire synn,
And graunteð þam heuen for to wynn,
Alle þat euere wolde thedir goo,
To wreke Jhesu Criste of his foo.
The Kyng of Fraunce, saunce faile,
1320 Thedir he went with grete vitaile.
þe Duke of Bloyse, þe Duke of Burgoyne,
þe Duke of Ostryche, þe Duke of Sesoyn,
And the Emperour of Almayne,
And the gud knyghtis of Bretayne,
1325 þe Erle of Flaundres, þe Erle of Colayne,
þe Erle of Artays, þe Erle of Bolayne,
And mekil folke went thedir byfore,
þat nere had their lyfes forlore
Thurghe grete werre & hungre harde,
1330 Als þee may here tellyn aftirwarde.

In harueste, aftir þe Natyuyte,
Kyng Richerde, with grete solempnyte,
At Westmynstre helde a feste
Off bischoppes & erles, þe moste honeste,
Abbotes, pryours & knyghtis stronge.
And aftir mete þam alle emonge,
The kynge stode vp and gan sey:
‘My dere frendys, I ȝow prey,
Bese now in pese & lystenyss my tale;
Erles & barouns, bothe grete & smale,
Bischoppes, abbottes, bothe lewed & lerede,
Alle Crystyndom may bene afferde.
þe Pope Vrbane hase to vs sent,
His bulle and his comandement,
How þat the sowdane hase fyghte bygun,
And the town of Acrys wonn
Thurghe þe Erle Rosse & his trechery,
And alle þe Kyngdome of Surry,
Jerusalem and the crosse es lome,
And Bedlem, þer Jhesu Criste was borne.
Cristyn kynges es hangede and drawe;
þe Sarayenes hafe þam brighte of dawe,
Cristyn man bothe childe, wyfe & grome.
Wherefore oure lorde, þe pope of Rome,
Es bothe agrefede & anoyede,
Þat Cristyndome es swa distroyede.
And to ilke a Cristyn kyng he sendis his bode –
And biddys þam in the name of God –
For to wende thedir with grete oste
For to felle þe Sarayenes boste,
And to wynn the holy crosse agayne.
And to alle thase þat Cristyn bene
And gase to dy there or to lyfe,
Or ells of þaire gudis to gyffe,
To hafe siluere for to spende,
In Cristis name thedir to wende.
Wherefore oure lorde, the appostoiIle,
Graunttes þam alle clene to assoyle
Of theire synnes that they hafe wroghte.
Lordynges, now thinkis in ȝoure thoghte,
Þat the werldis blysse lastis bot a while
Ful of sorowe & schame, syn and gile.
Þerfor bese warre when þat ȝe steruen,
Þan schall ȝe hafe als ȝe disseruen,
And aftir ȝoure werkes, wele wote þat
Helle paynes or heuenns blysse;
Ful of sorowe & schame, syn and gile.
Þerfor bese warre when þat ȝe steruen,
Þan schall ȝe hafe als ȝe disseruen,
And aftir ȝoure werkes, wele wote þat
1385  Pat es oure kyndely herytage.
    Erles and barouns, knyghtis, sqwyers & page,
    Now trewely, I rede we alle vs do purvey
    And wende we thedir, manly to lyfe & dy,
    To sla vp thase false Sarayenes,
1390  Pat are oure lordes Jhesu wethirwyns.
    Wherefore, myselfe now hafe I mynt,
    To wende forth thedir & with suerdis dynt,
    Wynn pe crosse and gete the lose.
    Now, frendis, whatt es now 3oure purpos?
1395  Will 3e wende? Sayse 3ea or naye!’
    Erles, barouns, knyghtis, & alle 3at maye,
    Pay seid: ‘We bene at one accorde,
    With the to goo, als with oure ownn lorde.’
    Now quod Kyng Richerd: ‘Frendis, grante mercy,
1400  It es to vs alle honoure, & lystenys for why:
    The Kyng of Fraunce es went forthe;
    I rede 3at este, weste, southe, and northe,
    Thorowte alle Inglande we do cry,
    And make a full playne croysery.’
1405  Ful mekill folke the crosse 3er has nome,
    To Kyng Richerde [t]hen 3ay were come,
    One horse and fote, full wele enparelde.
    Two hondrethe schippes there bene vitayled:
    With whete, hawberkes, swerdis & knyfes,
1410  And thirttene schippes ladyn with beehyves.
    Of tymbir grete & schydes full lange
    He garte make a towre full strange,
    That qwaynte engynours to hym made;
    3erewith thre schippes weryn ylade.
1415  And anothir gynn was laide in 3itt,
    3at men callede apere Robynnett,
    And also Kyng Richerdes manngonelle,
    With alle 3e takill that there to felle.
    And when 3ay were thus dighte alle there,
1420  Forthe of the hauen for to fare,
    Jhesu sent theym wynde wele gude,
    3at bare 3am ouer 3e salte flode.

Kynge Richerd seid 3an to his schipmen:
    ‘Frendis, dose now als I 3ow ken.
1425  And, maister Alane Trenchemere,
    Whare 3at 3e come, owthire ferre or nere,
    And 3e mete by the see strandis
    Schippes of any oper landes,
    Cristen men one lyfe, I saye, latis ga;
1430  Loke 3at 3e na gudes take 3am fra.
    And gif 3at 3e the Sara3enes mete,
    Lokes 3at one lyfe 3at 3e nane lete.
    Catelle, dromounde, or galaye,
Alle þat 3e may gete, I giffe 30w to 30ur pay.

1435 Bot at the cite of Mercille,
Theire byhouys to byde a while,
One cabille and ankire there to ryde,
Me and myn ostes there to habyde.
For I and of my knyghtis many,

1440 Will wende thurgheowte Almanye
To speke there with Moderde, þe kynge,
To wyte why & for what thynge
Þat he me in presoun helde.
And he my tresoure agayne 3elde –

1445 Þat he toke of me with falsede –
Reghte there I schall qwitt hym his mede.'
And thus Kyng Richerd, als 3e may here,
Bycome Goddes palmere
Agaynes alle his wethirwyns.

1450 The Erchbishop Bawdwyns,
Biffer es went with knyghtis fyne,
Bi Brawndiche and bi Costantyne,
And at the laste than aftirwarde,
Come þe doughety Kyng Richerde.

1455 In thre ostes Kyng Richerd gan hym make,
To heythennesse, for Goddes sake,
And in the firstewarde hymselfe will be,
With full hardy men of grete pouste.
That ober nexte hym ledis Sir Fuk Doly,

1460 And Thomas of Multon ledis þe thride wittirly.
And euer ane ostes gan þam lede,
Fourty thowsande gude men at nede.
And none there was bot men of myghte,
Þat were proued men in werre & fighte.

1465 N ow es Kyng Richerd passede þe se,
Full sone he dalte his oste in thre.
For he wolde noghte þe folkes anoye,
Ne their gudis noghte distroye,
Ne nothyng take withowtten paye.

1470 The kyng comande, als 1 3ow saye:
Euerelke oste to wende fra othir ten mile,
Thus he ordeyned in that while,
And in the midwarde hymselfe to ryde
And his ostes one ayther syde.

1475 Pan passede they forthe at paire awenn will,
And na man ne dide theym noghte bot skille
Till that they come into Almayne,
And a newe tydynge there herde þay seyne
When þay come withowtwe enseyne

1480 Vnto þe cite of Coleyne.
The heghe mayere of alle that cite,
Comande þan, alls I schall now telle the:

as a reward
And / Marseille
you need to wait
wait on board ship
there wait for me and my army

go through Germany

If / returns
treacherousness
requite him his gift
hear

Became / God's pilgrim
Against his [i.e. God's] enemies
Archbishop [of Canterbury] Baldwin
has gone before
Through Brindisi / Constantinople

Came
hosts / made
heathen country
great power
The next one / led
the third / certainly
every host
war

has crossed
did not wish to provoke the inhabitants
Or / goods
take anything without paying
to go / from the other

own
nobody / nothing but right
entered Germany
came / standard
Cologne
high mayor
No man to selle theym no manere of fowalle,
For nothyng that myghte avayle.

1485
The stiewarde tolde it to Richerd, our kyng,
Righte sone onane of that tythynge,
Pat he ne myghte no fowalle by,
Nowthir for lawe ne for hy.

‘And thus hase defended Modarde, pe kyng;
For nothyng that myghte avayle.

1490
For he 30w hatys ouer alle oper thynge,
For hele he wate pat 3e hafe sworne
That [p]at 3e take, that 3e will paye forne.
And that 3e will noghte take by masystry,
And therfore he wenys, full sekirly,

1495
Pat 3e schall hafe mete righte none,
And thus he wenys thi men to slone.’
Kyng Richerd than hym vmbythoghte,
& seide: ‘pat schull lett vs righte noghte.
Sir Stiewarde,’ he seide, ‘I comande the,

1500
Too by vs vessell pat bene made of tree,
Disches, dubblers, coppis & sawsers,
Bolles, ladills, and platirs,
Fates, tournys, and costrells,
And makes oure mete for oughte ells,

1505
And whare pat 3e will takes oure brede,
And alle pe pure men, so God 3ow rede,
Pat 3e may fynde in alle the toun,
Prey þam to pe mete at my somoun.’
And when þe mete was graythed & dighte,

1510
þe kyng comande than a knyghte,
After the mayere þan for to wende,
And alle þe burgesse gude & hende.
Than they come alle, als I hafe seid,
And bordis & clothes weryn redy 1eide;

1515
And sone þay ware to bordis sett,
And full faire seruyce byfore þam fett.
þay waren alle full glad & blythe,
Of riche pyment & wyne full swith.
Kyng Richerd asked þam one hethyng,

1520
‘Sir Maier,’ he seid, ‘wher es þi lorde, the kyng?’
‘Sir,’ he seis, ‘he ligges at Gumery,
Sertane sothe for owtten lye.
And alswa dose my lady, þe qwene,
Þe thirde [day] hythen 3e schall þam sene.

1525
And Margery, his dougethir fre,
The third day hythen 3e schall hir see.’
þay waschede þan, als was lawe of lande.
A messangere ther come þan full faste rydande,
Appon a stede als whitte als milke,

1530
Alle trapped he was with twyly silke,
With fyte hundredethe bellys ryngande,
Als I do 30w to vndirstande.
And doun of his stede righte pan he ligthe
dismounted
And gret Kyng Richerd sone appon highte,
greeted / in a loud voice
1535
And so he dide þam euellikone.
And his message schewed anone:
proclaimed
The kynges doughetir,’ he seid, ‘þat is so fre,
noble
Gretis þe wele, Sir Kyng, by mee;
greets you
And with fyve hundrethe knyghtis & ma,
more
1540
Scho comes to the or þou to bed gaa.’
She / to you / before / go
And þe kyng es glade of that tythynge;
news
‘Scho es welcome,’ he says, ‘ouer alle thynge.’
courteousness
He welcomed full fayre the messangere,
1545
With glad semblande & mery chere,
loyal
And gaff þe hym a clothe of golde,
came
For he was to his lady full holde.
1550
Þay come to hym þat ilke nyghte,
stayed until it was day
And þe knyghtis and the lady brighte.
came
And when Kyng Richerd hir myghte see,
kissed each other
‘Welcome,’ he seide, ‘my lady fre.’
kisses each other, full
And þan full sone aythir gan oper kyssye,
And made full mekill joye & blysse,
came / soon
And there they duelled to the daye;
1555
Att morne þay went appon þaire waye.
Wished to eat
And at þe mydday before þe none,
came
Þay come to a cite full sone,
came to him
Þe name was called Marberett.
wished to eat
Ther the kyng hym wolde ett,
1560
His marschall full swythe come hym to
wished to eat
‘Sir,’ he seide, ‘what schall we do?
kissed each other
Swilke fowelle als I gatt 3isterdaye,
Such fowl as / had
For no catelle now gete I ne maye.’
money I can get now
Than Kyng Richerde spak wordis fre,
1565
‘Of frwye,’ he seid, ‘þer es full grete plente;
fruit / plenty
Fyges and raysyns in frayelle,
in baskets
And nuttis also, & þay may vs serue wele.
put a little wax in too
And waxe somdelle castes in therto,
fat / grease
And talowe and grese amang also.
meal
Thus ze may oure metis make,
1570
Sen ze may no noþer fowelle gete ne take.’ Since you may neither buy nor take any poultry
And ther they duelled alle þat nyghte.
got ready to go
And at morne to wende þay hafe þam dighte
?Carpentras
To þe cite of Carpentrace,
1575
There als the Kyng Moderde in was –
thence he could not flee further
For thethyn myghte he fle righte noghte –
lodging
Thurghe þe londe he hase hym soghte.
began / trouble
Kyng Richerd there his inns gan take;
wrong / against
For therby gan his firste wreke,
goose / prepared
With full grete wrang & agayne þe righte,
knew / had come
For the gose þat þay had dighte.
expected / captured
The Kyng Modard wote þat Kyng Richerd es commyn,
And wele he wenys to be nomyn,
And in preson ay for to be,
Bot my dougethir now helpe me.

1585 And righte so come his doghetir with that,
Scho seid: ‘Wannowe, fadir, now what?’
‘Now certis, dere doghtir, I drede I gett gret blame,
And bot thow me helpe, I ga alle to schame.’

Unless you help me, I will fall into disgrace

1590 ‘Als I am trew gentill woman,
Giffe pat [3ow] wille be mylde of mode,
Kyng Richerd will do noghte bot gude.
Bot profers to do with righte gud will,
What he will saye to fullfill;

If / be meek

1595 And do alle in his mercy,
And 3e schall kysse & be frendis, be oure lady.
And 3e pat so longe hase bene so wrothe,
Full wele now schall 3e bene accordide bothe,
And also my lady & my modir, þe qwene;

be

1600 Gud frendis nowe for euer schall 3e bene.’
Than scho toke hir fadir and with hym 30 de
Vnto Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode.
And, with þam, erles & barouns many and mo,
And ane hundrethe knyghtis, withowtten tho.

Indeed

1605 And Kyng Richerd seese than how it 3ede,
And full faire agaynes þam he gan hym spede.
Kyng Modarde than one knees hym sett,
And full Hendely than Kyng Richerd he grett,
And seid: ‘Sir, I am at 3oure will.’

Saw then / proceeded towards

1610 And quod Kyng Richerd: ‘I ne will noghte bot skille:
So that thou 3elde agayne my tresoure,
I schall be thi frende for euermore,
And loue the trawly & be thi frende.’

Said / only what is right

1615 Now quod Kyng Modarde: ‘My son so hende,
I saIl the swere appon a boke
pat [is] redy þat I of the toke,
Ful redy is now alle thi tresoure;
And 3if þou will, als mekill more,
I will the giffe my pese to make.’

Swear to you / book [i.e the Bible] which I took from you

1620 Bot than Kyng Richerde gan hym in armes take,
And kissed hym full fele sythe;
Than were þay frendis [&] made þay blithe.

As much more

That ilke daye Kyng Modarde
Ete with Kyng Richerde,

1625 And aftir mete, full sone & swythe,
Kyng Richerde spak, with chere full blithe,
To þe kyng that satt hym by:
‘Now welcome are 3e, Sir, full sekirly,
For my loue now, I prey the

Certainly

1630 þat þou gete helpe now to wende with me
To heythynnesse, withowtten faile,
For Goddes loue to gyffe baytaile.'
Kyng Modard seid: 'I command alle in girthe,
Alle my landis folkes to wend the withe
And myselfe, Sir, eke therto.'
Kyng Richerd seid: 'Sir, I ne will noghte so,
Thou art to alde to bekir in fighte;
Bot I prey the, Sir, that thou me dighte
Ane hunderthe knyghtis, styff to stande,
Of þe beste of alle thi lande –
And of alle vetayle þat it be done,
For alle a þere redy bownn –
And sqwyers also þat fallis þam to.’
The kyn g vp: ‘Sir, certis it sall be do,
And anothir thynge I schall the giffe,
That may þe helpe whils þou may lyfe:
Two riche rynge þat bene of golde.
The stonys in theym, be þou bolde,
Fro hennes vnto the lande of Ynde,
Swilke sall þou non ynde,
And wha þat haues þat one stone,
Watir ne schall hym drowne none.
þat othere who so duse it bere,
Thefe ne schall hym none dere.’
Quod Kyng Richerd: ‘Sir, grant mercy!’
By than his knyghtis weryn alle redy;
Sergeauntes of armes, & sqwyeres,
Stedes charged, and desters
With tresoure, armys, and vytale.
þan come Kyng Richerd forthe with his paraile,
To Marcey þan gan þay ryde,
And his ostis one athire sýde:
Fuk Doly, and Thomas Multoun,
Erles, dukes, & mony a bolde baroun.
Kyng Richerd, maister Robert of Leycestre –
In alle Ynglande ne was his hettire –
With hym, Robert of Thorname;
Grete Ynglys people with þam came.
And alle redy þay fande theire flete,
Charged with armours, drynke, & mette.
þay schipped armes, men, & stedis,
And stored wele þaire folke with fode to fede.
þay schipped alle by þe see strande,
To wend into the Holy Lande.
þe wynd was bothe gude & kene,
And drofe þam into Messene.
Byfore þe sate of the Greffion,
Kyng Richerd pighte his pauelyoun.
þe Kyng of Fraunce righte there he fande,
In pauelyouns þer als þay gan stande.
And ayther of þam ther than kyssed oþer,
And bycome righte there sworne brethire
To wende into the Holy Londe
To wreke Jhesu, I vndirstonde,
1685 And to werrey one his enemys,
And for to wyn þam heuens blyse.

Bot a treson thoght þe Kyng of Fraunce,
To do to Kyng Richerd a distance;
To Kyng Tanker he sent a writt,
1690 þat tornede sythyn to littill witt:
þat Kyng Richerd, with strengthe of hande,
Wolde drife hym owte of alle his lande.
Tanker, kyng of alle Poyle was,
And for this writt he seid, allas!
1695 And sone he sent his messangere
To his sone þat highte Rogere,
That was Kyng of Sesille lande,
þat he sold come vntill his hande,
And also bothe erle and barouns,
1700 And alle other lordis þat were of grete renoun.
And when þay were comyn euerilkane,
þe kyng seid to theym onane,
And tolde þam how þat þe Kyng of Fraunce
Hade warned hym of a distaunce.
1705 Kyng Rogere smote pese with his gloue,
And bygane to speke firste aboue:
‘Mercy, my dere fadir, now at this tyme,
Kyng Richerd es a pilgrym
Crossed into the Holy Londe.
1710 þat writt lyes, I vnderstonde.
I dere wele for Kyng Richerd swere,
þat he ne thoghte 3ow neuer to dere.
And sendis to hym 3owr messangere,
þat he come righte to 3oww here.
1715 And he will come to 3oww full fayne
Forsothe, Sir, als I 3oww seyne.’
þe kyng was payed of his consaile,
And swythe sent aftir hym, saunce faile.
And one þe morne he come to hym, ywysse,
1720 Into his ownn cite of Pys.
Kyng Tankerde he fandes righte in þe haulle,
Amanges his erles & barouns alle.
þan ayther of theym gret oper full faire,
With full mylde wordes and debonaire.
1725 þan seid Kyng Tankerde to Kyng Richerde:
‘Loo, Sir Kyng, be Saynte Lenarde,
Me es done nowe for to wete
Of frendis by full gude writte,
þat þou arte comen with thi powere
1730 For to byrefe me my landis here.
Andþou were wele fairere to be a pilgryme,
For to slee in heythynesse faste ofþe blode ofþe panym,
þan for to grefe a Cristyn kynge,
þat neuer mysdide the nonekyyns thynge!’

1735
Kynge Richerde waxe þan somwhtae aschamed
And at his wordis somwhtae agramede.
And seid: ‘Tankere, þou arte mystaughte,
For to hafe of me slyke a thoghte;
And swilke owtrage appon me to bere
1740
þat I scholde the with armes dere,
And slike tresoun appon me dose
Parde! I bere appon my flesche þe crosse.
And I will duele here bot a day,
To morne will I wende my way.

1745
And I will prey the, Tankere kyng,
Prokir me none euyll tythynge.
For many man wenys to grefe oþer,
And one his ownn hede falles alle þe fothire;
For who þat wayttes me with dispite,
1750
Hymsele ne schall noghte passe all qwitt.’
Quod Kyng Tanker: ‘Be noghte wrothe for this,
Loo, here þe lettir thereof ywisse
þat þe Kyng of Fraunce me sent
þis othire daye, here in present.’

1755
Kynge Richerde sees that & vnndirstode
þat þe Kyng of Fraunce wolde hym þe gude
Kynge Richerd and Kynge Tankere kyste,
And euer aftir were frendis ay with þe beste
þat euer myghte [be] in any lande;
1760
Blissede be Jhesu Criste sande!
Kynge Richerde þan went agayne ful stille,
And suffredþe þe Fraunce kyng do his will.
And he vnndide his tresoure,
And boughte bestis to his store,
1765
And lete theym bothe salte and sla –
Thre thowsande oxen an somdale ma,
Schep, and swyne so many also
þat no man couthe tellen alle tho.
Whete and benys, twenty thowsande
1770
Quarters he boughte, als þat I fynde.
Off fisches, and foulles, and venysoun,
I ne kan noghte aconwnte the somme.
þe Kyng of Fraunce, withowtens wene,
Laye in a cite þat highte Messen.
1775
And Kynge Richerde withowtens walle,
Vndere ane house ofþe Hospitalle.
þe Ynglys men went into þe towne to þe chepyngy,
And there ofte hent þay full harde knokkyng;
þe Fraunce men & þe Griffouns, at alle rightis,
1780
Slewe there faste our Ynglis knyghtis.
And when þat Kyng Richerd herde of þat distance,
He wente & pleyned to þe Kyng of Fraunce;
And he ansuerde þat he helde litle wardis
Of his Ynglys tayllyardis.

1785 He seide: 'Chasty þe Griffouns, gif þou myghte,  
For of my men getis þou na righte.'
'Now,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'sen it is so,
Þan wate I whate I hafe to do:
I sall me of þam swagates wreke,
þat alle þe werlde sall of me speke.'
Cristynmesse, that feste, þan was neste,
And Kyng Richerd honowrede þat riche feste;
And alle his erles and his barouns
Weren sett in theire pauylyouns,
And weren yseruede with alle plente
Of metis and drynkes of grete deynte.

1790 Bot þan come therin a knyghte belyue,
Also faste als he myghte dryve;
And felle one knes & thus he saide:
'Mercy, Kyng Richerde, for Mary mayde!
For with þe Fraunce men & with the Griffoun,
Mi brothire lyes slayne in the townn,
And with hym there ligges other fyyetene,
Of thi knyghtis gude and kene.
This daye and 3istirday, I tolde one rawe,
Þat sex and thritty knyghtis ther was yslawe;
Fullaste now fallys 3oure Ingliste to were.
Now, lufly lorde, now takes 3oure gere,
And wreke vs Sir, now manly,
Or ells we sall reghte hastily
Fle perills als þat, I vndirstande,
And wende agayne till Inglande.'
Þan Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode,
He loked als þoghe [he] were wode;
And the table with his fote he smathe,
And wode sware be wreken in haste,
And smute he fete-hate.
And smate he wolde be wreken in haste,
He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1800 'Mercy, Kyng Richerde, for Mary mayde!
For with þe Fraunce men & with the Griffoun,
Mi brothire lyes slayne in the townn,
And with hym there ligges other fyyetene,
Of thi knyghtis gude and kene.
This daye and 3istirday, I tolde one rawe,
Þat sex and thritty knyghtis ther was yslawe;
Fullaste now fallys 3oure Ingliste to were.
Now, lufly lorde, now takes 3oure gere,
And wreke vs Sir, now manly,
Or ells we sall reghte hastily
Fle perills als þat, I vndirstande,
And wende agayne till Inglande.'
Þan Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode,
He loked als þoghe [he] were wode;
And the table with his fote he smathe,
And wode sware be wreken in haste,
He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1805 This daye and 3istirday, I tolde one rawe,
Þat sex and thrirty knyghtis ther was yslawe;
Fullaste now fallys 3oure Ingliste to were.
Now, lufly lorde, now takes 3oure gere,
And wreke vs Sir, now manly,
Or ells we sall reghte hastily
Fle perills als þat, I vndirstande,
And wende agayne till Inglande.'
Þan Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode,
He loked als þoghe [he] were wode;
And the table with his fote he smathe,
And wode sware be wreken in haste,
He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1810 This daye and 3istirday, I tolde one rawe,
Þat sex and thrifty knyghtis ther was yslawe;
Fullaste now fallys 3oure Ingliste to were.
Now, lufly lorde, now takes 3oure gere,
And wreke vs Sir, now manly,
Or ells we sall reghte hastily
Fle perills als þat, I vndirstande,
And wende agayne till Inglande.'
Þan Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode,
He loked als þoghe [he] were wode;
And the table with his fote he smathe,
And wode sware be wreken in haste,
He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1815 And the table with his fote he smathe,
Þat it flowe into the flore fote-hate.
And wode sware be wreken in haste,
He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1820 Þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
That was called that ilke daye
Sir Willyam Longspey.

1825 And Sir Fuk Doly,
And Sir Thomas of Multon, sekerly.
þe Erle of Leycestre & þe Erle of Hertheforthe
Ful stutly than pursuyt forthe.
And many erles and barouns & stowte sqwyers,
Bowmen, speremen, & alblasterers,
With Kyng Richerd ful faste gan rayke,
One Fraunce men & Griffouns to bene wreke.
Þe folke of þe cite aspyede full rathe,
Þat the Ynglys men wolde do þam skathe;
1835 And full hastely þay schette þe 3atis
With barres þat þay fande therat.
And sythen þay rane vp appon þe walles,
And schott with bowes & with spryngalles.
And called to oure men, saunce faile,
1840 And seid: ‘Gose home dogges with þour taylles!
For for alle þoure boste & þour pride,
Righte þer sall men garre 30w habide!’
And thus þay mysdide & foule myssaide
Alle that day to Kyng Richerd;
1845 And oure kyng þat day, for no mede
In batelle myghte he nanegates spede.

Bot at þe nyghte, Kyng Richerd & his barouns
Went vnto þaire pauulyouns.
Bot who so slepe or who so woke,
1850 Kyng Richerde þat nyghte no riste ne toke.
At morne he sent to his conselers,
And of the see to his maryners;
‘Lordings,’ he seid, ‘þe bene with me,
Oure conselle awe to he pryve.
1855 And alle we sall vs vngen so,
With qwayntyse and with craftis mo,
One the Fraunche men & one þe Griffounes
That hafe thus dissypsed oure nacyouns.
I hafe a castelle, I vndirstande,
1860 Was made of tymbir of Ynglande,
With sere stages full of torells,
Full wele floreste with many kirnells.
Þer I & many another knyghte,
Agaynes þe Fraunce me[n] sall take þe fighte.
1865 The castell sall highte a surnownn,
For it sall hat Matte Griffoun.
My maryners, lukes 3e arme wele 30ur schippis,
And haldis vp wele oure manchippys.
By þe watir 3e schall þam assaylle,
1870 And we bi þe lande, saunce faile;
For certis, joye commys neuer vnto me,
Or þat I avenged be!’
Þerto dide ilke a man to cry:
‘Helpe God and Seynt Mary!’
1875 Bot than the maryners theym gan hy,
Bothe with schippes & with galy,
With are, and sprete, and saile also,
And to þe cite þan gan they go.
The wrightis þan fraymye þe tre castelle,
Bifore þe cîte appone ḋenehill.
And þat it sees þe Kyng of Fraunce,
And sayd: 'Hafe þe no dowtauance,
Of all þîs Inglys cowardes;
For þat ne are nochtis bot mossardes.

1885
Do drisses now þoure mawgonelle,
And castis into þe tre castelle,
And schottis at þam with alblaste,
The tailed dogges to agaste!
Bot herkyns now of Richerd oure kyng,

How he lete bere, in þe dawnynge,
Targis and hurdas to his folkes alle
Righte before þe cîte walle.
And his folke he garte at anes crye,
Þat men myghte hafe harde into þe skye:

1890
‘Late see come forthe, thou Fraunce moserde,
And giffe bataille to þe Ynglys tailerde.’
Bot than þe Fraunce men armed þam alle,
And rane in haste vpone þe walle,
And faste defendide þe Ynglis assaille.

1895
And þere bygan a full stronge bataylle;
Þe Ynglis drewe with alblaste and bowe,
And many Franche men & Grifouns þay slewe.
Þe galayes come than to þe cîte,
And hade nerhande wonn þe entre.

1900
Þat hadde so mynde vnindre þe walle,
Þat full many Grifouns doun gan falle.
With hoked arowes and quarells
Þay felle doun thikke of heghe torells,
And brake bakkes, legges and arme,
And also þaire nekkes it was na harme.
Þe Franche men come into þe stowre,
And keste wilde fire oute of þe heghe towre.
And þerwith I wote, forsothe ywisse,
Þay brynte & slewe many Ynglys.

1905
Þe Ynglys men defendide þam wele,
With full gud swerdis made of stele;
And slewe of þam so grete chepis,
Þat many of þam lay one hepis.
And one the lande helde Kyng Richerd

1910
His assawte ay ȝlyke harde,
And so manfully þan toke he one,
Þat of alle his men loste he noghte one.
Þan loked he besyde & sawe, one houe,
A knyghte þat wayvede with a gloue.

1915
Kyng Richerde come & he hym talde:
‘Takes Ynglys with ȝow,’ he seid, ‘stowte & balde,
For lo, Sir, I hafe asspyed now righte,
A thynge þat makes myn hert now lighte;
[Here] besyde es a gate one
1930 ṭat wardeynes in it es neuer one;  
be folkes are roune to be Watire Towre,  
For to do þam there socoure.  
And ther we may, withoutten dynt,  
Entire in nowe, verrament.'

1935 tabpanel the therof was Kyng Richerde,  
And hastly wente he thedirwarde.  
And many a knyghte, doughty of dede,  
Aftire hym prekede appon þaire stede.  
Kyling Richerd than entrede, withoutten drede,  
& ther hym followed a grete felawrede.  
His banere one þe walle was fechid full righte,  
Monsir Griffoun it gerte there be pighte.  
As grewhounde strekede owte of þe lese,  
Kyling Richerde passede emange þe prese,  
And seuen chynes with his suerdre  
Oure kyng smate insonder in þe mydwerde,  
þat were drawen þere for dowte,  
Within þe gatis and withowte.  
Portecolys & barreres vp he wanne,  
And lete come in alle his men.  
þan myghte men see bothe strete & lane,  
Franch men & Griffouns tholed schame;  
Some into howsses þan ran full faste,  
And dores & wyndose barrede in haste.

1940 Bot þe Ynglysmen rane to with leuours,  
And brake þam vp with grete vi[gl]ours.  
And alle þat gan agayne þam stande,  
Passed thorowe þe dynt of hande;  
Þay [br]ake cofirs and toke tresoure,  
Golde, and siluere, and couertoure,  
Full fyne stonys, and spycery,  
And alle that they fande in tresorye.  
Per was nane of the Ynglys blode,  
Bot þat ne he had als so mekill gude.

1945 Als þat þay myghte bothe bothe drawe & bere  
To schipp and pauylyoun, I 3ow swere.  
And euere cryed Kyng Richerd:  
'Sla downn-righte the Franche cowarde;  
And kythes thaym in þoure batayle,  
Þat ȝe ne haue no manere of tayle!'

1950 T
The Kyng of Fraunce com þan prikynge,  
Vnto Richerd,oure noble kyng,  
And felle one knees doun of his horse,  
And cryed mercy – for Goddes crosse,  
And for þe crownn, and for the loue  
Of Jhesu Criste, the kyng aboue,  
And for þe viage & þe croun of thorne, þe cros of tre –  
Þat he solde graunte girthe & peesse to be,  
without a warden  
have run  
take refuge  
without [striking a] blow  
in truth  
deed  
spurred on  
company  
put up  
The Greek raised it there  
greyhound / rushed / leash  
crowd  
chains  
cut in two / middle  
there/ fear  
gates  
Portcullis / raised  
Then / [in] street  
suffered  
windows  
bars  
broke [doors & windows] / strength  
stood against them  
through the blows [dealt by their weapons]  
broke [open] chests / treasures  
rich textiles  
precious stones / spices  
found in the vault  
never had as much booty  
they could draw and carry  
[their] ships and pavilions  
Slay  
show them  
you have no kind of tail  
came / spurring  
on his knees  
the crown [of thorns]  
pilgrimage  
truce and peace
And that he wolde one hande take
take on himself
that [i.e. the French] would amend / hostility

That they solde amenden alle pe wrake
Done / said / wrongfully
pe [i.e. the French] would amend / hostility

pat pay had vnto hym or his
took pity on him
Don or sayde or oughte amys.
dismounted

Kyng Richerde pan of hym he had pite
took [Philip] in his arms
Of pe Kyng of Fraunce pat so satt one knee,
peace
do not to harrass

And lighte doun, so says the boke,
bade him not to harrass
And in his armes vp he hym toke
peace
And seid, it schall be pes and still,
gave up
And 3elde pe townn all at his will.
gave back the treasure
And bad agrefe hym noghte tho,

Those he had venged hym on his fo
killed
pat had his gud knyghtis quelled,
insulted him
And also dissitte of hym telled.
to speak
pe Kyng of Fraunce began to preche,
confessor
And preyed Kyng Richerd be his saule leche.

And the tresoure 3ede agayne thane
Otherwise / in faith
pat he had taken fro many a mane,

Or ells he myghte noghte in fay

To Jerusalem take the way.

Bot than Kyng Richerd seid: ‘With thi tresoure,

Mighte pou neuer amende the dishonoure
before
pat pay hafe done to me & myn or this.
yourself did wrong
And, Sir, also thiseluen dide omys,
sent [a letter] / Tancred
When pat pou sent to Tankere pe kyng
slander / your lies
To appairen me with thi lesynge.

We hafe to Jerusalem pe way sworne;
Otherwise / in faith
Wha so brekes oure pilgremage es forlome,
Whoever
Or wha so makes any werre or medlaye
war / dispute
Bitwene vs in this ilke waye.‘
ended / discord
And when abated was this distaunce,
two judges

Pan come ber forthe twa justice of Fraunce,
they rode
And appon two bay stedis gun pay ryde,
quarrelled
And to Kyng Richerd faste gan pay chide.
one
pe tane was called Margaryte,
the other was called
And pe tober highte Hewe of Pympotit;

And swithe sore pay hym tenyd & trayede,
soon / harrassed / annoyed
And called hym vile, foule tayliarde.
tailed
Bot Kyng Richerd held in his hand a troncheoun toughe
right eye flew
tough club
And to these two justice full nere he drogher.
came close to the two judges
And Sir Margarit he gaffe a dynt than
then

Abowyn pe eghe appon pe herne-panne,
Above / eye / brainpan
pete bacenet braste with the dynt,
helmet shattered
And pe reghte eghe flowe owte & awaye went,
right eye flew
dedede he felle doun also faste.
dead
And dede he felle to pe erthe adoun,
frightened

This Hewe of Pympetyt was agaste,
sparred
And prikked awaye, withowtten faile,
soon
And Kyng Richerd was sone at his tayle,
he fell dead
& gaffe hym a strake appon pe croun,
&
Strakes ynewe he gaffe hym sere,
and said: 'Thus schall men the lere
To myssay any lordynge.
Go nowe & plene the to the Franche kynge.'
Ane erchebischope þan come ful sone,
And felle one knees and asked a bone,
Of Kyng Richerd he asked mercy
For Jhesu lufe, & for þe lufe of myld Mary.
And Kyng Richerd granted hym thane,
And draf to þaire pauulyons alle his men;
And to this day there men may here speke
How wele þat Kyng Richerde gan hym wrek.
And so alle þe while aftir þat þay there ware,
þay myghte go by their chefare;
Ther was neuer none so hardy a man
þat ane eyull worde dorste speke þam þan.

And thus Kyng Richerd in pesse & in reste
Fro Cristynmesse, þat heghe feste,
Duelte till þat it was aftir þe Lent,
And than afterwarde forthe he went.
In Marce monethe, þe Kyng of Fraunce
Went vnto schippe, withoutten distance
And when he was went, sone afterwarde,
Come the doughety Kyng Richerd.
Foure schippe wereyn charged, als I fynde,
Towarde Cipirs, als with þe wynde,
Charged with tresoure euerlike dele.
Bot sone a selcoute case þer bifelle;
A tempeste rase full sodeynly
þat lastede fyue dayes forowtten ly.
It brake þaire mastis and þaire ayre,
And alle þaire cabills bothe lesse & mare,
Ankere, bowespret, and ro3ere,
Rapis, cordis, & alle othere,
And were in poynite to synke doun
When þat þay come agayne Launson.
Thre of those schippe went onane
And alle tobraste agayne a stane;
And þe folkes one þe lande myghte wepe;
For the Griffouns, at schorte wordes,
Come with axes and with suerdis
þe ferde schippe byhynde duellede,
Vnnethes the maryners it helde.
And þat schippe lefte righte in þe depe
þat þe folkes one þe lande myghte wepe;
For the Griffouns, at schorte wordes,
Come with axes and with suerdis
And grete sl{@u}thire of oure Ynglys maked,
And spoyled þe qwike alle naked.
And sexten hundrethe þay broghte of lyve

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anew / a great number</td>
<td>learn from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slander</td>
<td>appeal to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>archbishop</td>
<td>begged for a favour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent / their</td>
<td>hear f.137va</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avenged himself</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could go / business</td>
<td>an evil / spoke to them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas</td>
<td>month of March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certainly</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Came</td>
<td>loaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>every part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strange event / happened</td>
<td>arose suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without lying</td>
<td>broke / oars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ropes</td>
<td>Anchor / bowsprit / oars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ropes</td>
<td>on the point of sinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towards Limasol</td>
<td>at once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst open against a rock</td>
<td>With difficulty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>went together</td>
<td>fourth / stayed behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailors</td>
<td>[which was] / at the bottom [of the sea]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For which / [England] / weep</td>
<td>Came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made</td>
<td>stripped the survivors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sixteen hundred / killed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
And into presoun þay keste hundrethes fyve.
And also þay nakened fourty score,
Als þay were of their modir ybore;
Of these schippes brekyng was gret brithe.
þe justice of Cipres rane full swythe
And drewe vp cofres full many folde:
Ful of siluere, and of golde,
Disches, cowppes, broches, and rynges,
Ful gud jewells, & ober riche thynge;
No man bi southe ne ȝitt by northe
Ne couthe acownte what they were worthe.
And alle was borne þat noble tresoure
To the place / emperor [of Cyprus] ordered
Three days after that Came sailing
sailing galleys
stood at the bottom [of the sea] wept
Told him of / wrecking

Thedir as wolde the emperoure.
To þat it was thre dayes afterwarde,
Come saylande aftir þam Kyng Richerd
With alle his grete nauys,
And alle his saylande galys,
To the schippe þat stodyn in þe depe;
þe gentill men therin diden wepe.
When þay sawe Richerde, þaire kyng, þaire wepynge turned than to laugheyng!
þay welcomed hym with alle wirchippes,
And talde hym þe brekyng of his schippes,
And alle the robbery of his tresoure,
And alle þat othere dishonoure.
Kyng Richerd than sware ane athe,
And for þe tydynges he wexe full wrathe:
‘By Jhesu Criste,’ he seid, ‘oure sauyoure, It salle forthynke the emperoure!’
He calles Steuen & Sir Willyam
And Sir Robert of Thomame,
Thre gentill barouns of Ynglande,
Ful wyse of speche & doghety of hande: ‘Gase.’ he seid. ‘þe says to þe emperoure þat he ȝelde agayne alle my tresoure
Or I hym swere, by Seynte Denys, þat I salle haue thre double of his.
And ȝelde me my men oute of presoun,
And for þe dede paye raunsoun.
And ȝelde agayne my robery,
Or hastily he schall aby;
Bothe with schelde and wþh launce,
Oneane I sall take vengeaunce.’
þe messangers þan oneane forthe went
To done þaire lordes comanndment,
And hendely said þay theire message.
Bot the emperour bigan þan to waxe rage,
And girynde with his tethe, & faste he blew,
And a knyfe aftir Sir Robert he threwe.
And he blenked and awaye lepe,
It flowe into dore a spane depe.
And sythen he cryed als vncortays:

‘Owte, tayliardes, owte of my place!
Gose and says youre taylede kynge
Pat I ne awe hym righte nothynge!
I amne full glade of his losyne,
I will gyffe hym no nothire ansuerynge.

He sall me fynde arely tomorowe
[At] he hauen to do hym sorowe,
And wirke one hym als mekill wrake
Als one his men Pat I hafe take.’

As one who is ignoble

2130 'Owte, tayliardes, owte of my place!
Gose and says ure taylde kynge
Go I tell I tailed
I tell I tailed
I arne full glade of his losynge,
I will gyffe hym no nothire ansuerynge.

2135 He sall me fynde arely tomorowe
[At] he hauen to do hym sorowe,
And wirke one hym als mekill wrake
Als one his men Pat I hafe take.’

Go I tell I tailed

2140 And were full Fayne þay were so skaped.
Bot þan þe emperour stiewarde, with honour,
Seid thus to the emperour:
‘Sir,’ he seid, ‘þou hafe done vnrighte
þou hade almoste slayne a gentill knyghte
þat es a messangere fra a kynge –
þe beste vndir þe sone schynynge.
Thou hafe thiselfe tresoure enoghe,
þelde hym his tresour or þou getis grete woghe;
For he es crossede and a pilgryme,
And alle þe men þat are with hym.
Late hym do his pilgremage
And schelde thiselfe, sir, fra damage.’

 Bot than the eghne starede of the emperour
And smylede als a vile faytour.

2145 His knife he drewe oute of þe schethe,
Therewith he thoghte to do þe stiewarde skathe
And called to hym, withowtten faile,
And seid he wolde tell en a consaile.
 þe stiewarde on his kne hym sett do un
With the emperour wende for to rownn.

2150 With the emperour than of full euyll triste,
Schare of his nese by the griste.
And seid: ‘Traytour, thefe, þou false stiewarde!
Go pleyne the nowe to þe Ynglys taylerde!

2155 His knife he drewe oute of þe schethe,
Therewith he thoghte to do þe stiewarde skathe
And called to hym, withowtten faile,
And seid he wolde tell en a consaile.
 þe stiewarde on his kne hym sett do un
With the emperour wende for to rownn.

2160 Bot the emperour than of full euyll triste,
Schare of his nese by the griste.
And seid: ‘Traytour, thefe, þou false stiewarde!
Go pleyne the nowe to þe Ynglys taylerde!

2165 And giff þe he come appon my lande,
I sall make hym full euyll to stande.
And alle his men I sall qwike flane!’
Bot he in haste now torne agayne,
þe stiewarde swyth his nese vp hent;
His visage than was all toschent.

2170 His visage than was all toschent.
And qwic oute of þe courte he rane –
He toke leue righte at no man –
And mercy to þe messangeres faste he cried.
He seid, for Mary lofe, in that tyde,

2175 þat þay scholde telle vnto þaire lorde
Of þe dishonour euerilke a worde.
‘And hy sow,’ he seid, ‘agayne to þe lande;
For I sail cesse into your hande
Alle the keyes of euerilke a toure
shall give you possession of
tower
that treacherous
him [i.e. KR] / this very
doughter
also

2180
pat he hase – zene fekill emperour!
And I schall bryng hym pis ilke nyghte,
be emperour doghetir pat is so brighte.
And alswa five hundrethe knyghtis,
Stowte in armes & stronge in fightis,
husband

2185
Agaynes zene fekill emperoure
pat thus hase done me this dishonour.
be messangers ban pam hied full harde
To pat pay come at Kyng Richerde.
pay fand Kyng Richard sitting to playe

2190
At the chesse in his galaye,
And be Erle of Richieonde with hym played,
And Kyng Richerd wan alle pat he layde.
And the messangers talde alle be dishonour
pat pam had done be emperour,

2195
And be dispite pat he dide his awenn stiewarde,
In be dispite of Kyng Richerde.
And also be stiewarde presentyng
Of his biheste and his helpyng.
And alle togedir how pay had ferde

2200
And ay satte be kyng full still & herde.

T
thone anserde Kyng Richerd –
In dedis as a lyoun in thoghte as a leberde –
‘Of your sawes I am full blythe,
Now setts vs to lande & that swythe!’

2205
Bot than a grete cry rase fote-hate,
And owte was schotte full many a bate.
The bowemen and the alblastererys
Armed þam one sere maners,
And schotte faste quarells, & many a flone,

2210
Als thik als falles þe hayle-stone.
The folkes of the cite þan þam gan hy,
And were fullayne to þe wode to fly.
þe barouns and þe gude knyghtis
Armed þam at alle rightis,

2215
With theire lorde the Kyng Richerd,
pat neuer was founden no cowarde.
The Kyng Richerde, als I vndirstande,
Or he went owte of Ynglande,
Lete make hym ane axe, for þe nonys,

2220
For to clefe with the Saracen bones;
þe hede was wroghte full noble & wele,
þerin was twenty pownde of stele.
When he come into Cypres lande,
þat axe he toke righte in his hande;

2225
Alle that he hitte, he tofrappede.
þe Griffouns faste away fro hym raykede,
To þe nauyll full many he cleueded,
And alle þaire vthankes righte þer he releueded.
And the presone, when he come to,

2230 With his axe he smate righte so,
þat þe dores & þe barreres & þe iryn chynes
Flow insondire & his men – þat were in pynys –
He delyuered owte, whosoever was wrothe,
And garte delyuere þam bothe mete & clothe,

2235 And sware his athe, by Saynte Sauoure,
It solde forthyne þe emperour.
And alle þe burgesses of þat townn
Kynge Richere lete sla withowte rawnsoun;
And alle their tresoure & þaire jewells

2240 He sesyde als his awenn catelle.
Bot than the tydynges [come] to the emperour
þat Kynge Richerd was in Lamasour,
And hade alle his burgesses to þe dede ydo;
No wonder than thoghe hym were woo.

2245 He sente anone, withouten fayle,
Faste aftir alle his consayle
þat þay solde come to hym in hy
To wreke hym of his enemy.
His oste was comyn at myndyghte,

2250 And redy at morne for to fighte.
Bot herkenys now of the stiwerde,
How he come at þe nyghte to Kynge Richerde:
þe emperour dogheter he broughte hym withe
And gret Kynge Richerdd with pesse & grythe.

2255 He felle one knees and gan to wepe,
And seid: ‘Kynge Richerd, God the kepe!
Loo, how I am schente for þe lufe of the;
Now, gentillorde, now wreke þou mee,
The emperour daughter, þat is so bryghte,

2260 I betake the þat gentill wighte.
And alswa alle þe keys I betake þe here
Of euerilke castelle in his powere,
And five hundreth kynghtis, I 30w [bi]hete,
And loo thaym here redy at 30ure fete;

2265 That sall full wele lede and socoure
Agyynes þone fekill & false emperour!
And þou sall be bothe lorde and syre,
Or tommorne at þe euyyn, of his empire.
And leue sir, withowten fayle,

2270 3itt byhoues the haue my consayle,
And I solde the lede this nyghte, bi a coste,
Full preualy appon his oste.
And in his paulyone 3e schall hym take
And thynke þam appon þe mekill wreke

2275 þat he hase done to the or this;
boghe 3e hym slaa, noo force it es.’
Bot mekill it gladide þe Kyng Richerd 
þe noble consaile of the stiewardes, 
And swere by Jhesu, oure saueoure, 

2280  þat his nese sal be boughte full soure. 
Bot than ten hundrethe stedis gud & sure 
Kynge Richerd garte ordeyne in trappoure, 
And one euerilkane lepe ane Ynglys knight – 
Stowte in armours & stronge in fighte – 

2285  And also þat stieward, l'3ow plighte, 
Led thaym, by the mone lighte, 
So nere the emperours pauyloun 
That of the trompis þay herde þe sownn. 
It was a littill byfore the dawnnynge, 

2290  þe stieward seid to Richerde, oure kyng, 
‘Late se, Sir Kyng, assaylle nowe 3eme 
þe pauyloun with the giltyn ern; 
For therin lyes the emperour. 
Awreke now, Sir Kyng, this dishonour.’ 

2295  Bot than was Kyng Richerd als ferse to fighte 
Als euer was fawkon to the flighte. 
And preked forthe appon his stede, 
þere folowed hym a grete forhede, 
His axe he helde in his hande drawenn 

2300  þat many a Griffoun hase ysslawenn. 
þe wayttes of that oste gan see 
And lowde þay bigan for to cry: 
‘As armes, lordynges, aIle & some! 
We bene bytrapped and bynommen! 

2305  In euyll tyme oure emperour 
Robbede Kyng Richerd tresoure. 
For he es now amanges vs 
And slaes dounreghte, bi swete Jhesu.’ 
þe Ynglys knyghtis, for the nonys, 

2310  Tohewe þe Griffouns, bothe bodies & bones, 
Pay smate þe cordis insondre, & felled doun 
Full many a riche pauyloun. 
And euer cried bothe sqwyere & knyghte: 
‘Smytt! Laye one! Sla dounrighte! 

2315  Zeldis the tresoure now agaynwarde 
Þat þe toke fra Kyng Richerde! 
Þe are worthy to hafe slyke mede, 
Wit wyly myndis to ly & blede!’ 
At the emperours pauyloun, Kyng Richerd 

2320  Lighted, so dide the stiewardes; 
And hymselfe was fled awaye, 
Hym allane, or it was daye. 
Fled was that vile cowarde, 
And narowe soughde hym Kyng Richerd. 

2325  He fande his clothis & his tresoure, 
Bot he was fled, þat vile traytoure.

And much / cheered
chamberlain

and / cheered

nose / bought at a very high price
And / steeds
made ready / in armour

on every one leapt an
Bald in arms

I assure you

So near
horns / sound

dawn

f.139ra

Look now / attack / without delay

gilded eagle

is encamped

Avenge

And / as fierce

hawk to fly

spurred on / horse

company

slain

sentinels / saw [them]

loudly

To arms / everyone

have been entrapped / seized

Richard’s

is / among us

slays

then

Struck

cut the ropes in two

rich pavilion

Strike / Deal blows / Slay

Give back

from

You / such retribution

wounds / lie / bleed

dismounted

But himself [i.e. the emperor] had fled

alone / before dawn

eagerly KR sought him out

found
Lange or þe day began to dawe,
Twenty thousande Griffouns was yslawe.
Of silke, & sendelle, & syclatoun

2330 Was the emperours pauyllyoun;
In alle this worlde ne was none slyke,
Ne bi mekill thyng it lyke.

2335 Kyng Richerd did þam grete wirchippes,
He garte theym lede into his schippes;
And sythyn at Acres ne was none founde
Pauyllyoun of so mekil mounde,
Cowppes of golde, bothe grete & smale,
He hade there, withouten tale,
And full many a cofre, smalle & grete,
He fande ther filled and full ybette.

2340 And two stedis fonde there Kyng Richerd,
The one highte Fawuelle, þe toþer highte Lyarde;
In alle the werlde was noghte theire pere,
Noþer dromounde ne 3it dextere,
Stede rabet ne camelle,
That rane so swythe, withowtten faile.
For a thowsande pounde of golde telde
Solde the tone of theym be selde.
And alle that his men þat are lome,
Seuen dowble þay hade therforne.

2350 Than tythynge to þe emperour es comen
How that his doghetir was nommen,
And that his hegte-stiewarde
Hir had delyuered to Kyng Richerde.

2355 And by that he wiste full wele, ywysse,
Pat he hadde wroghten alle of mys,
And messangers than he called anone
And bade þam to Kyng Richerde gone,
And þat ‘þoure emperour and þoure kyng,
Sende hym feythe and gud gretyng.
And homage ilke a suere I will þeym selde,
And alle my landes of hym helde;
So þat he will, pur charite,
In pese euere aftir late me bee.’

2360 þe messangers bylyue forthe went
For to do þaere lordis comandement.
And Kyng Richerd graunted therto:
‘I will, lordynges,’ he seid, ‘þat it be so.
Gase and seys to þoure emperour
Pat he hase done grete dissaunour,
Pat he has robbite pilgrymes
Pat ware towarde þe Sarazenes;
Says hym buse þene my tresour ilk a dele,
3efe he will bene my specyell.

2370 And alswe says þoure emperour
Long before / dawn were slain
rich silken material / fabric woven with gold
there was none such much / like it
them [i.e. the riches found] great honour
had them taken
since / there was no great value
Cups without lying chest
there [i.e. the emperor’s camp] / ornamented steeds
called Favel / the other called they had no equal
Neither dromedary / nor noble steed
Arabian horse nor fast
counted gold
Should one / sold
were kept [in prison]
Seven times / on account of that
[good] faith / greetings
every year / I will pay homage
hold my lands as his vassal
for the sake of charity
peace / let me be
went quickly
to carry out / command
granted
Go / say
dishonour
robbed pilgrims
were [going]
[he] must give back / every part
If / wishes to be / friend
tell
That he amende the dishonour
Pat he dide to his stiewarde
In the dispite of Kyng Richerde.
And that he come arely tomorowe,
2380 And crye here mercy, with grete sorowe,
And homage to me yeld or bere,
And ells, be my crown I swere,
He sall noghte hafe a fote of lande
Neuer mare oute of my hande.

2385 Be messangers þan, by one accorde,
Tolde thus to þe emperour, þaire lorde.
Be emperour was than full wo
Pat he this dede nedis scholden do.
Bot to Kyng Richerd he come at morow,
2390 In his hert was mekill sorowe;
He felle one knees, so says the boke,
And Kyng Richerde by bathe þe fete he toke,
And cryd mercy with gude entent,
And he forgaffe his maletalent,
2395 And there he dide hym homage
Byfore alle his baronage.
Pat daye þay were at one accorde,
And ete togedir at one borde;
In grete solace and mery playe
2400 Pay were togedir alle that daye.
And when it drewe vnto þe eue,
Be emperour than toke his leue
And went than to his ostelle;
In hert hym lykede nothynge welle,
2405 He helde hymselfe a vile foule cowerde
Pat he dide homage to Kyng Richerde.
And thoughte how that he awreke hym myghte,
And forthe he went anone ryghte
Vnto a cite þat highte Bonevent,
2410 He come thedir by daye, verrayment,
And there he fande many a full grete sire,
And the richeste of alle his empire.
To theym thane pleyne the emperour
And of þe schame & of the disshonoure
2415 Pat to hym hade done Kynge Richerd
Thorowe þe helpe of his heghe-stiewarde.
Þan vpe ther stode a noble baroun,
Full riche of catelle & of townn,
þe stiewarde eme, I hope he was,
2420 þat þe emperour schent in the face.
‘Sir,’ he seide, ‘I ame vmbythoghte
þat þou arte alwas abowte noghte;
Withowtten enchesoun or juggement,
Thi gude stiewarde þou hafe schent –
2425 þat solde also, als 1 wele knawe,
Hafe vs holpen and sauede nowe.
Thurghe thy wylle malycyous
Reghte þou wolde seruen vs.
And I the saye, with wordes balde,

2430 With slyke a lorde kepe I noghte holde
To fighte agayne Richerde, þe kynge,
The beste vnder þe sonne schynyngne.
Nor neuer one of my baronage
Sall neuer do the homage,'

2435 And alle thase other lorde seyden att one worde
Þat þay wolde holde Kyng Richerd for lorde,
And þat þe emperour for his velany
Weren worthy pleylyn for to dy.
And then þe emperour sees & vndirstode

2440 þat his barouns wolde done hym no gude.
And to anoper town he flyes & holdes hym there,
For in his hert was full mekill care.

T haþ ilke tym þe heghe-stiwerde
Conseiled full faste Kyng Richerd,
2445 And seid þat hym forthoghthe full sore
Þat þe emperour was so forlore.
And þan þey soughte hym faste one alle wies
And fande hym in þe cite of Pyse.
Bot certanly than the Kyng gud Richerd

2450 Ne wolde noghte loke vnto hym ward,
For cause that he had broken his trouthe.
Kyng Richerd hade of hym no rowthe;
Bot lete a sergeand hym bynde
Both his handis faste hym byhynde,

2455 And keste hym into a galy
And ledd hym with hym into Surrye,
And sware by hym þat made mone & sterne,
þat agayne þe Sarayenes he solde weorne.
And þane when alle this were abated was,

2460 Kyng Richerde sett þat lande in pesse;
þe Erle of Leycestre, full sodeynly,
Thurghe þe conselle of þe barounry,
He made hym stiuerde of þat lande,
And bityke the rene into his hande;

2465 And grete festes þan helde he afterwarde.
His schiþpe lete he dighte þan þis Kyng Richerd
For towarde Acris than passe he wolde,
With full mekill store of siluere & golde,
With seuen score schiþpe, als we fynde,

2470 Saylande forthe rigthe with the wynde.
And aftir thaym fifty galays,
For to kepe wele alle his nauys.
And als the doughty Kyng Richerd
Come saylande vnto Acres warde,
And had sayled with the wind at will
Ten days full faire and still,
Last day they sailed in tempest,
That night they had no rest.
And also they were there in adventure,
They saw a dromound without measure;
An enormous ship heavily loaded
That could hardly sail.
It was towards that Sarayenes
Charged with cornes and with wynes,
With wild foulfe, and other vitale.

And the King Richerde sees it, saunce fails,
He bade one hastynge Trenchemere
In a gal where they are in danger:
‘With the King of Fraunce we dwell, saunce fails,
We are with Fra Poyell we bring supplies
And a month we have been in the sea,
And we wish to go’ quod Alane, ‘at once
Let us sail with gentle winds
For that we are so heavily loaded
Hardly can we sail.
Immediately hear
We are with From Apulia / brought supplies
Wish to go your sail / said at once
Gentle winds he [i.e. the interpreter]
It is necessary for us to
Are so heavily loaded
Hardly can we sail
Immediately hear

You will speak with no one else

They must lie / rest

I will tell KR you are

And / rushed up / ready
go [and] do your

We value / not two flies [i.e. worthless]
Rowed
came to

All of them
pañ spake our e kynge of renoun,
pat highte Richerde Qeure de Lyoun:
‘Of joure sawes now ame I full blythe,
Late sees, ilke a man goo arme hym swythe!
Ster thou my galy, Alan Trenchemere,

And I schall assaye [thase] pautyner.
And with myn [axe] I schall þam frape,
Þat neuer ane of þam ne schalle aschappe!
Than his auxe als tite was to hym broghte,
His othere armour forgatte he noghte.

And to hym þer come maryners ynowe,
And Kyng Richerde bad þam faste rowe:
‘Rowes one faste,’ he seid, ‘& makes 30w bownn,
And goo we to 3one dromoun!’

Þy rowed full faste and layed into,
And haue: ‘Owe, lowe, rombylowe!’
þe galy þeden also faste
Als quarelle owte of alblaste –
And alswa the dromunde come with þe wynde,
A lange qwartere þam byhynde,
þe galy rent with the brande
In the see, als I vnderstande.
þan ware þe Sarayenes armed wele,
Bothe in iryn and in stele,
And stode one borde, and faughte full harde
Agayne the doughty Kyng Richerd.
And Kyng Richerde and his knyghtis
Slew the Sarayenes dounrightis.
And als þat þay gan wirke þam woo,
Ay stod þay vp moo and moo
And rapped one þam, for the nonys,
Ful steryn strokes with full grete stonyis
Owte of the topcastell so hye,
Þat Kyng Richard was neuer his dede so nye.
þan come seue galays at theire hande
To the dromunde full faste saylande,
And stode one borde bothe baroun & knyghte
To help Kyng Richerd for to fighte.
A full stronge batayle þan there bygan
Bytwene þam and the heythyn men;
With suerdís, sperys and dirent kene,
And flones and qwarellis ay flowe bitwene
Also thikke, withowtten stynte,
Als hayle afte þonour dnyt.
And in that bekerryng þat was so harde,
Into the dromound wane Kyng Richerde,
And when þat he was wonn in alle in haste,
He drissed his rygg reghte to the maste.
And with his axe, þat he reche myghte,
Full hastily to the dede he þam dighte.
And some he hitt appon the bacenet, on the helmet
tat he claft hym euin into the nekke, cut open
And some into the girdle-stede, waist
And some vnto the schippes borde, to the ship's deck
And some appon the halse hit he

Pat helme and hede flewe into pe see. helmet / head
Pe Sarajenis pan, als I slow telle, f.140vb
Sayd he was the deuyll of helle.
And ouer the borde pan lepped thay
And drowned pamselfe, als I slow say.

Sextene hundredte he ther quellede, battle
Bot thrittly appon lyfe he helde

Pat pay solde bere witnesse
Of this batalle at pe cite of Acris. found
He fande pan in the dromonde, sance fayle,

Full mekill store of noble vetayle, much / supplies
And many a barelle of furrou Gregis, many barrels / Greek fire
And many a thowsande of bowes Tourkys,
Hoked arowes, & quarells.

Full full he fand many barelles,
And of whete full grete plente,

Ynoughe of golde, & siluere, & of ilke daynte. plenty of wheat
Of pe tresour hade he noghte be sowme
Pat in the dromounde was fownde;
For it was drownede in the flode

Or unchargede was the gude. sink / sea
Avawnced was alle Cristyante,
For had pe dromounde passede pe see
And comen to Acris fro Kyng Richerde,

Ane hundrethe wyntter afterwarde,
For alle the Cristyn men vnder pe sone,

Hadde noghte pe Cite of Acris bene wonn.

Bot than Kyng Richerde anone righte immediately
Towarde Acris he gan hym dighte.
And als he sayled towarde Surry,

He was warnede of a spy
How tat he folke of pe haythyn lawe,
A full grete cheyne had done drawe
Ouere pe hauen of Acris fers,
And was festede to two pelers,

Pat no schippe solde in ther wyn
Nor pay noghte owte pat is therein.
Therefore seuen 3ere, & somedele mare,
Alle Cristyn knyghtis pat laye there
Ware stedde with grete hunge & soffrede myche pyn

For lettynge of that ilke chyne. hindering / same
Bot when Kyng Richerde herde tat tydnyge,
For joye his hert bygan to singe,
And sware & seid in his thoghte:
‘Alle that theym schall avayle righte noghte!’

59

2625 A swythe strange galy than he toke,
And Trenchemere, so says the booke,
He steryde the galy righte euyn
Into the middis of the hauen.
And ware the maryners blythe or wrathe,

2630 He garte þam saile and rowe bathe
Þat the galy went alswa swyfte,
Als any foule by the lifte.
And Kyng Richerde, þat was so gude,
With his noble axe in the forschippe stode.

2635 And when he come vnto the cheyne,
With his axe he smate it in twayne,
Þat alle the barouns, verrament,
Sayden it was ane hugge dynt.
And for joye of that ilke dede,

2640 The coppes full faste abowte 3ede
With gude wyne, pyment, & clarre,
And saylede forthe to Acres, þe citee.
Kyng Richerde owte of his galy
Caste wilde fyre into the sky,

2645 And fire Gregeys also into the see,
Als alle one fire brynte solde bee.
The trompes 3oden in his galy,
Þat men myghte þam here into þe sky.
Gunnys he hade made one wondir wyes,

2650 Hedouse mangonells & of full grete prys,
Alblastirs, and bowes made with gyn
The Haly Lande alle for to wynn.
Bot ouer alle other, full wittirly,
A milne he hade made of grete maistry

2655 In middis a schipe for to stande;
Swilke anothir ne sawe 3it neuer no man in lande.
And foure sailes were ordeyned þerto:
3alowe, & rede, and grene, & bloo,
With canvays were þay layde abowte,

2660 Full sekire within & eke withowte.
And alle within weren full of fire,
With torches made of waxe full clere,
Querethowte and also endланge.
With strynges of wire weren wele hyngande

2665 Stonys that dide no noþer note,
And grande þay noþer corne ne grote,
Bot rubbyd, als þoghe Þay were wode,
And owte at þe eghe rane there rede blode.
And byfore the trowghere there stode ane,

2670 Alle blody abowte he was bygane,
And hormnes grete he hade appon his hede;
Þe Sarægenes weren of hym sore afferde,
For Þat it was appon þe myrke nyghte,
Therefore they were all wonderful of that sight:

His tail to the earth he drew
The Saracens had pain sorow ynoth, And said pain it was the fende of hel
That was comen pain alle to quelle;
For the roibynge of the stonys,

They wende it hade bene mannes bones.
Bot a lítill byfore the daye,
Clenly alle was done awaye.

**King Richard**, aftir that mervayle,
Went swithe to lande, sance faile.

The **King of France** agayne hym went
And in his armes he hym hent,
And kissed hym with grete honoure,
And so did bothe kynges and emperoure.
Alle the kynges of Crystyndome

Lay ther full lange or Kyng Richard come;
Pay laye there seuen 3ere, I vnistryande,
Or Kyng Richerde come to that lande.
And ther the Erchbishoppe of Pys
Did to Kyng Richerde there his seruyce,

And ledden hym, als 3e may see,
Into a pauelyoun full preualy,
And talde hym a dolefull tale
Of schrewede auntsours, withowtten faile.
‘Kyng Richerde,’ he sayde, ‘herkyn nowe here,
This segge has lastede his seuen 3ere.
It ne may noghte forthe, he pou bolde,
For mekill is the sorowe that we hafe tholed.
For we ne hade no maner of halde ne castelle,
Sothely, sir, als I the telle,

Bot a wyde dyke & a depe
Was made al abowte vs in to kepe,
With grete berbycanes, for pe nonnes,
Full wele wroghte with hard stones.
And when that dyke was alle wele made,

Saladyn, the sowdane, was pain full glade
And come one vs with full grete rowte,
And vmbysett vs alle abowte.
And with hym Sir Markys Mawferaunt,
That leys one Mawhoun and Termagaunt.

He was a Cristyn kyng somwhile,
Bot he dose till vs mare schame & gyle
Pan dose the sowdane and alle his oste.
Now the Fadir, & the Sonc, & the Holy Goste
Graunt hym grace of worldis schame,

Sir Markys Feraunt, by his name!
Oure firste batelle now, skirly,
Was welle strange and welle ded[1]ly

---

**Kyng** Richard, aftir that mervayle,
Went swithe to lande, sance faile.

The **King of France** agayne hym went
And in his armes he hym hent,
And kissed hym with grete honoure,
And so did bothe kynges and emperoure.
Alle the kynges of Crystyndome

Lay ther full lange or Kyng Richard come;
Pay laye there seuen 3ere, I vnistryande,
Or Kyng Richerde come to that lande.
And ther the Erchbishoppe of Pys
Did to Kyng Richerde there his seruyce,

And ledden hym, als 3e may see,
Into a pauelyoun full preualy,
And talde hym a dolefull tale
Of schrewede auntsours, withowtten faile.
‘Kyng Richerde,’ he sayde, ‘herkyn nowe here,
This segge has lastede his seuen 3ere.
It ne may noghte forthe, he pou bolde,
For mekill is the sorowe that we hafe tholed.
For we ne hade no maner of halde ne castelle,
Sothely, sir, als I the telle,

Bot a wyde dyke & a depe
Was made al abowte vs in to kepe,
With grete berbycanes, for pe nonnes,
Full wele wroghte with hard stones.
And when that dyke was alle wele made,

Saladyn, the sowdane, was pain full glade
And come one vs with full grete rowte,
And vmbysett vs alle abowte.
And with hym Sir Markys Mawferaunt,
That leys one Mawhoun and Termagaunt.

He was a Cristyn kyng somwhile,
Bot he dose till vs mare schame & gyle
Pan dose the sowdane and alle his oste.
Now the Fadir, & the Sonc, & the Holy Goste
Graunt hym grace of worldis schame,

Sir Markys Feraunt, by his name!
Oure firste batelle now, skirly,
Was welle strange and welle ded[1]ly

---

**Archbishop of Pisa**

led

pavilion privately
dreadful misfortune

listen

may not continue, you can be sure

much / suffered

hold or castle

certainly

ditch / a deep [one]

fortifications

built

sultan

on / company

besieged

Marquis of Montferrat

believes in

some time ago

doeth / more

Grant him the grace of world's shame

certainly

strong / deadly
And wele faughte oure Cristyn knyghtis,
And slewe the Saraænes downnrightis.

2725
Oure Cristyn haden ther the maystry,
And the Saraænes fledde, with wa & crye;
For we slewe full many of þam thoo,
And ðay full fele of vs also.
And I sall telle the thorowe whatt case

2730
For to many a man felle sorowe, alias!
Ais that we dide the Saraænes to dede,
And lowe one side, alle and some,
And come one vs with stronge fighte,
And slewe many Cristyn men downrighte.
And ther we loste, or we it wiste.

2735
The Saraænes sees þat pay come,
And flowe one side, alle and some,
And come one vs with stronge fighte,
And slewe many Cristyn men downrighte.
And ther we loste, or we it wiste,

2740
The beste bodies vndir Criste:
The ErIe Ferres of Inglande,
Was noghte a doghetiere knyght of hande,
And þe Emperour of Almayne,
And Jeryn, þe ErIe of alle Lawe Spayne,

2745
And elleuen thousande of oure menæe,
There was slayne with grete pite.
And thereof was þe sowdane full glade,
And one þe morne a newe assawte he made;
ðay garte þan take alle þe corpses,

2750
Bothe of dede men & of horse,
And caste þam into þe watir of oure welle
Vs for to poysoun & for to quelle.
Dide he neuere no verse a dede
To Cristyn men for nonekyns nede;

2755
For thurgh þat poysone & þat stynke,
Fourty thousande was slayne, als I thynke.
And affirwarde nowe it es noghte to hide;
þe thirde case vs gan betyde;
A schipe come saylande one the see,

2760
Chargede with whete, full grete plente,
With wilde fire, and arowes bryghte,
To helpe þe Saraænes for to fyghte.
Oure Cristyn toke to rede, sance faile,
ðay wolde go to & it assaile;

2765
And soo þay dide to þaire damage.
Þe wynde blewe full harde, & with grete rage,
Þe Saraænes thane drewe vpe þaire saile,
And ouersailede oure folkes, withowtten faile.
And there we loste fourty score

2770
Of the beste bodies þat euer were bore.
This was þe bygynnynge of oure care,
Þat we hafe hadde seuen 3ere & mare.
And 3it, Sir Kyng, þou salle here mare
þat vs hase greued wondir sare.

2775 One a Seynt John daye, verrament,
þe Saracenow owte of Acris went
Wele a myle owte one syde,
And pighte pauelyouns rownde & wyde,
And sogeorunyde there a full lone ge while,
hear more
sorely
[i.e. 24 June]
pitched
stayed
deceive
brave
wealth

2780 And alle it was vs to begyle.
Oure Cristyn men, þat weryn wighte,
Erles, barouns, sqwyere, & knyghte.
The Saracenow weren prowde & hade reches,
And we of alle gudes grete nede & distresse;
boots
wealth

2785 We thoghte to wynne vnto oure praye
Off that tresoure and that noblaye.
Thane fourty thowsande men armyd full wele,
Bothe in iryn and in stele,
Went thane forthe to batelynge;
the assault
saw
immediately
came
rode / speed

2790 And the Saracenow sees of þaire commynge,
And flede one syde full suythe theaste.
And oure men come one in haste,
And gane to ryde with grete rawndoun
To þay come to þaire pauelyoun
saw
immediately
came
rode / speed

2795 And þay fande þerin no manere of forehede,
And þerfore þay wende þat þay hade fled for drede.
And ther they fonde whete, brede, & wynes,
Golde, and siluer, and bawdkyns.
And vesselle of siluer, & cowppes of golde,
rich textiles

2800 3a, mekill mare than they take wolde.
And some stode, and Oper some satt þam doun,
And ete, & dranke full grete foysoun.
And aftir mete, their pauelyouns newe,
With theire suerdys doun þay hewe.
Indeed, much more
some others sat
plenty
the meal, their [i.e. the Saracen's]
swords / cut
packed / provisions
foolish

2805 And charged horses with vetayle,
Als nyce men, withotwen faile,
Gold and siluere and clotthis white,
And with their girdills togëdir knytt.
When þat ilke man hade þaire chargynge,
pan hame þay walde, withotwen tarynng.
the meal, their [i.e. the Christian's] departure
came running fast
Briefly, a great horde
surrounded

2810 The Saracenow one þaire wendynge
[And comen afftyr faste flyngynge,]
Ashort wordes, a full grete rowte,
And vembysett oure Cristyn alle abowte.
Every man / burden
would [come] home / delay

2815 And thane some thaire malys doun caste,
And with the Saracenow faughte full faste.
And there we loste fourty thousandes
Ful noble men and hardy of hande.
And this case greuede vs so sare,
incident / grieved / bitterly

2 Missing in B, supplied from C p. 30b. Thornton, or his exemplar, must have failed to copy the line, which is necessary to make the passage intelligible.
We wende ilkane haue bene forfare.
Bot God, þat is almyghty kynge,
He sent vs sone socourrynge:
The doughety Erle of Champayne,
And þe gud knyghttis of Bretayne,

And Sir Raundolfe de Glamauylls,
John the Nele, and his brodir Miles.
And Bawdewyne, a clerk full mery,
And the Erbsbishoppe of Cantirbery,
And with hym come his eme nowe,

A b[a]roun of full grete vertue,
Hubert Gawnntir of Ynglan[d]e,
Agayne the Sarasenes for to stande.
And many a knyghte of Hungry,
And othere full noble cheualry,

Pan helde we full strange batayle,
Bot a full harde case vs felle, sance fayle.
At Michaelmes, as it mygte be talde,
Be whethire was waxen full swythe calde,
And than it felle bothe rayne & hayle,

And sawe fyue fote depe, sance fayle.
Thownour, levynnynge, & whethir full toughe;
For hungre oure folkes full faste it slough,
For hungre we loste, & for calde wyndys,
Of oure folkes sixty thowsandes.

And than oure noble horses we sloughe,
Sethide, and ete the guttis toughe.
Be flesche was delte with grete deynte;
Berof, iwyssse, no man hade plente.
To peces, iwyssse, þay kerued alle þe hede,

And one þe coles we garte theym sprede,
And in the watir we boyled the blode;
And that vs thoghte mete full gude.
A quarter of whete þan men vs saulde
For lx pownde þan of penys taulde.

For fourty pounde men saulde ane oxe,
And þit was he bot of a littill waxe.
A swyne for a hundrethe floryne,
A gose for halfe a marke of golde fyne.
For ane hene, slyke tythynge,

Men gafe of penys ten schelynge.
And for ane ege penys ellueunn,
And for a pere sex or seuenn.
For ane appille penys sex;
And thus bigane oure folke to vnwaxe,

And died for wa & for hungre sare.
Be riche men þan toke þaire rede thare,
A riche dale þat þay wolde dighte
To barouns and to ilke pore knyghte.
Twelue penys men gaffe to ilke pore knyghte,
And sex penys to oþer þat were not so mekil of myghte,
And iij penys to þe smalle wightis,
And thus the riche men þair dale dightis.
And therwith bothe the more & the lesse,
Boghte theym flesche of horse & asse.

Pay myghte hafe no noþer thynge,
For whet tornys, ne sterlynge.
Now hafe I taule the, Sîr Kyng, full faire,
Off oure folkes and alle oure care,
And alle the damage of Acris oste.

There louyde now be the Holy Goste,
And Mary that bare oure lord Jhesu,
That thou arte nowe comyn amanges vs!
For thurgh thi helpe we hope full snelle
The Sara3enes boste downn to felle.'

King Richerd than wepe with his egyne bothe,
And sythen he seid thus: 'Sîr, forsothe,
Sir Bischope,' he said, 'pray þe for vs
þat we may hafe helpe of oure lorde Jhesu
His fase alle clenly for to distroye,
þat þay na mare vs anoye!'
Kyng Richerde than lepe appon his stede,
And prikked owte of that forehede.
And rode abowte the close dyke,
Towarde Acris, full sekirlyke,

Till he come to the Hospitalle
Of Seyne John, als I fynde in tale,
And there he sett his pauelyoun.
And areryde his Mategriffoun;
þat was a tre-castelle full fyn

To assawte the prowde Sarayyne
That he myghte see into þe cite of Acris,
And he hade broghte twelue schippes ful of bees.
When the castell was framyde wele,
And sett therin a gud mawngonelle,

Keste those hyves full grete plente.
The whedir was hate in somers tyde,
Those bees braste owte one euery syde
And were anoyed & full of grame,
And dide those Sara3enes full mekill schame;

For þay þam tangede in the vesage,
þat alle the Sara3enes were nere rage.
þay saide: 'Kyng Richerd was wele felle
When þat his flyes bitys so snelle.'
And anóþer thynge gane Kyng Richerd vp [sett]
At men callede a Robynett;
A strange gyn, for the nones,
Bot than Kyng Richerd, he Conquerour,
Called in haste to hym his mynour,

And bad hym myn vp to he heghe toure
Bot is callede Maudit Colour;
And sware his athe, by Seynt Symoun:
By none, and also he vvttirmaste walle,

He solde hym hewe in pecys smalle.
And engynis grete stanys & bees into caste.
In Saracenes than theym armed alle,
And rane in haste vpon the walle.

In white schetis bay gane theym gise,
For the bitynge of his flyes.
And seid: 'This mane dose vs grete pyne,
We ne saughe neuer no mane so bygyn,
It is grete dowte he will vs wynn!'

Kygnd Richerde stode in his Matgriffoun,
And sawe alle their dedis in pe toun;
And whedirwardes the Sarayenes flewe,
And archers arowes amanges pam threwe,

And alblastereres garre ga full smerte,
Thurgh legges, armes, hedis, & hert.
The Franche men, with grete noblaye,
Helpede to myn that ilke same daye;
Paire vvttirmaste walle was doun ycastle,

And many Sarayenes died there in haste.
Pat day Kyng Richerd so sped there,
Pat he was haldyn for a conquerere;
For bettir he spede pat daye or none
Than alle other in seuen 3ere hade done.

The Sarayenes than no lengare myghte dure,
Bot they flewe vp into the hege toure,
And lighted torches abowte he walle
Pat myghte it [seene] he contre ouer alle.
The torches keste so grete a lighte,

For that bytakeneyle a newe fighte
Pat was comyn fro Ynglande,
Pat bay ne mygte noghte agayn stande
Bot giffe that Saladyn, the sowdane,
Come pam to helpe with many mo men.

And Saladyn was ten myle thethyn,
And sees the torches so brighte byrnye.
Bot than he gedirde folkes togedir,
Als thik als rayne in wate wedire.
And they assembled appon a playne,
Besyde Acres, one a mountayne:
Sixty thousand footmen, as I fynde.
And kneches of haye he garte þam bynde,
And go byfore full hastilyke
For to fill þe Cristynmens dyke.

And righte there þay token to rede,
To do alle Cristyn-men to þe dede.
And aftir þam come barouns & knyghtis,
Ane hundrethe thousands full strong in fightis.
By ordre þay come in þaire maners,
And of rede sendale weren þaire baners
With thre griffouns [depaintede] wele,
And of azur a grete bendelle.
And sone aftir þam com also many
Of barouns þam aftir in gentill company;
Þaire consyance & þaire pensels
Weren wroghte alle of grene sendelle,
And on cuerilkon a dragoun,
Als þoghe he faughte with a lyoun.
Þe firste was rede, & this was grene,
Þan come the thirde aftir byhynde
With fyve & sixty thousands knyghtis,
In ynde armede at alle rightis.
And aftir þam, als whitte als snawe,
Come fifty thousands, one a rawe,
And theym amange was Sir Saladyn,
And his eme also, Sir Rabolyne.
Þaire baners were whyte, withoutten fable,
With thre Sara3ene hedis the consyable,
Þat weren yschapede full noble & large,
Of balain both schelde and targe,
Noo manne ne cauthen telle the rowtte
Þat þan bysett the Cristyne al abowte.

The fotemen keste in knechis of haye
To make þe horsemen redy waye,
And fillde þe dyke alle vp righte,
Þat þe horsemen wele entyre myghte.
The Sara3enes hade nerehande entred in,
Warne God of heuen had to þam seene.
The crye rase þan amanges the Cristyn,
And knyghttis hafe þaire armours takyn,
And sayden: 'Bot if we haue þe bettir socoure,
We be forlorne by Saynte Sauour!'
And ther myghte men see many wighte man
Þat hastily to þaire armours wane,
And went full qwikly to the dyke
And defendide it full manlyke;
Bot there was many a gentill heuede,
Full hastily fra þaire bodies wevede.
And many steidis stekide alswa,
    And many a knyghte lese his armys,
    And many a stede drewe after þam þaire tharmes,
    And many a doughty man, sance faile,
There was slayne in that batayle.

And many stedis stekide alswa,
    horses were killed
    lost their weapons
    entrails

But then / sick
    curse

they were all very sorrowful
proclaimed

fear of death

hold
    should not

should not

sick

rigours of the sea-journey
air / region
unnatural cold & heat
food & drink / not agreeable
humours / found there
was accustomed
to seek out
physician
No matter if he were
 inspected his urine
everyone / gave his opinion
there was none
make / end
release him from his pains
And / sorrowful
anguish
too
painfully sick
On their knees / host

faithfully
recovery

through / dear lady [i.e. Mary]
son
high virtue
came out / fever

3 Neither ransom nor payment will be accepted for them.
To mete had he haued no sauour,  
To wyne ne to watir ne to no lycoure.  
Bot aftir porke hym sore langede,

3070 And giff bat his [men] solde bene hangede,  
Phay ne myghte, in that contree,  
For golde ne siluere, nere no monec,  
No porke fynde, noþer take ne gete,  
Bat Kyng Richerd myghte of ete.

3075 Bot ane alde knyghte was with Richerd þe kyng,  
And when he wiste of that tythynge,  
Full wele he wiste bat Kyng Richerd manners wer [slyke].

To þe stiewarde he spake full preualyke,  
‘Oure lorde ligges full sore seke, ywysse,  
And aftir porke hyrn sore langes or this,  
And þe ne may none fynde to selle  
Bot lokes þat no man be so hardy hyrn to telle.  
And giff þat þe do, he will dy this daye!

3080 And þow buse do als I þowe saye,  
þat no man ne wiete noghte of þat:  
Take a Sarayyne, 3onge and fatt,  
And in haste the thefe be slayne here,  
þat he þeroft may ete his dynere.  
And lokes þat þe seþe it full hastily,

3085 With powdir righte gude, & spysorye,  
And also with saferonne of gude colour.  
And when þat Kyng Richerd felis þat sauour,  
Owte of his agu & he be went.  
He sall therto hafe full gud talent  
When he hase therof wele ytaste,  
And also etyn a full gud repaste,

3090 And suppes of the brothe a sope,  
Than slepe he schall full wele, I hope.  
And by Goddes myghte, & my consayle,  
Ful sone he schall be sounde & hale.’  
Bot the sothe to saye at wordis fewe,  
Full sodeynly slayne was þat heythyn schrewe,

3100 And bifoðe Kyng Richerd þan was he broghte.  
Now quod his folkes: ‘Loo, Sir, we hafe porke soghte,  
Etis nowe, and suppis peroffe a soupe,  
And thurghe Cristys myghte it schall be thi bote.’  
[Beffore Kyng Rychar, karf a knyt3te,  
He eet faster þan he kerue myyt3te,  
þe kyng eet þe flesch & gnew þe bones,

3105 Etis nowe, and suppis þeroft a soupe,  
And thurghe Cristys myghte it schall be thi bote.’  
[Beffore Kyng Rychar, karf a kny3te,  
He eet faster þan he kerue my3te,  
þe kyng eet þe flesch & gnew þe bones,  
þe kyng eet þe flesch & gnew þe bones,  
& drank wel afflyr, for þe nones.

3110 And whene he hadde eeten inow3,  
Hys folk hem tournyd away & low3.  
He lay stylle, & drow3 in hys arme,  
Hys chaunbyrlyayn hym wrappyd warme.

\[4\] He knew very well what Richard's circumstances were.
He lay & slepte & swette a stounde, 
And become hool & sounde. 
Kyn Richard cladde hym & aros, 
And walkyd abouten in pe clos. 
To alle folk he hym schewyd, 
3115
Glad was bope leryd & lewyd, 
And þankyd Jhesu & Marye, 
þat he was out off his maladye. 
þe Sare3ynes spedde day & ny3t 
þe dyke to wynne with here my3t. 
3120
þe barbycanes þey felden adown, 
And hadden ny3 entryd in þe comoun. 
Whenne Kyng Richard þeroff herde, 
As a wood man he spak & ferde: 
‘Armes me in myn armure, 
3125
For loue off Cryst, our creature, 
To fyyte I haue gret delyte 
Wip houndes þat wil vs do despyte. 
Now I me fynde hool & ly3t, 
his day schal I proue my comoun. 
3130
3iff I be strong as I was won, 
And 3iff I strokes dele cone, 
As I was wunt in Yngeland, 
Haue I myn ax in myn hand, 
Al þat I mete schal me fele, 
3135
And swylk dole I schal hem dele, 
þat euere for loue off here Mahoun 
þey schole haue here warysoun.’ 
He was armyd to alle ry3tes, 
And hys footemen, squyers, & kny3tes, 
3140
And þe Crystene alle bedene; 
Wondyr was þat hoost to sene. 
þe soþe to say & nou3t to hele, 
þe heþene were twoo so fele. 
3145
Our kyng among þe Sare3ynes ryt, 
And some to þe sadyl he slyt, 
A kyng he hytte aboue þe scheeld, 
þat hed & helm fley3 into þe feeld, 
Anþer he had a strok ibrouȝt 
þat al hys armure halp hym nouȝt, 
3150
Into þe sadyl he cleff þe ferȝe, 
Al þat he smot it fleyȝ to þe erȝe. 
Blyȝe was þe Crystene felawred, 
Off Kyng Richard & off hys dede, 
For non armour wipstood hys ax, 
3155
No more þan a knyff dos in þe wax. 
Whenne þe sawdon seyȝ hym so strong, 
He sayde þe deuyl was hem among; 
For Kyng Richard ryt doun slowȝ. 
3160
Wip al hys hoost he hym withdrow3
he [i.e. the sultan] retreated
And fleY3 quyk with hys barounnage
fled quickly
Into a toun men calles Gage,
certainly / rear-guard
But seres, al pe rerewarde
slain by KR
Was islayn wip Kyng Rycharde.
were
pe Sareynys pat in Acres ware,
saw
Were anoyyd & full off care,
They [i.e. the Saracens] / kept the fight going
Whene pey see3en pe sawdon flee
saw
And Kyng Richard doury3t slee.
slaying [Saracens] to the ground
Bus al pe day tyl it was ny3t
They [i.e. the Saracens] / kept the fight going
pe & pe Crystene heeld pe fy3t.

3175
At euen, whenne pe sunne was set,
In the evening / sun
Euery man drow3 to hys recet.
drew / refuge
To reste for pey were wery.
both poor

3180
Kyng Richard leet make a cry
gave an order
Trusty folk pat ny3t pe paleys to kepe,
to watch the palisade
Whyl pat opere lay & slepe.
outside
pe Sareynys pat were withouten,
had won the battle
Off Kyng Richard so sore hem douten

3185
For he hadde pe prys iwunne,
kept the fight going
Away pay ryden & swyYe rumne
[That] rode away / ran fast
pe ny3t to fle & to hyde,
pat non off hem durste hym abyde
pe mountenaunce off ten myle.
dared to remain
Wente withinne pe clos dyche
Within ten miles of him
to watch the palisade
To reste for pey were wery.
both poor

3190
When Kyng Richard hadde restyd a whyle,
loosened the laces of his armour
A knY3t hys armes gan vnlace;
To comfort & ease him
Hym to counfforte & solace,
a piece of bread soaked in wine
Hym was brou3t a sop in wyn.
ate before / ordered
‘pe hed off pat ylke swyn
my illness / afraid
‘pe hed off eet,’ pe cook he bad,
head / same swine
‘For feble I am, feynt & mad.
ordered
Off myn euyl now I am fere,
Unless
Serue me perwith at my sopere.’
Said / do not have
Quod pe cook: ‘pat hed I ne haue.’

3200
penne sayde pe kyng: ‘So God me saue,
Unless
But I see pe hed off pat swyn,
saw that he could not do otherwise
Forsope, pou schalt lese þyn!’
fetched
pe cook seý3 non obir may bee,
He [i.e. the cook] / cried
He fette pe hed & leet hym see,
Behold
He fel on knees, & made a cry:
dark face / saw
‘Loo here pe hed, my lord, mercy!’
black beard
Hys swarte vys whenne pe kyng seeþ,
lips / grinned
Hys blake berd & hys whyte teep,
laughed / mad
Hou hys lyppys grennyd wyde:
before / I knew [it]
‘What deuyl is pis?’ pe kyng cryde,

3210
And gan to law3e as he were wood.
What, is Sareynys flesch pus good & neuere erst I nou3t wyste?
By Godys depe & hys vpyste,
3215 Schole we neuere dye for defawte
Whyl we may, in any assawte,
Sle Sare3ynys, þe flesch mowe taken,
Seþen & roste hem & doo hem baken,
Gnawen here flesch to þe bones.

3220 Now I haue it prouyd ones,
For hungyr ar I be woo,
I & my folk schole eete moo!
On þe morwe, withouten fayle,
þe cyte þey gynne for to assayle.

3225 þe Sare3ynes myȝte nouȝt endour,
þey fledde into þe heyȝe tour
And cryeden: ‘Trewes & parlement!’
To Kyng Richard, þat was so gent,
And alsoo to þe Kyng off Fraunce,
& bad mercy, withoff here dystaunse;
Anon stood vp here latymer
And cryede lowde wiþ voys cler:
‘HERIS,’ he sayde, ‘gentyl lordynges,
I þow brynge goode tydynges
3230 þat Saladyn 3ow sent by me:
He wolde þat Acrold be bee,
And Jerusalem into ȝoure hand,
And off Surry al þe land
To flum Jordan, þe water clere,
For ten þousand besauntes be þere.
And ȝyll þat þe wolde nouȝt soo,
þe schole haue pes for eueremo,
So þat þe make Kyng off Surry
Markes Feraunt off gret maystry;
3235 For he is strengeste man, ywis,
Off Cristyndom & off heþenys.’
Þene answeryd Kyng Richard:
‘POULYES,’ he sayde, ‘fyle coward
In ylke gaderyng & in ylke a pres
Markes is fals, traytour & les,
He has whytyd Saladynys hand
To be Kyng off Surrye-land.
And be þe kyng in Trynyte,
þat traytour schal it neuere bee!

3250 He was Crystene be my fadyr day,
And sibben he has renayyd his lay,
And is becomen a Sareȝyn.
Þat God geue hym wel euele fyn,
He is wurs þan an hound!

3255 He robbyd syxty þousand pound
Out off þe Hospytelers hand,
þat my fadyr sente into þis land –
þat was callyd Kyng Henry –

death / resurrection
We should / die / lack [of food]
attāck
Slay / take [their] flesh
Boil / roast them / bake them
[And] Gnaw their
tasted once
Before I am afflicted by hunger
shall eat more
The next day
began to attack
could not hold out
high tower
cried / Truce / parley

begged / without delay
their interpreter
clear voice
Listen
news
has sent you
wishes / [should] be surrendered

C p.37b

Syria
As far as the river Jordan
silver coins per year
if you do not want it this way
You will / peace
As long as / King of Jerusalem
Marquis of Montferrat / mastery
the strongest / certainly
the heathen world
Then
You lie / wretched
every company / battle
&[a] liar
bribed Saladin
King of Jerusalem
by the King of Trinity
never be [king]
a Christian / in my father’s time
since then / renounced / his faith
has become
May God give him an evil end
worse / a dog

[Knights] Hospitallers’
Crystene men to gouerny.

3265 I hote hym goo out of pis hoost,
For I swere be þe Holy Gost,
And be Marye þat bare Jhesus,
Fynde I þat traytour among vs,
Oþer be nyȝt, oþer be dawe,

3270 Wiþ wylde hors he schal be drawe!
Þene answeryd þe Kyng off Fraunce
To Kyng Richard, wipouten destaunce:
‘A suffre, sere, bele amys,
Þou hast wrong, sere, be Seynt Denys,

3275 þat þou pretyst þat markis
Þat ye neuer ȝit dede amis.
3yff he haue ony þyng don ylle
He schal amende it at þy wylle.
I am his borwȝ: Loo, here þe gloue,

3280 Tak it, leue sere, for my loue!’
‘Nay,’ quod Kyng Richard, ‘be God my lord,
Ne schal I neuer wiþ hym acord!
Ne hadde neuer be lost Acres toun,
Ne hadde ben þorwȝ hys tresoun.

3285 3yff he ȝelde agayn my faderis tresour,
And Jerusalem wiþ gret honour,
Þenne my wrapþe I hym forgeue,
And neuer ellys whyl þat I leue.’
Kyng Phylyp was woo þerfore,

3290 But he durste speke no more,
For euere he drede off dentys hard
To styrt vndyr off Kyng Richard.
And whenne þe latymer herde þis,
Þat þe kyng louyd nouȝt þe markys,

3295 ‘Heres,’ he sayde, ‘goode lordynges,
I ȝow brynge oþir tydynges
Þat mekyl more is to ȝoure wylle:
Þat oure folk may passe styyle
Wiþ lyff & leme, hand & arme,

3300 Þat non off hem haue ony harme,
And we wole ȝelde ȝow þis toun,
And þe Holy Croys with gret renoun,
And syxty þousand presouns þerto,
And an hundrid þousand besauntes & moo.

3305 And haue ȝe schole alsoo herinne
Rych treseore & mekyl wynne
Helmes & hawberkes syxty þousynd,
And oþer ryhchesse I may ȝow fynde:
Whete inowȝ & oþir tresore,

3310 To al ȝoure hoost seuen ȝer & more.
And ȝiff þe wole nouȝt þis fonge,
We may kepe ȝow out ful longe
And euere to fynde on off oures
For to slen ten of 3oures; 3315
For we haue herinne, withouten fab[le], Syxty þousand men fensable.
And we praye for þe loue of God, þat 3e wolden taken oure bode:
Takes þe tresore more & lasse, 3320
And lat vs quynt awy passe.’
Penne answereyd Kyng Richard:
‘In myn halff, I graunte þe foreward
So þat 3e let vs in come,
It schal be don al & some.’
3325 Þey leten hem in come anon, Þey token hem into hostage ylkon,
And into presoun toke hem þare. Olde & þonge, lesse & mare
Moste non out of Acres toun, 3330
Tyl þat payde were here raunsoun, And þe holy croys þerwip,
Ar þey moste haue pes or griþ. þere was founde catel strong,
þat was delyd þe knyȝtes among;
3335 Cuntek was at þe in-comyng, þe beste tresore hadde Richard oure kyng.
Crystene presouns in Acres toun, He gaff hem cloþis gret foysoun,
Mete & drynk & armes bryȝte, And made hem fel for to fyȝte,
3340 And took hem into hys part yes To venge God off hys enemes.

Kyne Richard in Acres hadde nome Of Sareȝynys þat were þedir icome,
3345 þat were hys strengeste enemes Hardy knyȝtes & off most prys,
Off heþenesse cheff lordynes,
Prynces, dukes sones, & kynges,
Amyryllys, & many sawdan –
3350 Here names nouȝt telle I can –
In presoun þey lay bounden faste. To þe sawdon þey sente in haste:
‘We bere so manye grete cheynes,
3355 þat we may neþer sytte ne lye,
But 3e vs out of presoun bye,
And wiþ raunsoun vs helpe & borwe, We schole dye or þe þrydde morwe.’
 þe rych sawdon was woo þerfore,
Prynces, eerles, weel twoo score,
Amyyll, sawdon, & many lord
 Seyden: ‘We rede, make acord

to slay here / without lying armed men
you would take our offer Take / all
let us / leave without impediment
For my part, I grant the agreement
you let us [the Saracens] let them / at once
[ KR’s men] took each of [the Saracens] at once
young / common & noble [were] unable to leave
their ransom was paid with it the true cross
Before / might have / peace / truce
in Acre / treasure
shared out among the knights Quarrelling / entry [into Acre]
[KTo the] Christian prisoners gave clothes / in great abundance
Food / bright armour ready to fight
host

captured strongest
Brave knights / renown lords of the heathen world
Emirs / sultans
Their / I cannot tell prison / bound
[have to] bear / great chains
their men [i.e. the Christians]
Unless you buy us out ransom / secure
die before / third day
distressed
earls / [i.e. forty]
advice you
Wip Kyng Richard, þat is so stoute,
For to delyuere oure chyldren oute,
3365 þat þey ne be hongyd, ne to drawe;
Off tresore Kyng Richard wole be fawe,
þat oure chyldren may come hom hayl.
Charges mules & hors, be oure counsayl,
Off brende gold & off bawdekyln,
3370 For oure heyres to make fyn,
Men saye Englyssche loue weel gyffte.
3380 & wole be þy frend for eueremore –
For þe presouns þat þou dest neme,
Let hem goo wiþ lyff & leme,
Out off presoun þat þou hem lete,
þat no man hem slee ne bete;
3385 For alle þey are douȝty vassales,
Kynges sones, & amyrales,
At þis tyme þe beste doande
þat be in alle Sare3yn lande,
And oure hoost most trustes too.
3390 Saladyn loues hem wel alsoo,
Lese non off hem he wolde
Nouȝt for a þousand pound off golde.'
Kyling Richard spak with wurdis mylde:
‘Pe gold to take, God me schylde;
3395 Among 30w partes euery charge.
I brouȝte in schyppes & in barge
More gold & syluyr wiþ me
Þen has 3oure lord & swylke þree.
To hys tresore haue I no nede,
3400 But, for my loue, I 3ow bede
To mete wiþ me þat 3e dwelle,
And afftyrward I schal 3ow telle,
þorwȝ counsayl I schal 3ow answere
What bode 3e schal 3oure lord bere;'
3405 þey grauntyd hym wiþ good wylle.
Kyling Richard callyd hys marchal stytle,
And in counsayl took hym anon,
‘I schal 3e tell what þou schal don:
Stylly goo you to þe presoun,
3410 þe Sare3ynys off most renoun
þat be comen off þe rycheste kynne,
Priuyly lat slee hem withinne,
And ar þe hedes off þou smyte,
Looke euery manmys name þou wryte
before you cut their heads off
Look that you write every man's name
3415 Upon a scrowe off parchemyn.
a scroll of parchment
And bere þe hedes to þe kechyn,
carry / kitchen
And in a cawdrou þou hem caste,
he is called / family born
And bydde þe cook seþe hem faste,
A hot head / in front of me
And loke þat þe þer off strypppe
sit & eat
donot forget
3420 Off hed, off berd, & eke off lyppe.
do not forget
Whenne we schole sytte & eete,
in this manner
Looke þat ye nouȝt forgete
To serue hem here within þis manere:
Look that you write every man's name
Lay euery hed on a platere,
And bere þe hedes to kechyn,
carry / kitchen
And in a cawdrou þou hem caste,
And bydde þe cook seþe hem faste,
And loke þat þe þer off strypppe
And bere þe hedes to þe kechyn,
carry / kitchen
And in a cawdrou þou hem caste,
And bydde þe cook seþe hem faste,
And loke þat þe þer off strypppe
And in a cawdrou þou hem caste,
And bydde þe cook seþe hem faste,
And loke þat þe þer off strypppe
3425 Bryng it hoot forþ al in þyn hand,
serve it up hot
Vpward hys vys, þe teþ grenrand,
fir x his name on his forehead
And loke þat þey be nouȝt Rowe.
they are not raw
Hys name faste aboue hys browe,
fix his name on his forehead
What he hyȝte, & off what kyn bor[n],
3430 An hoot hed bryng me beforð,
As I were wee apayde wiþal;
As it were a tendyr chyke,
As it were a tendyr chyke,
To se hou þe opere wyllyke.’
the others
Eþe þeroff ryȝt faste I schal,
As if / thoroughly pleased
As it were a tendyr chyke,
To se hou þe opere wyllyke.’
3435 þe styward, so says þe jeste,
At once obeyed / order
Anon dede þe kynges byheste.
he is called / family born
At noon a lauer þe waytes blewe;
A hot head / in front of me
þe messangerys nouȝt ne knewe
As [if] / thoroughly pleased
Richardis lawe ne hys custome.
3440 Sayde þe kyng: ‘Frendes, þe are welco[me],’
To hem he was cumpanyable.
þey were set a syde table,
Salt was set on but no bred,
No watyr ne wyn, whyt ne red.
3445 þe Sareȝynys saten & gunne to stare
they are not raw
& þouȝten: ‘Allas, hou schal we fare?’
what they were
Kyng Richard was set on des,
A hot head / in front of me
Wþþ dukès & eerles prowde in pres.
a noble company
Fro kechene com þe fyrste cours,
From the kitchen came
þe styward took ryȝt good ȝeme
horns / drums
to serue Kyng Richard to queme,
care
Lest afftir mete hym tydde harm.
properly
A Sareȝynys hed also warme
any harm befall [the steward]
3450 Wþþ pypes, & trumpes, & tabours.
Wþþ pypes, & trumpes, & tabours.
þe styward took ryȝt good ȝeme
Through / proceed
to serue Kyng Richard to queme,
sitting / high table
To serue Kyng Richard to queme,
a noble company
Lest afftir mete hym tydde harm.
care
A Sareȝynys hed also warme
properly
any harm befall [the steward]
3455 [He] brouȝte oure kyng, was it nouȝt cleued,
written on his forehead
[H]ys name was wretten in hys forheued.
also
[P]e messangerys were seruyd soo:
written on his forehead
[E]uere an hed betwyxe twoo,
Also
[O]n þe forhed wretten hys name,
It was not cut
3460 [Per] off þouȝte hem but lytyl game.
Of that they / little delight
[W]hat þey were whenne þey seyen,
When they saw what they were
[þ]e teres ran out off here eyen,
tears / their eyes
And whene pey pe lettre redde,  
To be slayn ful sore pey dredde.

Kyng Richard hys eyen on hem prewe,  
Hou pey begunne to chaunge here hewe;  
Fore here frendes pey sy3yd sore  
bat pey hadde lost for eueremore –  
Off here kynde blood pey were.

Pe my3te well forbere  
For to pleye & for to leye,  
Non off hem wolde hys mes ney3e,  
Ne pe off eeten on morsel;  
pe kyng sat & beheeld fol wel.

Be knyqt bat scholde pe kyng serue,  
Wi3 a scharp knyff pe hed gan kerue,  
Kyng Richard eet wi3 herte good,  
Be Sare3ynes wenden he hade be wood.  
Euery man sat stylle & pokyd o3ir,

Pe sayden: ‘pis is pe deuelys brodir,  
bat sles o3re men & pis hem eetes.’  
Kyng Richard poo nou3t forgetes  
Abouten hym gan loke ful 3erne,  
Wi3 wrapful semblaunt & eyen steme;

Pe messangers poo he bad:  
‘For my loue, bes alle glad  
And lokes 3e be weel at eese.  
Why kerue 3e nou3t off 3oure mese,  
And eetes faste as I doo?’

Tel me why 3e louren soo?’  
Pe seten stytte & sore quook,  
Pe durste ney3er speke ne look,  
In pe er3e pey wolde haue crope,  
To be slayn fol wel pey hope –  
Bere was non answeryd a word.

Quod Kyng Richard: ‘Beres fro pe bord  
Pey mete bat 3e before hem sette,  
And o3er mete before hem fette!’  
Men brou3ten bred withouten bost,

Venysoun, cranes, & good rost,  
Pyment, clarre, & drynkes ly3e;  
Kyng Richard bad hem alle be bly3e.  
Was non off hem bat eete lyste,  
Kyng Richard here pou3t wel wyste,

And sayde: ‘Frendes, be3 nou3t squoymous,  
Bis is pe maner off myn hous:  
To be seruyd ferst, God it woot,  
Wi3 Sare3ynys hedes abouten al hoot,  
But 3oure maner I ne knewe.

As I am kyng, Crysten & trewe,  
3e schole be pe off sertayn
In saft cundyt to wende agayn;  
For I ne wolde, for noþyng,  
þat wurd off me in þe world scholde spryng,

3515 I were so euyl off maneres  
þat I wolde mysdoo messangeres.'  
Wenne þey hadde eaten [&] þe cloþ was folde,  
Kyng Richard gan hem to beholde:  
On kneþ þey askyd leue to gon.

3520 But off hem alle was þer nouȝt on,  
þat in message was þedyr come,  
þat hym hadde leuere haue ben at home  
Wip wyff, frendes & here kynde,  
þe me al þe good þat was in Ynde.

3525 Kyng Rychard spak to an old man:  
‘Wendes hom, to ȝoure sawdan,  
Hys malycoly þat þe abate,  
And says þat þe come to late.  
To slowly was ȝoure terme igessyd,

3530 Or þe come þe fleþch was dressyd  
þat men scholden serue wip me  
þus at noon, & my meyne.  
Say hym it schal hym nouȝt avayle,  
þouȝ he forbareoure vytayle:

3535 Bred & wyn, fyssh, fleþch, samoun & cungir,  
Off vs non schal dye for hungry  
Whyl we may wenden to fyȝt  
And slee þe Sareȝynes downryȝt,  
Wassche þe fleþch, & roste þe hede.

3540 Wip oo Sareȝyn I may wel fede  
Wel a nyne or a ten  
Off my goode Crystene men.’  
Kyng Richard sayd: ‘I schal [you] waraunt,  
þer is no fleþch so norysschant

3545 Vnto an Ynglyssche man –  
Partryk, plouer, heroun, ne swan,  
Cow ne oxe, scheep ne swyn –  
As þe hed of a Sareȝyn:  
þere he is fat, & þerto tendre,

3550 And my men are lene & sclendre.  
Whyl any Sareȝyn quyk bee  
Lyuande now in þis cuntree,  
For mete wole we noþyng care;  
Aboute faste we schole fare,

3555 And euery day we schole eete  
Also manye as we may gete.  
To Yngelond wole we noȝt gon,  
Tyl þay be eeten euerylkon.’  
þe messangerys agayn hom tourne[d],

3560 Beffore þe lord þey comen & mourn[ed].  
þe eldeste tolde þe sawdan

safe-conduct / go  
do not wish  
word / spread

[That] I was / bad mannered  
would do wrong to  
tablecloth / folded  
stared at them  
leave to go  
there was not one  
had come to that place  
had preferred to have been  
their family  
Than [to have] / India  
spoke  
Go / sultan  
melancholely / you end  
tell him / you came too late  
Too / your terms considered  
Before / came / prepared  
serve me  
men  
Tell him  
Though / blocked our access to / provisions  
salmon & eel  
None of us / die of hunger  
go to fight  
slay / right to the ground  
Wash / roast the head  
one / feed

I assure you  
as nourishing  
For

[Neither] partridge, water-fowl, heron  
tender  
lean / slender  
is alive  
Living / country  
food / would not  
We will busy ourselves [with killing Saracens]  
eat  
As many  
would not go  
everyone
Kyn[g] Richard was a noble man,  
And sayde: ‘Lord, I þe wern,  
In þis world is non so sterne,  

3565 On knees we tolde hym our tale,  
But vs ne gaynyd no gale.  
Off þy gold wolde he take non,  
He swor he hadde betere won  
Off ryche tresore þenne hast pou.

3570 To vs he sayde: ‘I geue it 3ow  
Tresore off syluyr, gold, & palle,  
Deles it among 3ow alle.’  
To mete he bad vs abyde;  
We were set at bord hym besyde,

3575 þat stood þe kyng [tables] negh,  
But non off vs before hym segh  
No bred brouȝt forþ, whyt ne sour,  
But salt & non oþir lycour.  
What mes fy rst before hym come,

3580 Weel I beheld, good keep I nome:  
A knyȝt brouȝte fro þe kechyn  
An hed soden off a Sareȝyn,  
Wipouten her, on a plater brode,  
Hys name befor hys hed-schode

3585 Was iwretern abouen hys yȝe  
Me standes on awe for to lye.  
Whos hed it was, my feres aske,  
It was þe sawdones sone off Damaske.  
At borde as we saten in fere,

3590 We were seruyd in þis manere:  
Euere an hed betwen tweye,  
For sorwe we wende for to deye.  
Per come beforre my felaw & me,  
Þe kynges sone off Ninuwe.

3595 Hys off Perce hym Þat sat me by,  
Þe prydd hys off Sarmy,  
Þe ferþe hys off Egypte,  
Þooy ylkon off vs hys eyen wypte,  
Þe fyffþe hys off Affryyeke,

3600 For sorwe þoo we gan to syke;  
Vs þouȝte oure herte barst ryȝt insudder.  
Lord, ȝit þou myȝt here a wundyr:  
Beflore þe kyng a knyȝt, in haste,  
Karff off þe hed & he eet faste;

3605 Wip teep he grond þe flesch ful harde,  
As a wood lyoun he farde,  
Wip hys eyen stepe and grym,  
And spak, & we behelde hym,]  
And for pore drede righte thane, in haste,

3610 We wende to dy bot he bade: ‘Ete faste  
And kerue þoure mese,’ & ete als he dide.
Bot to Mawhoun þan, our e lorde, we bedde
Fro deye that he he oure waraunde.
And he sawe vs make so soure semblande,
3615 And for drede thane how þat we gane quake
He bad his men þan oure mese vp take,
And other metes there byfore sett.
Hate whitte brede þan þay before vs fett,
Geese, swannes, & fatte venysoun,
3620 Of fewlys and bestis full grete fuysoun.
White wyne and rede, pyment & clarre,
And full mekill òper manere of gud fare.
Þe kynge said: ‘Beese blythe if it be 30ur will,
Dose alle gladly and lykis noghte ille,
3625 For I ne knewe nothynge 3oure gyse.
In my courte, this is my seruyce:
To bene serued firste, I & my hynys,
Of hedes hate boyled of Sarazynes.’
And of hym and his we stodyn grete drede,
3630 And to be gane vs stode grete need.
Ther myghte nane ete a morsell of brede,
Ne drynke no wyne,
3635 He spake to vs at wordis brefe:
‘[Now] laues and gange in safe condite
Ne no man schall do 30W no dispite.’
He said the certayne ansuere,
Or þat we myghte come here,
3640 That the men of the richeste kynn were yslawe.
He biddis that thou salle the withdrawe
And hy the righte sone fra his oste;
His men and he þay maken boste
Pat he salle lefe one lyue
3645 In all thi lande neþer man ne wyfe,
Bot slaa alle down that he may fynde,
Sethe þe flesche and with teethe grunde.
He saysse þaym schalle no hungre ayle,
And into Ynglande will he noghte sayle
3650 Till þat he hase made playne werke.’
His clothes of golde vnto his serke
Sir Saladyne brynte for verrey yre,
And so diden kynges, & prynces, & many a sire,
And saide allass, þat þay hade lorne
3655 Theire ayeres of their bodies borne,
Pat weryn full wighte men & strange.
‘Waylayway,’ þay seide, ‘we life al to lange!
Herde we neuer are of woundirs slyke,
He es a deuyll & none erthely man lyke!’
3660 And for sorwe þay fallen doun in swoune,
Dukes & erles & barouns, bathe vp & doun,
Many a lady and many a quene;
For þaire childre þat slayne thus bene,
Felle full flatte doun appon þe flynte,

And for þe sorowe full nere þaire lyfes tynte.
Owte of þaire swonnyng, when þay myghte ryse,
þan þaire god Mawhoun þay disspye:
þay sippttede one hym and seyden, 'Fy!' –
And one alle þaire ðeþer goddes, bothe by & by –

‘Allas, Mawhoun, þat þou suffre wilte
Oure childre thus for thi laye to be spilte.
Of þi myghte, whatte es worthe to þeþle
When þou ne will thy seruandes noþynge helpe?
We prey to the bothe lowde and softe,

And dose to the full grete wirchipes & ofte,
And honoures full heghely þyn holy name,
Why soffre þou þam thus to done vs this schame?
We prey the with full mylde bysekyng
Of þone Kynge Richerd to take wrecyng:

Confounde hym, lorde, thorow þyn holy vertue,
And also alle those þat leues appon þat Jhesu.
Allas this were was euyll bygun!
Nowe hase Kyng Richerd Acres wonne,
And he hase men, may he goo forthe

To wynn este & weste, bothe southe & northe,
And thusgates will ete oure childre & vs!
A lorde, Sir Saladyne, we rede the thus:
Sende to hym and besekhe hym ete
For þam þat are one lyfe lefte

And late þam gaa, giffe þat he wolde.
Giff hym for þam gret sommes of siluer & golde,
And riche jewells, for the nones,
Of golde and of gud precyous stones
Charged in harnays and in coffre.

Andalswa that thou hym profre,
For to lefe Jhesu and Marye,
To gyffe hym landis, a grete partye,
þat he be in peese & lefe this were.
And forthy that he es comen fro so ferre,

Will þou noghte þat he his travelle lese;
Late hym come & hymseluen chese
The landis þat hym lykis beste,
And make hym sowdane althir hegheste,
And affir thyselfe the hegheste kynge,

Gyff it hym and his offesprynge.
And giffe he be payed for to do so,
Sone in peese he come the to
And alle þife he hase thi folkes spilte,
þe byhoues to forgiffe hym þat gilte,

And alls thi brothir hym loue & kisse.
And he sall teche the, ywisse,

had been slain
Fell / floor
almost / lives lost
swooning
insulted
spat / Fie
one after the other
should allow
faith / slain
boast

will not help your servants
pray to you
offer to you / worship
honour / your
do you allow them to do
supplication
that / revenge
your
believe in
war

thus / eat
Ah / advise you
beseech / again
those who are left alive
let them go / if / wishes
Give / for them / sums

Packed in saddle bags / chests
also / offer
renounce
a great part
[So] that / peace / war
because / has come / far
wastes
Let / choose
he likes best
highest of all sultans
yourself
Give it to
if he is satisfied
Soon / peace / he [should] come to you
although / has slain your men
It is necessary / guilt
as your
teach you, certainly
Of alle þe werle to wyn þe prys,  
And also in were to bee bolde & wysse,  
Lyffe togedire & be gud frendys,  
With vnto 3our lyffes endes.'

Saladyn, be his sariandis,  
Sent to Kyng Richerd thies tythandis,  
And bysoughte hym for his men  
Þat he in ostage hade lyande thane.

And giff he wolde Jhesu forsake,  
And Sir Mahownn vnto his lorde take,  
Off Surrye he wolde hym kynge,  
And of alle Egipte, þat riche thynge,  
Off Darras and of Babylonyne,

Off Arabie and of Sessoynye,  
Off Aufrike and of Bogy,  
And of alle þe lande of Alyxanedry,  
Of Grete Grees and of Tire,  
And of many ane ðoper riche emperyre.

And make hym a riche sowdane onane,  
Fro the lande of Ynde vnto the lande of Prethir John.  
'Alle this he will the gyffe,  
Giffe that thou will one Mawhownn bylefe.'

Kyng Richerde answerde þe messangerse  
And seyde: 'Fy appon 30w vile lousengerse,  
One 30w & on Saladyn, 3our lorde;  
The deuyll hange 30W with a corde!  
Gase & says 3oure lorde Saladyn  
Þat he make tomorowe fyne

For alle his dogges þat leyen here in ostage,  
Or þay sail dyen in euyll rage.  
And þif I maye lyue thre 3ere,  
Of alle thies landys þat 3e nenyn here,  
I sall noghte lefe hym halfe a fote.

So God send my soule god bote!  
I ne wolde noghte lose my lordes lufe,  
For alle þe londis vndir heuen abofe,  
And bot þif þat I hafe þe crosse tomorowe,  
His men sall dy wyth mekill sorowe.'

Bot pay ansuerde all þerto full sone onnone  
And seyde: 'We ne wate neuer where it es done.'  
'Now,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'þ sen it es so,  
I wote wele whate I hafe to do.  
3our sowdane ne es noghte so slee,  
So qweyntly for to blere myn eghe.'

He called his knyghtis sone onnanne,  
And bade þam into Acres gane  
And take þe Saracenes fyfty thowsande,  
And bynde their handis þam byhynde,
And lede þam owte of the cite,
And hedis þam alle withowtten pite:
‘And so salle lere Sir Saladyn
To garre me byleue one Sir Appolyne.’
And þay weren ledde owte of þe townn,

Saffe a twentty he helde to rawnsoun,
þay weren ledde to a place full euenn,
And ther they herde ane angelle of heuenn
þat cried: ‘Sayntours, tues, tues!
Sparis þam noghte, hedis alle thies!’

Kyng Richerd herde þat ilke voyce
And thankede God and þe Holy Croys;
þay weryn hedide full hastilike
[And casten into a foul dyke.
þus Kyng Richard wan Acrys,

God geue hys soule moche blys!

Merye is in þe tyme off May,
Whenne foules synge in here lay,
Floures on appyl trees and perye,
Smale foules synge merye,

And thies ladyse strewes than þeire bours
With lelyes and with other floures,
Grete þan es in frythe & in lake;
For bothe bestis & birds playes þan with þer make.
And þes damesells þan ledyn daunces,

And thies knyghtis pleyen with swerdis & launce3,
And to justis & in tournamentis rydis,
And full many chaunces þan bytydis,
Full many strayte case & chaunce harde.

And swa byfelle þat Kyng Richerde

Kyng Philip of Fraunce to þe feste bedde,
And aftir þe mete, when þay were glade,
Kyng Richerd gaffe giftis, full gude won,
Of siluer & golde and precyous stone,
Horse and robys to bere his lose –

Full wyde & ferre his renownn arosse,
How he was gentill, curteyse, and fre –
Full noble was þan þat sembl
Kyng Richerd gaffe castells & townnes
To his erlys & to his barounes,

To clerke & swayne þat weryn doghety of hand,
To some he gaffe tresours, & to some he gaf land
To haue vnto theire sustynaunce.
And Kyng Richerd bad þe Kyng of Fraunce:
‘Giff,’ he seid, ‘of þi golde & thi purchais

To erles, barouns, knyghtis [&] seriauntas of mase,
& frely aqwite þou þam theire trauayle
þat þay swauenze for the in þe bataile.
& eftfe þou hafe oughte for to done,

Except for / ransom
flat place
an angel from
Gentlemen, kill
Spare no one, behead all these
were beheaded / speedily
ditch
won

birds / their song
apple and pear trees

decorate / chambers
lilies

[May] is welcomed / woodland
make love with their mates
then lead dances
joust / lances
jousts / tournaments ride
adventures then happen
fierce incidents / hard battles
so happened
invited
meal
gave / in great quantities
clothes / fame
far and wide
courteous / generous
assembly
gave
squires
livelihood
bade

Give / your booty
officials bearing maces
generously repay them / effort
tooled / for you / battle
if you again have anything to do
pay will be \( p \) gladdere to trauelle eftsone

3810 For to helpe the \( w \)hou hafe ned.\'

[Kyng Phelyp took \( p \)eroff non hede
But layde \( p \)ertoo a deff eere,
And gaff hym rynn non answere;
Kyng Richardes wordes he took in vayn.

3815 Richard began vnto hym sayyn:
‘Among vs be pes & acord
Graced be Jhesu Crist, oure lord,
\( p \)at gaff vs my\( w \)t \( p \)is toun to wynne.\]
To ride forthe \[late vs\] begynn,

3820 Salady\( n \) \( p \)e sowdane to anoye,
And alle the Sarayynes to distroye,
And giff \( p \)at he skomfite vs in bekyre,
And nede be we may be sekire,
Gifc \( p \)at God will graunte vs lyfe,

3825 And we may wyn hedar withouten stryfe,
And wyn qwike within the walle –
For Salady\( n \) and for his folkes alle –
And \( p \)e \( g \)ates bene faste yschott,
We may betriste \( p \)an of a strange ressett.’

3830 Bot Kyng Richard bygane \( p \)an to Philip to telle,
And seid: ‘\( w \) rede \( p \)at we no lengare tary ne duell,
Bot ryde we forthe & this contre seche,
And in \( p \)e name of God do \( p \)ou als I sall \( p \)e teche:
Myn oste I wil do parten in three,

3835 And, Kyng Philip, take \( p \)ou thi men\( j \)ee
And departe thy ost\( n \) oste in t\( w \)aye.
My lefe bro\( p \)er do now als I \( p \)e preye,
And tow\( n \)n, cite, or castell, gif \( p \)ou may wynn,
Slaa alle \( p \)ase \( p \)at \( p \)ou fyndys \( p \)am in.

3840 And in Goddes worde, I the forbede,
\( p \)at for siliure ne golde, ne na no\( p \)er mede
\( p \)at pay may profre to \( p \)i plesaunce or giffe,
Riche ne pore loke \( p \)at \( p \)ou late nane lyfe,
Now\( p \)er housbande ne wyfe, mayden ne grome,

3845 Bot if pay will take Cristyndome.’

Kyng Phily\( p \)e thies wordis \( v \)ndistod\( e \),
Bot hym vnbythoughte \( p \)am nothiny gude
\( p \)at Kyng Richerde, at hys devyce,
Sett hym & his men at so litti\( l \) prysse.

3850 Bot Kyng Phily\( p \)e to hym was compen\( y \)nable
[He gan to glose, \& make fable,
And \( p \)ankyd hym \( w \)ip \( g \)lad sembl\( a \)unt
And sayde: ‘Bro\( p \)ir, I \( p \)e graunt
To doo as \( p \)ou sayst, sekyryry,

3855 For \( p \)ou art wysere man \( p \)an I,
And off werre canst wel more.\’
Nepeles he was agreu\( y \)d sore;
For drede he & hys men so de\( d \)e
As Kyng Richard hadde hem bede,
Bywene the Ynglys and the Fraunce,
In awnnter þat þay hent knkke,
He dalte his men in two flokkes.
And than Kyng Richard with his oste went awaye,

And Kyng Philip fra hym to wyn praye.
With luffe þay departed insowndre.
And now may þe heryn a grete wonder,
For Franche men are euer arghe & faynte,
And the Sara3enes are full sley & qwaynt,

And of þaire dedis full engynous,
And also þe Franche men are somwhat couettous,
And when þat þay are sett at þaire tauerne,
þer þay are full stowte and stcryn,
Full prowde wordes þer þan will þay crakke

And of þaire dedis grete jelpynge make.
And oþerwhile full littill worthe þay are bot nyce prowde;
Fighte þay can with wordes lowde,
And says þat nane may be þaire pere,
When þat þay come to the mistere,

Bot ofte when þay see men strokes dele,
Onenane þan will þay torne þaire hele,
And for drede drawe in þaire homes,
Als dose a snyle amange roughe thomes,
And slake abore of their boste.

Kyng Philip þan toke his oste,
And a strange cite he bysett,
þat was called [T]oborett.
And with his oste he laide it abowte,
þat þe Sara3enes ne dorste neuer nowre come owte.

Bot at þe laste gif þat þay solde be alle towhelwed,
Appone þe walles þay þam schewed;
Owte at þe towres and at þe kirmelles
Sett owte many baners and pensells,
And manly þay þam defende.

Bot to dy righte þan þe Franche men wende,
Trompys for boste full lowde þay blewe
[But durste þey neyber schete ne þrowe
Wiþ bowe, slynge, ne arweblast,
To make þe Sare3ynes wiþ agast,
Ne þe cyte for to assayle.
But off the toun þe cheff amyraylle,
Hys name was callyd Terryabaute:
‘Lord, ar þou geue vs assaute,
Alle þe folke þat are in this townn
Profers to gyffe the rawnson,
And rewfully with one cry,

5 And sometimes they are worth very little and [are just] proud fools.
Beseke the mekely of mercy.
The townn also they will the 3elde,
With alle pe gudes pat pay haue in welde.

3910
Mane & woman, and euerilke Sara3yne
Profers the, of golde full fyn,
Euerilke one a faire besaunt,
To the in swylke a couenaunt,
Pat þou graunte þat þay craue:

3915
Þaire lyfe & þaire lymmes for to haue,
Bestis, catelle, and tresoure,
And þat they will for euermore,
Of the & thyne ayers halde this townn.'
And Kyng Philip graunted & of þam toke raunson;

3920
For mede righte ther he sparede his faase.
And thus at ane with þeym he was,
He bade his folke, one lyfe & dede,
Nane be so hardy take in that stede,
Mete ne drynke, catelle ne clothe.

3925
To hym þay sware alle ane othe:
To bene his men alle that there ware,
And his banere sett vp one rere
One a schafte one þe heghest towre,
With flour de lyce gold and a3ure.

3930
And when þay had this townn þus wonn,
To breke þe sege þay haue bygun,
þay charged one somere & one carte,
Tresours, armours, scheldis & darte.
Kyne, erle, barouns, knyghtes & sqwyers,

3935
þay ryde wele armed one þaire dextirs,
þe fotemen helde forthe one þaire fete,
And righte swa þay helden þe heghe street
þat trompid vp and baners displayen
Of silke & of sendale, & manly faire fane.

3940
Full righte þay wente to þe city of Archane,
And Kyng Philip of þam also hase raunsone tane,
Euen als he dide at the toþer townn;
And lete þam lyue so forthe in peese,
And so for the lesse, the more he lese.

3945
Bot Kyng Richerde with hys oste vnryde,
Went forthe by anoþer syde,
With full many ane erle & baroun
Borne of Yngleis nacyoun.
Alle hardy men & stronge, for þe nones,

3950
And full wele armed appon þaire bones,
þay satt appon stedis lyghete and stronge,
And many a Gascoyne was þam amonge,
And also þer was of þe men of Lumbardye, 
Gud knyghtis full stalworthe & hardy.

And also folkes of the coste of Almayne, 
And his eme, Henry of Champayne, 
And also his mayster, Robert of Leycestre –
In alle Ynglande was noghte his bettir –
And Sir Fuk Doly and Sir Thomas of Multron,

That euer zitt weren acostome & wonn
In fighte þam firste for to bede,
To helpe Kyng Richerd at his nede.
Of þe coste of Braundis he toke a man full wighte,
A noble baroun, Sir Bertrame he highte,

And his clergy and his freres,
And of the Temple [&) his Hospetulers,
þe nonmere was, by ryghte assent:
Folkes one horse, ane hundrethe thowsande,
And zitt one fote folkes slyke ten

Of Gascoynes, Lumbardes, & Ynglys men
In full gud armours and in sure.
Bot the Ynglys men bowes & arowes gan bere,
And thase oþer bare scheldys & sperys,
And also ther was gud staffe-slyngers

Of Ynglys men wele a five hundrethe;
And for to see them it was grete wonde.
Alle was hyde bothe feldis and pleynes,
With men one fote, knyghtis, and swayne.

Kyng Richerde houede and þam byholde,
And deuysed his folkes in the felde.
And to his consayle he seyden than thus:
‘Men ynewe, blyssed be God, we hafe with vs,
I rede þat we departen theym in three,
And ane parte sall wenden with mee.

And anoþer parte, for alwyns case,
Lede schall Moltoun Sir Thomas,
And Sir Fuk Doly schall leyden the thirde.
One lyfe and lymmes, I sow forbidde,
Gyffe that 3e wynne any townn,

Takes of theym no maner of rawnsoun,
Bot slaas the folkes & takes þaire gude,
Bot 3if þay grawnte, with mylde mode,
To bene Cristenyde in the fownte-stane,
And elles one lyfe 3e lefe neuer ane.’

And than Kyng Richerd, with hys companye,
Went hym forthe to þe cite of Sowdane Turry,
And Sir Thomas, a knyghte full engynous,
Went with hys oste to Orgolyus,
And with his oste þan rade forthe Sir Fuk Doly

Vnto the cite of Ebedye.

---

7 And also there were good soldiers armed with slings attached to their staffs.
Thane ilkane laye his townn abowte,
\( \textit{Pat} \) \( \textit{pe} \) Sarazenes ne dorste neuer noure come owte;
For those seggess weryn stronge & harde.
\( \textit{Bot} \) speke we forthe of Kyng Richerde,

4005  \( \textit{Pat} \) Sowdane Turry vmblyadaye.
\( \textit{be} \) Sarazenes, at the firste brayde,
\( \textit{paire brigges} \) \( \textit{pay wande vp in haste}, \)
And \( \textit{pair \ yatis} \) \( \textit{pay schott} \) full faste
\( \textit{pay} \) to defende, als I \( \textit{3ow} \) saye.

Bot thane Kyng Richerd his banere gan displaye
And when \( \textit{pe} \) Sarazenes sawe it arerede,
\( \textit{Pan} \) \( \textit{pay} \) weryn full sore afferde;
And for drede righte \( \textit{pan} \) full faste \( \textit{pay} \) qwake.

\( \textit{Ane \ pat} \) was called Grawndary,
In the townn he garte \( \textit{pan} \) make a cry,
To ilke man \( \textit{pat} \) may armes bere,
Gaa to \( \textit{pe} \) walles \( \textit{pe} \) townn to were.
\( \textit{be Sarazenes \ pan} \), alle enarmede, forthe \( \textit{pay} \) leppe

\( \textit{Appon \ pe} \) walles \( \textit{pe} \) townn to kepe.
\( \textit{pay} \) stoden in torettes \& in hurdasse,
And Kyng Richerd gart bende arblasters of devyce,\(^8\)
And schotte \( \textit{pam} \) to a towre full euynn,
And smate thurghowte Sarazenes seuynn

\( \textit{Pat starke dede downn felle}, \) base dogges vyle.
Now lystenys of a qwaynte gyle:
Kyng Richerd garte his folkes apparelle
One \( \textit{pat} \) halfe \( \textit{pe} \) townn to assayle,
And the townn folkes drew en to \( \textit{pat} \) syde,

And Kyng Richerd sent to his folkes in \( \textit{pat} \) tyde,
Of qwaynte styes to gane in –
\( \textit{Pat weryn wroghte of full qwaynte gyn} \)
With iryn hokes, gude and stronge –
And one \( \textit{pe} \) walles \( \textit{pay} \) gane \( \textit{pam} \) honge

\( \textit{Pat men myghte} \) gane in seuen one brede,
And thus men ouer \( \textit{pe} \) walles 3ede –
Thre thowsande – or \( \textit{pe} \) Sarazenes wende
And \( \textit{pan} \) \( \textit{pay} \) gane \( \textit{pe} \) townn defende.
\( \textit{be} \) Ynglys men come in or \( \textit{pay} \) wistyne,
\( \textit{bay} \) schotte to \( \textit{pam} \) and full hard \( \textit{pay} \) smytten;
Grete nombire of \( \textit{paire folkes} \) onane doun felle.
Bot \( \textit{pe} \) constable, when he herd \( \textit{pat} \) telle,
\( \textit{pat} \) \( \textit{be} \) Ynglys men weryn in wonnenn,
A ten thowsande \( \textit{pan} \) hase he taken

\( \textit{And alle o\text{\char'27}er} \) he bade solde kepe \( \textit{pe} \) townn;
‘For \( \textit{per} \) schalle gaa no rawnsoun,
Gaynys \( \textit{pam} \) no mercy to craffe,
Kyng Richerde ne sall \( \textit{pam} \) neuer saffe,

---

\( \textit{8} \) Richard bent crossbows drawn by mechanical devices.
Oneane righte now schall þay dy!'  
And when Kyng Richerd herde þat cry,  
For sorowe he gane sighe full schille.  
He bad his folkes: 'Bese of gud wylle,  
And proue we faste this townn to wynn,  
And rescowe oure folkes þat are therinn.'

[þe] Sara3enes ther ful strongly kyd þer myghte  
To slaa þe Cristen men – in that fighte –  
þat were comen in ouer þe walle.  
Bot oure men euer helde þam togedir alle,  
And arowes & quarells to þam þay throwe;

Alle þæþa þay hitt onane þay slewe.  
And with full egre mayne þam bekire,  
For of gud helpe þay were full sekire:  
Of gud Kyng Richerd þat was withowte.  
þe Ynglys men rane faste abowt,

And some to þe ʒatis throwe  
Alle þat þay fande down þay hewe,  
And throwe þam owte ouer þe towre,  
And cryed: 'Kyng Richerd, do vs socowre!  
For sauel y saIl þou in thrynge

In littill stownde, by heuenes kyng!'  
And þaþe lorde, Kyng Richerd, þay gane grete  
And þe drawebrigges downn þay lete,  
And sett the ʒatis vp one brade.  
And Kyng Richerde was þe firste þat in rade,

And nexte hym Sir Robert Thorne,  
Sir Robert Laycestre and Bertrame,  
And thus rydis in alle þe vawarde,  
And to sla þase houndes righte nane þay pay sparede.  
Kyng Richerd his axe in hande þan hent,

And gaffe þe Sara3enes þan many a dynt.  
And swilke pardone he thaym delte,  
Alle þat he hitt oneane þay swelte.  
þay slewe downn clenly euerrilke Sara3yne,  
And þe temple of Apolyne

þay brynte, and fellid downn Mahoun.  
And alle þe tresoures of the townn,  
He gaffe knyghtes, sqwyers & knafe,  
Hymselfe ne wolde righte nane hafe.  
Sara3ene neuer one on lyfe þay lefte,

And in the prys toure an heghe [schaffe] þay sett  
Kyng Richerd righte thare did sett his banere;  
And wane the townn appon this manere.

Now beese in peese, & listenys þis case,  
And herkenys nowe of Sir Thomas,  
þe noble barownn of Multoun,  
þat laye with many a modir sone  
At Orglyus, a full stronge castelle.
Now listenys what chaunce þat hym byfelle:

Þe Saraynes are euere full of felonye,

adventure he had

þat hade bene Cristenlyde in his ȝouthe –

villainy

Many eueyll wrenche & wyle he couthe –

a Christian / covertly

His Cristyndome he hade forsakyn

tricks / knew

And to þe Sarayene lawe he had hym taken.

faith

4100

Full stillyly sent þay forthe a spy

4105

He come to Sir Thomas, forsothe to saye,

tried / in truth

And proued hym thus for to bytraye:

proved himself false

To sla hym and his folke to pe dede to lede.

slay / lead his men to death

He come to Sir Thomas and thus hym rede:

came / explained

‘Sir,’ he seyd, ‘I am a Cristyn man,

broke out of / escaped

Trayste righte wele vnto my speche,

Trust / my word

And gyffpou will do als I hafe talde. ’

if / instruct you

Quod Sir Thomas: ‘Puttis hym in halde

short time

Put him in prison

For tresoun he es commen hedir,

decietful talk

It es glosynge aIle togedir;

thief says

And perf ore salle suffre he dedis dayes.

the day of death

AIlle quyke hastyly gose and

AIlle is lyes pat þe se saythe.

AIlle to decewe us

He es of the Sarayene faythe,

I will regret that he came

þay sent hym vs to byswyke,

the day of death

His comynge saIl hym full illlyke,

he es of the Sarayene faythe,

will regret that he came

And þerfore salle suffre he dedis dayes.

He es of the Sarayene faythe,

for to deceive us

Alle quyke hastily gose and hym flaes,

AIlle is lyes pat þe se saythe.

AIlle is the fayth of aIle sall hym full ill lyke,

And his eres in twoo slittis,

twain / deceitful talk

And hanges hym vp tomorowe daye.’

AIlle is the fayth of aIle sall hym full ill lyke,

AIlle is the fayth of aIle sall hym full ill lyke,

Quod the Sarayyne: ‘Mercy, I praye

AIlle is the fayth of aIle sall hym full ill lyke,

To none euyll dede þat ȝee me dothe,

If you find in me / falsehood

And of alle þat I ken, I schall say ȝow þe sothe.

Either / deed

If ȝif ȝe me fynd with any falsehed, Owwthir in worde or ells in dede,

can say / know

Owenane myn hede ȝe gare of smytte.

At once you can cut off my head

Forsothely, I was sente to bytraye þowe,

Certainly

I schall ȝow telle and lysteny how:

middle there is a trap

A brigge es bifore þowe in your waye –

securely covered / tightly joined

Lysteny now whatte I schall saye –

underneath / there is a hinged clasp

And in the midwarde es a gile

Shut / iron staple

Couerde full close & joynede full wele,

secured by a bolt

And vndinmeth þer es ane hespe

Schote with a stapill and a claspe,

A pyn es putt in the stapile.
I warn ye leue it, gif ye wille,
if
I warne you what so bytydes:
if
And see and you folkes weryn in þe myddis
And þe pyn smetyn owte ware,
Euen down þan scholde ye falle reghte thare
Into a pitt of sixty fote depe.
Dee.
þero of þecse ware, & takes gude kepe
4155 þat 3e passen wele ouer that trappe,
For many a man hase hadde eyuell happe;
Be pays þit closes to agayns,
Whare þat no man may it sene.'
Thomas askede the Sarazen thare:
Are there any more such traps
'Es slikke trappes any ma there,
Vs to bytraye or to grefe?'
Nay, sir, forsothe þou may me lefe,
With any lyes gif þou me fynde,
Bynd myn handes me byhynde,
And gare me be hangede & alswa drawenn.'
And of thies tydan[d]es Thomas was fayne:
'Now Sarazen, he saide, 'onane me rede,
Howe may I beste doo at þis ilke nede?'
'Sir,' sayd þe Sarazen, 'þou hafe horse men & puta[ile],
Before þat thou this townn assaile,
þe hafe also with 30w gud engynes,
And swilke ne knawes no Sarazen;
þi mawngonelle þou do arere,
And swa þou schall þam huggely affere,
Into the [townn þou] slyng a stane grete.
And alswa swythe þou me lete
Passe into the townn agayne,
And also sone þou schalle seene
þe towne þay schall 3elde the full sone.
4170 Bot I praye the of a bone:
Gyff þat I garre the wynne þis towne,
þat þou gyffe me my warysoun. '
Quod Sir Thomas Multoun: 'þerto I graunte,'
And þay departted one þat couenaunte.
4185 þe engyne was sett & bente alle priste,
And a full grete stane Sir Thomas gart in caste
þat slewe many men, & howses doun bare,
Or any Sarazen was þerof warre.
'Ve bene bot dede, now helpe Mahoun!' ful fast þay crye,
And one euerilike syde ful faste þay fliede
To hyden þam for waa & drede.
And þe renaye than to þe towne jede,
And talde þe wardane þer, Sir Orgalie:
'We bene bot dede,' he said, 'withowttten fayle.
4195 He þat thies stanes to vs throwes,
Alle oure tresoun full wele he knawes:
How oure brigge gase insonde,
And alle þe gile þat es ther vndir,
And how þat it gasse agayne by payse.

4200 Beware of hym euereilike burgays,
Ne gaynes 30we no 3atis to spere,
Hym & his men owte for to were.
Gyff þat 3e fighete and 3ow defende,
Many mo stanys he will 3ow sende,

4205 Schende 3owe and the townn betyn.
And bettir it es þat 3e hym in latyn
ðan he 3ow alle hereinn spill,
And 3eldis þe townn vnto his will;
And than we may be traiste to lyffen.'

4210 And when he had þis consaile giffen,
þay grawnted to do alle als he rede.
Bot thane 'Mercy!' to Thomas full lowde he criede,
‘Hafe here þe keyes of this cite,
And do with tham whatte so thy wills bee.

4215 Bot so that thou graunte oure lyffes,
And oure childre, and oure wyffes.'
Thomas Multoun the keyes did fange,
And anothir stane in slange
To Sir Mawhownn a full ruyde takylle,

4220 And strake downn a strange penacle.
Owte thane rane þaire wardane Orgalie,
And ane hundreth knyghtis in his paraile,
Barefote, vngirde, withowtten hode,
And sayden: ‘Mercy, sir, spill noghte oure blode!

4225 Takes now alle that we hafe,
So that thou will oure lyffes saue,
Late vs passe awaye, alle nakede.’
‘Breki þe brigge,’ quod he, ‘þat 3e have makede,
And with lyme & stane dose fillis the pitt,

4230 Or by þhesu that in heuen dose sitt,
Alle þerin ells schalle 3e bryn
tþat nane schal noþer gange ne ryne,
None of 30we alle, nethir pure ne riche,
Bot 3if that 3e fill reghte wele þat diche,

4235 To the brigge that it do ryse
þat we may entre alle in pese.’
þe amyralle þerto was full blithe,
And garte breke þe brygge also swythe,
And lyme and stane throwe in the pitt;

4240 It was fillede and that full tyte.
And vp to the brigge made alle pleyne
Of brede & of lengthe, certayne,
þat twenty ilkane othir besyde
One armede stedis myghte in ryde

4245 Withowtten drede, and hafe reghte gud entre;
And thus they come intoo that cite.
And the townn folkes agayne þam come,
And full faire gane theym welcome,  
And criede mercy with lowde steuenn,  

4250  Bot agaynes a Cristyn man was seuenn  
In that royalle cite of Sarazynes.  
Of siluere & golde and bawdkyns  
To Sir Thomas onenane þay offre,  
And to hym with full gud will þay profre  

Landes, howsses, and mekill riche treoure,  
And to halde of hym for euernore.  
And than byfore Sir Thomas come þe renaye  
& seid: ‘Sir Thomas thyinke one, I the praye,  
For this townn that thou mee highte  

4260  Now, als þou arte a trewe knyghte,  
Bot no mare will I that thou me gyffe,  
Bot mete & drynke whills I may lyffe;  
For wollewarde, one my bare fete  
I schall gange in snawe and slete,  

4265  Me to amenden of my synn,  
Þe joye of heuen for to wynn,’  
Than to a preste he schrafe hym elene.  
The couande þat was made thaym bytwene  
Sir Thomas grantede þerto with full gud will,  

4270  And thus with Sir Thomas he bylefte alle still  
In werre and pese, whare he gane wende,  
Euer aftir vntill his lyues ende.  

Bot lordynges, lystenys now my playnte  
& heris now of a tresone qwaynte:  

4275  How þat þe Sarazenes hafe samen spoken  
One the Cristyne men to be wreken,  
And howe that the heghe amyralle þam redde:  ‘When þat þe Cristyn men are gane to bedde,  
When þay are in their firste slepe,  

4280  We schall full preualye to þam crepe;  
Ane sall duelle the town within  
þe ʒatis to vnschote & vnypyn.  
And stilllyly for to vnschote þe loke,  
And þan sall come armede in a floke  

4285  And slaa we sall Sir Thomas of Multon,  
And with hym euerilke a modir sone  
þat he hase hedir with hym broghte.’  
Bot here of Sir Thomas ne wiste righte noghte,  
þay sethe their flesche & roste & brede,  

4290  And at þe nyghte vnto the sopere þay yede,  
And plentethe þer was of brede & wyne,  
Of pyment, of clare, bothe gude & fyne,  
Of cranys, of swannes, & of fatte venysoune,  
Of partrikes, of plouers, & also the heroune,  

4295  Of lauerokes also & ðer smalle volantyne.  
þe Sarazenes dide it alle for gyle,
And of þe richeseste wynnes gaffe þam to drynke,
And þay weren wery & liste wele wynke,
And oneane þay wenete þam vnto þaire riste

4300
In beddis full esyly with the beste,
Þay slepte tyte faste & heghæ gane rowte.
Þe Saraȝynes wente þam þan withowte,
And come alle armede vnto the 3ate.
Þe renaye stode alle redy theratte,

4305
Þay knokkedæ faste appon the wekett,
Bot he lete it stande full stille schott,
And rane & tolde Sir Thomas how þat he hade herde
Of alle the tresone, & how it ferde.
Sir Thomas þerofe no boste gane make,

4310
Bot alle his folkes belyue he gane awake,
For Goddes he thaym preyede and badde:
‘Dighttis 3owe wele,’ he seide, ‘or þe bene dede!’
And þay starte swithe vp & were affrayede,
When þat þay wiste þat they were bytrayede.

4315
His folkes þam armed thane full þerme,
And yschewede owte at a preue posterne,
Or any Saraȝyne oughte of þam wiste.
Þer whills þat þe Saraȝenes houed and thriste
And with strengthe walde in hafe wonn,

4320
Bot ilke a [3ate] þan þe Þnglys es ronn
And schottes full faste, als Þ3owe saye.
And by that tyrne bygane þe sprynge of daye,
Bowes & alblastirs þe Þnglys bent,
And thurgeuerilke a strete þe Þnglis went,

4325
And schotten arowes and quarelle,
And alle þay hitte righte doun þay felle,
Þay ne lefte in waye ne in howse
Noghte lyffande, in alle Orgolyous,
Burgesse ne wyfe ne childe þonge.

4330
And when þay hade made that rekkenynge,
He gaffe þe folke, aþire þat toyle,
Bestis, tresoure, and alle the dispoyle
Þat þay in þe toun fynde myghte,
Amanges þam alle he bade schyfte it righte:

4335
Siluere & golde euerilke a grote,
Euerilke Cristyn man ther hade his lott,
Þat þer ne was nane so littill page
Þat he ne hade to his wage
Of golde and siluere & riche tresoure,

4340
To be riche ynoghæ þerone for euermore.
Thomas lete, or he went thane,
Owte of presoun to take euerilke Cristyn man,
Euerilke pilgryme and palmeræ,
And gaffe þam landis and renttis there;

4345
And with þam he stablede þe toun, I saye.
Who so comes þerby may see in faye

gave
weary / wanted to sleep
right away / snored loudly
what it was happening
made no noise
Prepare yourselves / you will die
swiftly
knew
moved out / through / secret passage
Before / knew
immediately
while / moved onward / forced their way
would have gained entry
Except / to every gate / ran
began to dawn
bolts
all [that] they hit / they felled
either on the street or
Not alive
Man / woman / young child
settled the accounts
He [i.e. Multon] gave / that battle
booty
might find
share
every coin
his share
none
very rich
before
pilgrim to the Holy Land
pacified
by that place / in truth
In ðe chefe hageste torett,
Of Kyng Richerd his armes was sett
Owte in a banere to his honour,
4350 In tokynyng ðat he was ðerof conquerour.

Now lordynges, now haue ðe herde
Of thies two townnes how it ferde,
And how ðat Kyng Richerd, with maistrye,
Wane ðe townn of Sodayne Turrye,
4355 And Orgolyus wane Sir Thomas of Multron,
And slewe therin euery modir sone.
Of Ebody now will we speke,
ðat harde hase theire ðatis ysteke,
When Sir Fuke Doly it bylaye,
4360 ðat entire noghte he ne maye.
He and his folkes bylaide ðe townn,
And loged thaym in pauelyoun.
ðe cite was bothe stronge and stowtte,
And seuen mile vmgange it was abowte,
4365 And full prys towrres many ane by tale,
And in ilkane a chefe amyralle.
ðe folkes of armes, by righte assent,
Were annomerde to xl thowsande,
Withowtten othir smalle pedaile –
4370 Als alde men & jong men & poueraylle –
ðat na man couthe ðe nommere accoutnte
How many ðat ðay wolde too amountte.
Sir Fuke broghte full gud engynes –
Slyke ne knewe ne Saraynes –
4375 One euerylke halfe he garte arere,
His faamen a newe layke to lere.
His maungonelle ðan lette he bende,
And to ðe pris toure ðan lette he sende
A full grete stane ðerowtte flyes.
4380 And when the folke of ðe town ðat sees,
‘Allas!’ ðay cryede, & hadde grete wonndere;
It rowttede als it hade bene ðe thonndire.
And one ðe chefe tour ðe stane swaa hitt
ðat twenty fotte awaye it smytte,
4385 And slew of Saraynes full many ðerin.
Bot Sir Fuke lete efte bende ðat engyne,
And to othe othire towrre a stane he throwe
For to make ðam ðerwith ferde yngoge.
And alle ðe taa syde it smate awaye,
4390 And slewe of ðe base dogges of ðe false laye.
ðay bett doun ðe towrres alle,
In ðe townn and one ðe walle.
A prys towre stode ouere ðe zate,
He bende his engyne and threwe ðeratte
4395 A grete stane ðat full harde draffe,
And þe walle in peces it alle toraffe—
And alle barres & alle þe hurdasse—
Þat þe 3ates brake, and þe portcolysse.
Þerto he gaffe anothir strake.

4400
And brake þe bemyss þat weryn of ake,
And slewe þe folkes þat therin stode.
And thase othere, for drede, wente nere wode
And seide it was þe deuylles dynt,
And sayde: ‘Mawhownn, whatt so he ment,
And alle baITes & aIle pe hurdasse—
palisade
broke / portcullis
beams / oak
the devil's blow
does he intend
is called
devil
has slipped out
fatal illness / may he swell up
so intensively
If / more stones
beat down
he will not leave a house standing
made ready
before / won
moat / every
broad / deep
filth / nobody / swim
water

4405
Þis Cristyn hounde þat highte Sir Fuke,
He es no man, he es a puke
þat owte of helle es awaye ystolyn.
With euyll sekenes myghte he bolne,
For this townn he byseegges so faste;
Giffe he to vs maa stanes caste,
Alle the cite þan he will downn bete;
Howses for to stande, he will none lete.’
Sir Fuke gane hym þan appayrale
With his folkes þe townn to assayle.

4410
Bot or he þe towwn with strengthe wane,
Þer was slayne full many a man.
For þe towwn dike, one euerilke a syde,
It was bothe brade, depe & full wyde,
Full of gromme þat na man may swyn.
And bytwene myghte no man stande.
Bot the archers of Ynglande
Schott in full meryly their arowes smale,
þe towwn folke let þeroffe no tale.

4415
And þe Saraçenes bendide appon þe walle
Alblaster of vyce and grete spryngalle,
And schott quarells & that full many,
And of oure folkes þay slewe grete companye
And envenomede alle þaire takills was.

4420
Þe walle was sett reghte appon þe bryme,
And bytwene myghte no man stande.
Bot the archers of Ynglande
Schott in full meryly their arowes smale,
þe towwn folke let þeroffe no tale.

4425
And þe Saraçenes bendide appon þe walle
Alblaster of vyce and grete spryngalle,
And schott quarells & that full many,
And of oure folkes þay slewe grete companye
And envenomede alle þaire takills was.

4430
And when Sir Fuke was warre of þat ilke case—
Þat þay his men one this wiese slewe—
Howssees withowtten downn þay drewe,
& broghte trees and many boughe abowte—
To do þaire will folkes broghte ynoghe.

4435
And þe Cristyn men made þam targe
Of dores and of wyndowes large.
Ilkone toke a wyndowe or ane heche
And broghten to tymbir and [Þache],
Grete schydis and also wodde,

4440
And slange full faste into þe modde,
And keste þe dore abownn oneane,
Þat þe Cristyn men myghte wele owen gane

---

9 C He bad hem to wipdrawe; this is a more logical line than in B because it explains that the men withdrew from the assault before going for wood and timber.
Euen to þe walle & stonde full sekire,  
And hande for hande to gyffe þam bekire.

4445 A sorye b[eur]age was there brewede,  
Quarells & arowes full thikke persuyde,  
[þe] Inglys slewe alle that they toke,  
No Sarayne thane durste owte loke.  
þe staffe-slyngers full faste þay slynge,

4450 And the kymells down þay dŷne  
With flýnttes and with stanes rownde,  
þat many a Sarayene felle to þe grounde,  
þat ouer þe walle þay þam threwe.  
And þe Cristyn wilde fyre one þam blewe

4455 þat many a howse there onane righte  
Stode righte appone a lene full lighte,  
Full many a lane and many a strete.  
þe Sarayenes righte there, for hete,  
Drewe owte theire goddes & faste fledge:

4460 ‘Allas!’ & ‘Helpe, Mahoun!’, full lowe þay criede.  
Bot when þe Ynglysman herde þat crye,  
Oneane þay waxe full hardye,  
To wynn þe townn oneane þay wende.  
Bot þay within dide þam ful harde defende:

4465 Gyffe ane were dede & downn yfalle,  
Anôþer sterp vt appon þe walle  
Into þe stede þer he in stode,  
And werid it with full eGRE maode,  
þat no Cristyn man myghte in wynn,

4470 Bot þay were sone slayne or ells takyn.  
Amanges þe town瘢 folkes þer was [no] gamen,  
To consaile þay gadirde samen,  
And þer þan saide thiere chefe amyralle:  
‘Lordynges,’ he saide, ‘lystenys to my tale,

4475 This segge es grete & this fire es strange,  
And this waa maye we noghte enduren lange.  
And to slaa vs Sir Fuke hase grete desire,  
And hase sett oure townn thusgates one fire.  
And peese till vs will he none graunte

4480 Bot ȝif it be one swilke a couenaunte:  
þat we oure god Mawhownn forsake,  
And Cristyndome vntill vs take,  
And lefe one Ihesu Criste and Marie.  
And that were dispite and velanye,

4485 þat we scholde lefe one false laye;  
Gase & armes ȝowe euerilke man, I saye,  
þat strange es wapyn for to bere,  
And gase to þe walles þe townn for to were.  
Of folkes we hafen swilke ten

4490 Als Sir Fuke hase of the Cristyn men  
To feghte with vs now hedir broghte.  
Gase & beese nowe hardy & dredis þam noghte;
For better vs es owte for to rynn, it is better for us to run out
Than in howsses als wretches to bryne as wretches to burn
And thus for fry in ourn ownn gres! to fry / own fat
Thies Ynglys men are faynte & hertles, deceitful / heartless
And of mete and drynke þay hafe defaute, lack
And we sall slaa þam in assawte, slay / assault
And felle þam in the playne felde; open field
We ne will this townn 3e1de will not surrender
To no Cristyn hounde, whills we may leuen!’ live
And when he hade this consell giffen, put on
every man / attire
Euerilke a man þan his armour one hym keste, eager
And come to hym bothe ferse & preste Kneled then
To fyghte þan were þay alle full felle. war
And to there temple þay wente full snelle, need before now
And ilke a man one his beste gyse vow
Knelyde doun there & made sacratice if we win the day
And here we maken oure avowe: cease nor desist
Pat þay scholde helpe þam in that were. against / faith
‘For we hade neuer,’ þay seide, ‘nede or nowe,
And here we maken our avowe:
þe pris this daye, and we may wynn,
þat we ne schalle neuer sesse ne blyne
And ande we maken our avowe:
þe pris this daye, and we may wynn,
þat we ne schalle neuer sesse ne blyne
And here we maken our avowe:
Pat þay scholde helpe þam in that were.
‘For we hade neuer,’ þay seide, ‘nede or nowe,
And here we maken our avowe:
It is better for us to run out
as wretches to burn
to fry / own fat
decieful / heartless
lack
slay / assault
open field
will not surrender
live
put on
came / fierce / ready

eager
promptly
every man / attire
Kneled
then
need before now
vow
if we win the day
cease nor desist
against / faith
Until / are / annihilated / for ever
divided / company
through / gates / moved out
host / was led by

And alle abowte there he hym sprede. one
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
pe thride oste with hym gane lede
one
Sir Materbe, withowtten drede.
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde
Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde.
Sir Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke;
Thire folks ware rawnged in þe playne,
And alle abowte there he hym sprede.
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
þe thride oste with hym gane lede
one
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde
Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde.
Sir Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke;
Thire folks ware rawnged in þe playne,
And alle abowte there he hym sprede.
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
þe thride oste with hym gane lede
fourth
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde
Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde.
Sir Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke;
Thire folks ware rawnged in þe playne,
And alle abowte there he hym sprede.
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
þe thride oste with hym gane lede
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde
Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde.
Sir Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke;
Thire folks ware rawnged in þe playne,
And alle abowte there he hym sprede.
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
þe thride oste with hym gane lede
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde
Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde.
Sir Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke;
Thire folks ware rawnged in þe playne,
And alle abowte there he hym sprede.
And one Sir Cowdraye, he ledde anoper.
And with hym was Sir Orphyas, his brothir.
þe thride oste with hym gane lede
One Sir Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde,
Bot withowtten dowte alle þe erthe
And in foure than they dalte their rowte,
And at the foure þatis þay yschewed owte.
þe firste oste Sir Arkarde ledde,
And he deyuysede þan the thirde parte
   With swerde, knyffe, axes & darte,
34545 þe men of armes come althir laste.
   ‘Now,’ quod Sir Fuk, ‘ne beese noghte agaste,
   Giff þat þay be mo þan are wee.’
   þay blissede þam þan, & felle one knee:
   ‘Now, þe Fadir & þe Sane & þe Holy Goste,’
34550 Quod Sir Fuk, ‘safe now þe Cristyn oste;
   Lady Mary,oure erande now þou byde,
   þat thi dere sone helpe vs now at this nede,
   And kepeoure honour nowe, we the praye,
   For priste we sall bene for the this daye,
34555 For his luffe þat dieþ appon the rode.’
   The Sarænes þan, with ðegre mode,
   þair wapyns full faste þan gane þay grippe,
   And bygone to trompe and to pype,
   And to feghte þe Cristyn weren full swyft.
34560 Ilke a lorde his banere lete lyfte,
   With the kynde armes of his awnn;
   For þat he scholde þy þam be knawenn,
   For to folowe & for to habyde,
   In that batelle þer als they ryde.
34565 þe Sarænes come þan with full grete will,
   Bot when þat þe Cristyn myghte come þam till,
   To schotte faste þe alblasterers þam drisses,
   And Ynglys archers euen to þam gessis,
   þay smate þam at eu erilke schote
34570 Thurghe sydis and thurgh throte.
   And staffe-slyngers with grete stanes
   Slewe many of þam, for þe nanes,
   Off the vawarde a thowsande score;
   þe Cristyn men waxe þe baldere þerfore.
34575 Fuke Doly lete lifte vp a standarde
   With the armes of Kyng Richerde,
   Bot when the Sarænes it gane sene,
   þay wenyd that Kyng Richerde þer had þan bene
   Righte amanges þam, in the batelle þer,
34580 And of hym þay weren adrade full sare.
   Knyghtis and amyralls þat were prowde,
   ‘Lays one faste!’ þay cried full lowde,
   ‘Brynge 3e the cite owte of care,
   Eyull mote he spede þat his faa will spare!’
34585 Sir Archarde toke a grete launce,
   And come prikand with eyull chaunce
   To Sir Fuke Doly he gane bere full faire,
   And he with anoþer mett hym alle þare,
   And righte with playne force in þe felde
34590 Sir Fuke percede his brode schelde,
   And reghte thorow þe hert full euen it schare;
   And þe Sarayyne felle righte doun dede þer.
With boste pan come Sir Cowdraye
Agaynes a knyghte of oure laye,

4595 And with a fawcheoun he gane hym smytte;
He bare a swerde pat wolde wele byte,
And in þe nekke he hitt hym with alle,
Pat þe hede went offe als a balle.
Pan one a rabytt come Sir Orphias,
4600 For boste prikkande a full grete pase,
A grete schaft in his hande he bare:
'Come feghte with me,' he bade, 'wha sa dare!'
Sir John Doly, of Sir Fukes kyn,
A 3onge knyghte full of joye within,

4605 In hande he toke a spere full lange,
Þe poynte was scharpe, þe schaft was strange,
And one his schelde he hitt hym swaa
Þat it cleued euenn in twaa,
And slewe hym there full seikrly,
4610 And sayd: 'Heythyn doge, ly þer þou, ly
And ryste the there to domysdaye;
For nowe arte þou seikir of thy paye.'
Bot togedir when þat þe ostes mett,
Fukes folke myghte no mare thane schotte,
4615 Bot byhynde the armede men þay went
Þat na Sarayenes scholde þam schentte,
Bot men of armes thane with swerdis brayde,
Full faste appon the Sarayens layde
With babills of stele and with mace
4620 Þay smate þam faste righte in the face,
And slyke strakes þay þam lent
Þat helmys & bacenettis insonde went
Þat ouer þe scholdire felle the brayne.
Þe Cristyn folkes were egre of mayne:
4625 Þe fote folkes & symple knaues
Faughte with axes and with staues,
With pikes smate theym thurgh þe breste,
And slewe alle þat was theym neste.
Was þer no Sarayyne in that floke
4630 Fro he haffed hade anes a knoke,
With a grete staffe & wele bysett
One helme, one scholdre or one bacenett,
Þat he ne zede downn topsayle,
Ouere and ouere his horse tayle.
4635 With staffes & axes þat wele wolde bytt,
Horse & man righte downn þay smytt;
And sone within a littill stownde,
Þe maste partye was broghte to þe grownde.
And the lordes sees how that they spedde,
4640 And faste awaye forsothe þay fledde,
And in þe townn þay wolde hafe bene.
Bot Sir Fukes folke was þam bytwene,
[the Saracens] were surrounded
none / could escape
struck
slain
steeds & Arab horses / armour-clad
at once / heads / struck off
foes / completely
undergarment
done the work completely
blew [for] victory
no / bury
rested
every man / in abundance

gave them a vile welcome
cut off / head

gave them a vile welcome
cut off / head

gave them a vile welcome
cut off / head

were completely
undergarment
done the work completely
blew [for] victory
no / bury
rested
every man / in abundance

gave them a vile welcome
cut off / head

In the sygne and to bere recorde
Pat Kyng Richerd was their chefe lorde.

And when he had stabled þis þe townn,
þan with his oste he made hym bownn
To Orglyous, to Sir Thomas.
And forthe þay rade a grete pase
To Kyng Richerde, to Sodayn Turry.
And he kyssed þam and sett thaym hym by,
And ilkane tolde þan of his chaunce.
Aftir þaire grete swynke there to sogeurne,
To Orglyous, to Sir Thomas.
To gothe one ryure & als one chase.
Bot it felle appon a daye aftirwarde,
Kyng Philippe ete with Kyng Richerde,
So dide dukes, erIes, and many a barownn,
þe men of Fraunce of maste renownn,
Of Ynglande, of Gaiscoyne, & of Spayne,
Of Lumbardie, of Geene, and of Almaine.

Trompes blewe and tabours diden dasche,
þe mete was redy and þay gane wasche.
þay were sett doun vnto the table,
And serued wele, withoutten any fable,
To theire talentes of flesche and fische,
France men, Lumbardes, Gaiscoynes, Ynglis.
Of riche wyne there was grete plentee,
Of gude pyment of Tire, & of gud clarre.

And of theire comynge Kyng Richerd was fayne:
‘Now lordynes,’ he saide, ‘makes joye & gamen.’
And ilke man spakes with othire insamen;
Some spake of hawkes & oþer some of venerry,
And oþir some comonde of paire cheualry.

‘Now,’ quode Kynge Rycherde, ‘lates euerilke man telle
What he haues done & how hym byfelle,
Whaa hase the strangeste distres,
And whaa hase done þe maste prowesche.
I myselfe wanne Sodayn Turry,

And of þe folkes ne haffed I no mercy;
Alle þat þer was I & myn hoste sloughe,
And wanne þer tresour euynn ynoyhe:
Cristen men now alle ther bee.'
Sir Thomas gan þan his dedis mene:
4745 'I wane,' he sayde, 'þe Castelle Orglious,
And bathe mayden & grome, man & spowse
Myn oste þay slewe alle there als þay forthe þede,
And badd þam alle the gude.'
And thane tolde Sir Fuke Doly
And seiden: 'I myselfe wanne Ebidye,
Ne gayned righte n03te to crien mercy,
For whane scholde dogges do batt dy?
Alle the folke hoppede hedles,
In this manere I made theire pese:
4755 I distroyede alle the haythyn blode,
And gaffe the Cristyn men alle þaire gude
I gaffe that I therein fande,
And stabled it into Cristyn hande.'
Quod Kyng Philipe: 'Bot I ne dide n03te soo;
Taborett and Archane I went vnto,
þe folkes corne owte of bathe the citees
And criede mercy and felle one knees,
And for euerilke hede I toke rawnsone,
And to me þay 3alde aþhire towvn,
4765 And vp þay sett ther my banere
And we weren at ane on this manere:
Ilke a þere trewage me to gyffe,
And sware ane athe þer whills þay may lyfe
þe towvn to holde euermore of mee.
4770 And of þam I had þan grete pite,
And for to slaa men was me neuer lefe,'
Kyng Richerde token that to grefe,
And one hym þan gane he stare.
Says: 'Thi werke dowe noghte euyll myghte
þou ware wele worthy mawgre to haue,
Sarasyne lyfe þat þou will saue
To graunte þam lyfe for any mede,
For þer þou dide to God falsehede.
And þer þou hafe done to þe Cristyn grete schame,
4775 And broghte thyselfe in euyll fame.
Alle swilke werkes I refyuze,
And the thyselfe, gif þou it vse,
þou ne dide noghte als I the badde.
And þou be efte in fighte stadde,
4780 And þou sall fynde þam, withouten lese,
þat þou sall be thi mooste foes.
And 3if þou þam alle yslayne,
þou and thi folkes myghte haue bene fayne
And wonn alle þe gudis withinn.
4785 And nowe es newe werke to bygynn,
And that thyselfe schalle wele wiete.'
Quod Kyng Philipe: ‘I will thedire ʒitt go to that place
go to that place
103
For to proue gif it be so.

Giffe þay will me any gile do, If / do any treachery
If / do any treachery
4795
Or be abowte me to anoye, in the morning / rode
in the morning / rode
I sall slaa alle and distroye,
shut the gates

þay sall neuer than hafe no grythe.’ truce
truce
Now quod Kyng Richerd: ‘Gif I wende þe with, with you
with you
þe bettir I hope the may betyde.’ happen to you
happen to you
4800
And one þe morne þay gane forthe ryde in the morning / rode
in the morning / rode
With their ostes to Taborett. hosts
hosts
And the folkes within the jatis schett, deceitful
deceitful
And callede Kyng Philipe faynte & false cowarde,
deceitful
Full false wreche, and hase broken forewarde. wretch / [their] agreement
wretch / [their] agreement
4805
‘Þou gaffe vs lefe for oure rawnsone, from this moment to the end of the world
from this moment to the end of the world
Þou sall noghte hafe of this town,
No mare hetyn to þe worldis ende.’
No mare hetyn to þe worldis ende.’
Quod Kyng Richerd to Kyng Philip: ‘Hafe now in mynde
look
I sayde the sothe, nowe, Sir Kynge.’ look
4810
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun pay
at once / knocked down
pay
dynge,
broke it in two as an insult
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
tore it apart / very quickly
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
moat / thrown
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
one / own
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste. show his might
show his might
Kyng Richerd bade his frendis: ‘Hafe no ryste,
at once / knocked down
Brooked men keste trees in the dyke,
broke it in two as an insult
And oneane þay wanne ouere lyleke.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And oneane in his sighte his banere doun þay dynge,
And brake it insonde for grete dispitt,
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
to go [and]
And badde hym than ga do his beste.
And into peces rafe it & that full tite,
And in the dyke doun es it thrawenn,
And sett vp ane reghte ofpaire awenn,
T

he oste þe pay wolde late lange duelle þer,
Bot to þe cite of Archane þan gan þay fare.
þe folkes of þe town þe þatis þan schott
Kyg Philipe for to halde þer owte.

4845
And sayd: ‘Kyg cowarde, gaa thi waye,
Here hafe þou loste for euer thi praye.
þou gaffe [vs] lyfe for oure tresoure,
And of this town þe þou neuer more.
Alle at ones þan toke thou,

4850
Here hafe þou loste thi lordechipe nowe;
For þou arte false and fayntly wirkes,
Of thy wretche, whatte deuyll who rekkes!
For alle that euer þou may vs nowe do to,
We ne rekke neuer.’ Pay dispysede hym so.

Kyg Richerd was þan full sore agreuede,
And sayd to þam: ‘þerin, þat mysbyleuede
Solde nane of thaym be saued quykke!’
Quarells and arowes flowe full thykke,
þe Cristyn oste the þatis brynte,

4860
Brake þe walle, and in þay wente.
þe Sara3enes þerin fledde, & full faste fekyde,
þe Cristyn folowed and slewe and stekede,
And gaffe alle the folkes þer þaire bane;
And thus Kyg Philipe wanne agayne Archane.

4865
Now quod Kyg Richerd: ‘Philipe, take to the
Alle the gudes of ayther citee,
And thus thou myghte hafe done or this
To saue þam þou dide amys,
Bot I forgiffe the the firste il1e.

4870
þou may bewarre, gif þat þou will,
And be we nowe gude frendis bathe,
Bot I warne the, we sall be wraeth,
Slyke foly ethe and thou it hawnnte,
Any Sara3yne lyfe & þou euer graunte.

4875
Beware þat þou no golde couayte,
And in þis lande do no dissayte.
And þou be ethe fownden with gile
For why we fallen ofte in grete perille,
Be þe childe in oure lady barme.

4880
Gaa sall þou noghte withouten barme,
Of golde þou sall hafe alle thi fille.’
And he gane morne & holde hym stille,
He lowrred downn & his fyngirs gane pyke,
With Kyg Richerd wordes hym gane ille lyke,

4885
For þose wordes þat he gane till hym dele.
And thus Kyg Richerde gane hym consele:
‘Be trewe & do als I the teche,
And goo we forthe this contre to seche,
And slaaoure fomen & wynn þe crosse.’

\[4855\] To keep KP outside
\[4860\] went
\[4865\] will not get anymore
\[4870\] behave cowardly
\[4875\] that you may ever do to us
\[4880\] should none / alive
\[4885\] burnt the gates
\[4890\] fly
\[4895\] went in
\[4899\] retreated
\[4903\] death
\[4907\] won
\[4911\] to you
\[4915\] both towns
\[4919\] if
\[4923\] both
\[4927\] warn you / furious
\[4931\] if
\[4935\] [If] such / you engage in again
\[4940\] and you spare any S.’s life
\[4944\] do not covet gold
\[4948\] deceit
\[4952\] If you ever again are found to be dishonest
\[4956\] For which / danger
\[4961\] By / in Mary’s arms
\[4965\] You shall not go unharmed
\[4969\] your heart’s desire
\[4973\] he [i.e. Philip] grieved / held
\[4977\] frowned / picked at his nails
\[4981\] He disliked KR’s advice
\[4985\] [Richard] gave him
\[4990\] instruct you
\[4995\] search
\[5000\] slay / enemies

\[4855\] went
Kyng Philip ansuerde with mylde voyce
And sayd: ‘In me sall be no delaye
To helpe perto alle þat I maye.’

And agaynes þam þan come alle þaire nauye:
Schippes, cogges, and full many a galie,
Barges stowettes, & dromoundes felle
Charged with wyne, floure, and mele,
With armours and opere ful gude vetaile,

It was at þe Sayne James tyde,
When þat fowles begynnes for to chide,
þe ostre removed to Cayphas,
þat ten mile fro Acres was,

Euermore forthe by the maryn,
By a faire ryuere þat highte Chalyn.
And Saladyn, þe sowdane, þerof herde telle,
And he come flyngande afire full suelle
With ane hundrethe thowsande Sarazenese kene.

He thoghte thane alle oure Cristyn to tene,
And he oueretoke oure rerewarde,
And bygane to bekire full harde.
Hastily full many swerdes þay drewe,
And many Cristyn man swythe þay slewe;

Vnarmede was alle the rerewarde,
And feld full faste to Kyng Richerde.
Bot þat Kyng Richerd wiste this,
þat þe sowdane slewe men of his,
One Fauelle of Sypris he satt – þat was falowe –

He was als swythe Þal was þe swalowe,
For in alle þe worlde at nanekyns nede,
Was þer nane þat hade a bettir stede.
Þe kynges banere was vnhelyde,
Þe Sarazenese sawe & it byhelde

And when þe Sarazenese it gane see,
Þay tornede þaire bakkes & faste gane flee,
And þe Cristyn aftire þam gane ryde,
And þay turned þam at that ilke tyde,
And smate togedir with grete rawndonne,
Als gyffe the worlde scholde falle downn.
And Kynge Richerde before theym smate
With his axe that bittirly bate,
He theym hewed and insondre schare,
Full many vndire his hande died thare;

Neuer was man in erthe ryghte,
Þat better agaynes the Sarazenese gan fighte.
And many Cristyn, I telle 3ow for sekire,
Hent their dede there in that bekire
Thurgh a carte \( p \)at was \( S i r \) Howbertes Gawntere, 
\( p \)at was lefte byhynde righte there.
Sir Saladyn sones ther come iwys,
And toke \( p \)e carte with alle \( p \)e harnasse,
And the cartare loste his hande righte.
Bot there was slayne full many a knyghte;
For the harnays kepede a fowrty,
And of then was slayne a thirtty.
And Kyng Richerde hyed hym thedir fotte-hate,
And 3itt almoiste he come to late,
And in his hande he helde his axe gude,
Full many a Sara3yne there lete he blode,
One euerilke a syde hym he layde ane,
And slewe the Sara3ynes full thikke wane.
\( p \)ere was none armours, verrament,
So gude \( p \)at myghte withstande hym a dynte.
Oneane \( p \)e Langespraye, in \( p \)at tyde,
Layde one faste one anothir syde,
And to \( p \)e ground went \( p \)at \( p \)at he smate
With his swerde \( p \)at bittirly bate.
This batelle was righte dowtous,
And tille oure men reghte perilous;
For \( p \)e hete it was so strange,
And \( p \)e doste rasse \( p \)am amange
And stoppede \( p \)e Cristyn mens andys,
\( p \)at \( p \)ay felle down dede one the sandys.
\( p \)at mo died for hete, at schorte words,
\( p \)an for \( p \)e dynttis of speris or swerdis.
Kyng Richerde therfore sayd ofte, ‘Allas!’
For with the powdir nere loste he was,
And downn one his knees \( p \)an gun he falle
And helpe to Jhesu there gane he calle,
For \( p \)e luffe of his moder, Marye.
And als I fynde wretyn in historye,
He sees \( p \)er come Saynt George, hir knyghte,
Appon a stede bathe gude and lyghte,
With armours whitte als any flour,
And a crosse of rede coloure.
And alle \( p \)at he smate \( p \)an in that stownnde,
Horse and man alle wende to the grownde,
And also the wynde thane wexe more lythe,
\( p \)at comforthed \( p \)e Cristyn sterynly to stryve.
And Kyng Richerde sees that ilke syghte,
And in his herte \( p \)an wexe he lighte,
And ful egerly, withowtten fayle,
\( p \)e Sara3enes he bygane to assayle.
And one \( S i r \) Brawndische, a stowte Lumbarde,
Robert Thorname, and King Richerde,
Alle \( p \)at agaynes \( p \)am gane dryve,
Full sone \( p \)ay refte \( p \)am \( p \)aire lyve.
Sara3enes fledde to paire ressett
Vnto the Mounte of Nazarett.
Bot pat were so hiede at the spowrre,
Pat mekill of paire folkes pay diden lore.
Bot Kynge Richard went pay a pase
Into the cite of Chaphas,
And of victorye pay were pay blythe,
And thanked God full fele sythe,
And alle pay maden grete solas
For pe wynnynge of the cite of Caphas.

Sone at mornne pay lete he crye
Pat alle his oste scholldre hie
Towards pe cite of Palatyne,
And aye one forthe by pe maryn.
Pare paire pavelyons downn pay tilt,
And alle to lange ri3te ther they duellt
For to hafe that theire [vetaile]
Pat come by pe watir, saunce payle.
Bot ouer alle othire, pat was pe werste duellynge
Pat euer 3itt dide Richerde duelle,oure kynge.
Sembled full many a bolde Sara3yne
To bette downn the castells,
Citees, towres, and towrells.
And for pe firste pay bett doun a castelle
That was called Mirabelle
And aftere that, the castelle Calaphyn
Pat was made of full gude engyne.
Off Sessarye, pay fellede pe walle,
And pe towre of Arsoure alle,
Jaffe castelle also pay bett pay doume,
And pe gud castelle of Touroun.
Pe castelle Pelgryme pay fellyde pay per.
And also pe gud castelle Jasare.
Pe castelle of Seynt George de Rayne,
Pe castelle of C...
[pey felled doun & made al pleyn.
pe walles pey felled of Jerusalem,
And eke pe walles off Bedlem.
Maydenes castel pey lete stande,
And the castell off Aukes lande.
Be pat coost were no moo leten,
But pey were feld & doun beten.
And pis he dede wipouten lette;
For Richard scholde haue no recette.
Whenne he hadde pe bus idoo,
Kyng Richard he sente vntoo
And seyde he wolde, pe nexte morwe,
Mete hym in pe feld wip sorwe,
And wip a lunce to hym ryde, 
3iff þat he durste hym abyde.

5040 Vndyr the forest of Arsour
He wolde asaye hys valour.
Kyng Richard made it noþt tow3
But for þat tydying faste he low3,
Hee leet crye in his hoost –

5045 In þe name off þe Holy Gost –
þat þey scholden wip vygour
þat nyȝt reste before Arsour,
And diȝten hem al redy þan,
At morwen to fȝyte wip þe sowdan.

5050 On Seynt Marye euen þe Natuyte,
þis ylke bataylle scholde be.
Many was þe heþene man
Wip Saladyn þat come þan:
Off Inde, off Perse, off Babylowyne,

5055 Off Araby & off Cessoyne,
Off Aufrike and also of Bogy,
And also of alle þe lande of Alexandry,
And of moo landes þan men can telle,
Saffe he þat made bothe heuen & hell.

5060 Pat nyȝt was Kyng Richerde byfore Arso[ur],
Vndir þe faire foreste of Lesoure,
And with [hym] ther was ofYnglande
Wyse knyghttis and doughty of han de,
Mekill Fraunce folke, and Templers,

5065 Gascoynes, and also Ospetulers,
And of Provynce a full faire companye,
And also mekill peple of Lumbardye.
[Off Gene, off Sesyle, and off Tuskan
Pere were douȝty men off mayn,

5070 Off Ostrych & off Alemayn
þat weel cowde fȝyte in þe playn.
Off Crystene knyȝtes þere were hende,
Þe fayreste hoost to þe worldes ende.
And þe schal here, as it is wrete,

5075 Hou þe batayle was ismete.

Ssaladyn com be a mountayn
& ouyrspradde hyl & playn.
Syxty þousand, sayde þe spye
Was in þe fyȝste cumpanye,

5080 Wip longe speres, on heye stedes,
Off gold & asure were here wedes.
Syxty þousynd comen afftyrward
Off Sarazynes stoute & hard,
Wip many a pensel off sykelatoun,

5085 And off sendel grene & broun.
Almost come fyue & fifty thousand
Wip Saladyn þat comen behynde.
Þey comen alle style, nouȝt fer behende,
Here armure ferde al as it brende.

5090 þre thousand Turkes comen at þe laste
Wip bowe Turkeys & arweblaste.
A þousand taboures & sitt moo
Alle at ones þey smeten þoo
Al þe erþe donyd hem vndyr,

5095 þere myȝte men see a syȝte of wundir.
Now speke we of Richard,oure kyng,
Hou he com to batayle with hys gyng;
He was armyd in splentes of steel
And sat vpon his hors Fauel,

5100 Weel hym louede baroun & knyȝt,
For he cowde weel araye a fyȝt.
Þe fyrste batayle to þe Templeres
He gaff, & Þo to þe Hospytaleres,
And bad hem goo in Goddes name

5105 þe feend to schentschepe & to schame.
Jakes de Neys & Jhon de Neles –
Beffore þey wented in þat pres –
In þis world [ne] were þere
No betere knyȝtes þenne þey were.

5110 For þey prekyd, as I fynde,
Wip knyȝtes fully twenty þousynde,
And þe Sarayynes þey mette,
Wip grymly launse þey hem grete.
Many Sarayyn hadden here fyn,

5115 And wented to Mahoun & Appolyn,
And þo þat cauȝten dep offoure,
Wented to Cryst,oure saueoure.
Jakes de Neys was a noble knyȝt,
To slee paynymys he dede hys myȝt.

5120 He prekyd beffore þe folk to rape
Wip hys twoo sones & þat was srape.
þre þousand Turkes comen wip boost
Betwen Jakes & hys hoost,
Þat non help myȝte come hym too;

5125 For non helpe þat þey cowde doo,
Ne he ne myȝte hym wipdrawe
For þe folk off heþene lawe;
It was gret sçape þeroff, be Cryste.
Kyling Richard þeroff nouȝt ne wyste,
For he was hit al behynde,

5130 To ordeyne opir twenty þousynde,
Þoo scholde þe Duke off Burgoyne
Lede, & þe Eerl off Bolyne.
þese comen & deden here deuers

5135 Agayn þe heþene pawteners.
And Jakes & hys sones twoo
Almost weren islayn þoo.
He layde on euery syde ry3t,
And steryd hym as noble kny3t;

5140 Twenty he slow3 & ayper sone ten
Off þe vyle heþene men,
And nyne seþyn hys hors was feld,  
And euere he coueryd hym with his schelde.
He [had] non help off Templere,
[Knights] Templar

5145 Ne off non oþir Hospytalere.
He layde on wip his sworde,
And euere he sayde: ‘Jhesu, lorde,
I schal dye for þy loue,  
Resseyue my soule to heuene aboue.’

5150 þe Sarazynes layde on with mace,
And al toffrusschyd hym in þe place –
Hym & hys sones boþe;
[Knights] Hospitaller
Perffore Kyng Richard was ful wroþe.
Whenne Kyng Richard wyste þis,  
Knew of

5155 þat ded was Jakes de Nys,
‘Alas!’ he sayde, ‘þat is wronge.
Beynde I dwelIyd al to longe.’
He smot Fauel wip spores off golde –
Sewe hym þat sewe euer wolde.

5160 A launse in hys hand he healde,
He smot an amyral in þe scheelde
þe dynt smot þorw3 þe heþene herte,
I vndyrstande it gan hym smerte.
Kykng Richard hys arme wipdrow3,

5165 Wiþ þat launse a kyng he slow3,
So he dede an amyrayle,
And fyue dukes wiþout fayle.
Wiþ þat ylke launce selue
Kykng Richard slowʒ kynges twelue,

5170 þe prytteneþe to þe chyn he kerff,
þe launse barst, þe Sareʒin sterff.
Hys ax on his fore arsoun hyng,
Anon it took Richard oure kyng.
On he hytte on þe schuldyr bon,

5175 And karff hym to þe sadyl anon;
Non armure iwrouʒt wiþ hande
Myȝte Kyng Richardes ax wiþstande.
Off my tale bes nouʒt awundryd,
[Knights] Hospitaller
þe Frenssche says he slowʒ an hundrid –

5180 Whereof is maad þis Ynglyssche sawe –
Or he reste hym ony þrawe.
Hym folowyd many an Ynglyssche knyʒte,
þat egyrly halp hym for to fyʒt,
And layden on as þe wyre worode,

5185 Tyl valeys runne al on bloode.

receive / in heaven
struck
battered
furious
knew of
stayed / too
pierced Favel / spurs
There followed him those who wished to
struck / emir
through heathen’s heart
it hurt him
withdrew
slew
killed
same lance
thirteenth / carved
broke / perished
hung on / pommel
One

do not be astonished
From which / story is made
Before / rested a moment

helped

delivered blows / mad
111

De Sarajines sayden in here pauylouns:
That he Cristyn men foughte als lyouns,
And also Kyng Richerde with paire men faris
Als grewhounds dose with hares.

5190 And appon paire stedis þan gane þay lepe,
And swordis & speres in handes þay grepe.
Full many a man there slewe oþer,
Full many a Sarajene þer loste his broþer,
And many of these heythyn hundes.

5195 With theire teethe laye and gnewe þe groundes.
And by þe blode þat ranne appon the grysse,
Men myghte knawe where þat Kyngge Richerde was;
For brayne & blode he schedde euer newe,
Full many ane horse his guttis drewe.

5200 þer was many a tome sadille,
It garte the childe wepe in þe credille.
Þere faughte Kyng Richerde one euerilke syde,
Þe Sarajenes dorste noghte hym habide.
For seuen thowsande and seuen score

5205 At anes Kyng Richerde draffe hym byfore
Vp agaynes a clyffe full euen,
And þay fledde, als dere dose when þay are dreuwen,
And for the drede of Kyng Richerd
Of the clyffe þay felle bakwars,

5210 And alle tobraste bothe horse & man
Þat neuer nane of theym liffed aftir þan.
And that sees the Sowdane Saladyne,
He was full sekre his lyfe to tyne.
He lefte his paulyoun & his tent,

5215 And fledde awaye, verrament.
And Kyng Richerd sees hym flyande,
And persuys aftir hym full feste prekande.
To slaa the sowdane was his thoghte,
Of a fotemane a bowe he toke,

5220 And drewe ane arowe righte to þe huke,
And schotte it to the sowdane onane,
And strake hym thurgh þe scholdir bane.
And thus the sowdane, with grete doloure,
Fledde fro the Batelle of Arsoure.

5225 Bot sixty hundreth thowsande was þroþte of dawe
Of Sarajenes of the false lawe,
And of the Cristyn bot ten score;
Þere blyssede þe Jhesu Criste þerfore!

5230 And Kyng Richerde toke the pauyloun –
Of sendalle it was & of silke full brownn –
Þay were made in the schappe of castells,
Of golde & of siluere were the pensells.
And many was the noble geste

5235 þat þerone was made of wilde beste:
Of tygris, of dragouns, of lyouns, & of leoparde,
And alle this wanne there Kyng Richerde.
Many bowndyn cofres, & grete males  wooden chests reinforced with iron / huge bags
He hade there, withowtten any tales.
And of tresoure þay hade slyke wone
þat þay wiste neuer where þaie gudis to done.  they did not know / to stash their loot
Kyne Richer德 went thane with honour
Into the cite of Arsoure,
And ristede hym therein aIle that nyghte,  rested
And gaffe louyng to God full of myghte.
And at þe morne þe kyng of his bedde rasse,
And louede oure lorde God alwayes.
Of Napills he called Sir Gauthere,
þat was Maister Ospetulere,
And badde hym take with hym knyghtis
Stowte in armes and stronge in fighetes:
‘And agayne to the felde 3e do fare,
Where als þe batalle done was are,
And ledis Sir Jakes, the baroun,
Into Jerusalem, þat noble townn,
And in the erthe his body 3e do bery;
For he was a man þat was full mery.’
Alle that was done withowtten ryste,
Full hastely alle the kynges heste.
And thus Kyng Richerde wanne Arsoure,
God graunte his saule mekill honour.
Bot who so will here no we faire talkynge,
Lystenys now forthirmare of Richerd oure kynge.

At morne he sent to þe Kyng of Fraunce,
And seyd, withowtten any distaunce:
‘Wende wille we to þe cite of Nyneue,
For þat ilke es a full stronge cite.
And forsothe nowe were that townn ywonne,
þan were oure gam en faire bygun.’
Hadde we that and Babyloyne,
We scholde wende thane into Macedoyne,
And thane myghte we safely gange and ryde
Ane hundrethe miles one euerilke syde.’
Kyne Richerde & Kyng Philippe in Arsour laye,
A messangere hym come to saye
þat þe Sara3enes wolde þam habyde
And in batelle vnto theym ryde,
In the playnes of Toke, als I sow saye,
þare will þay byde and lyffe and dye.
Kyne Richerde spakke full sone onenone,
And sayd: ‘Messangere, by Sayne John,
And I wiste whate daye it ware,
I solde bee alle redy righte there.’
þe messangere sayde, by his laye:
113

5285  'It mon be this daye nynete daye,'

5290  His oste he dalte in foure manere

5295  And the foure Kyng Richerde.

5300  And pe Sarajenes pat ware so stowte.

5305  Bot pe were the Sarajenes sore afferde, And felly abasched in that ilke thrawe.

5310  And Kyng Richerd one Fawele gane ryde

5315  And many a crownn was þer crakede, And many a Sarajene was there schentt.

5320  And Kyng Philippe went hym by

5325  To þe dede 3ode bothe lesse and mare. 

5330  And Kyng Philippe went hym by

must / ninety days from today
the bold S. [came]
many more
went against them

divided into four
strong / hear
one side
on the other
third

fourth
surrounded
every Christian host
put up a Saracen banner
thought by that
thought by that
each man was a S.
And / knew

were surrounded
then raised his own banner
And then / sorely afraid
were perplexed by fear / same moment

saw

struck / at that moment

rode

that same time

made an attack

brandished

skull

injured

a [Saracen] host

the side of KP

went through by good fortune

emirs

together

was in a sorrowful mood

And / remained

death went common and noble

number / death went

And / retinue

Towards

Until / came

pitched
Went vnto armes, als I 3ow saye,
And hastily, withowtten pitee,
He hyed to assayllen þat ilke cite,
With bowes, with alblasters, & open gynn,
Gyff þat þay myghte þe cite wynn.

And alle þe folkes with gud entent
Didden Kyng Richerde commandement;
The engyners their mawngonells bent,
And grete stonys into þe cite þay sent,
And full harde stonys in did they throwe,
þat made the Saracenese to chaunge þaire hewe.

Alblastirs of vyce with many a quarelle,
And staffe-slyngers þay smate wele,
With tripgettis þay slange alsoo,
And many leddirs sett þe walle vntoo,

And blewe one theym wylde fire with trompes of gynn,
And mekill sorowe dide þey þam within.
And by þat sawe þe Saracenese euereikone
þat þay scholde alle to þe dede gone.
A messangere owte þay sent,

And to Kyng Richerde onane he wente,
And prayed hym gif þat his willis bee,
Of batelle bytwene three:
Thre of theym and thre of his.
And whethir party so haues the pris,
And who þat haues þe better, I vndrstande,
Sese þe cite into theire hande,
And halde it for euermare.
And Kyng Richerd grantted thare,
And bad þam come one þam hastily.

þe messangere þan went home in hy,
And said to þe heghe amyralle
þat Kyng Richerde, withowtten fayle,
Wele armede with spere and schelde,
Wolde habyre thaym in the felde.

'And with hym othir two barounes,
Noble men and grete renounes;
For to feghte thane with thase thre
þat 3e sende owte of this citee.'
And sone oneane þaire horse were dighte,
And thre amyralls, full baulde & wighte,
þaire names I salle telle 3ow oneane,
And whaa they highte þan euereikone:
Sir Arcolyn the firste in rade,
Sir Coudrebras also there habade,
Sir Galabere also ther houed full stille
To loke whaa þat wolde ryde hym vntill.
Bot Kyng Richerd, that noble knyghte,
To Sir Arcolyn he hym dighte.
þay strake togethir with dynntis sare,
spears burst into pieces
each struck the other

pat þaire schaftis braste insonde thare,
And aþyer one oþhere þan hewed so faste
With wapyns þat full wele wolde laste;
Owte of þaire helmys the fire sprange,
þe feghte bitwene þam was full strange.

5390
He gaffe Kyng Richerde a skelpe flatte
þat went thorowt his gud hatt,
And Kyng Richerd þeratt was agreued sare,
For þat strake he hade tane thare.
Kyang Richerde toke his axe full strange,
And appon hym full faste he dange
Reghte one his helme abowyn his crowyn,
That to the sadille he clafe hym downn;
Forsothe thane his lyfe myghte no langare laste,
And ther Kyng Richerd was his prest.

5400
Bot thane Sir Couderbras forthe gane ryde,
And Thomas of Multoun gane hym habyde.
And þay rade togedir reghte, als we rede,
So þat þay bothe vnþo þe erthe þede.
And vp þay stirten in that stownde,
Withowtten weme, withowtten wounde,
And faughte with fawcheouns þat were kene,
And one þayre helmys þat was sene.
Bot Sir Couderbras for felonye
Smate Sir Thomas, withowtten lye,
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
That the peces flewe into the felde.
And Sir Thomas was anoyed sare,
And thoȝhte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare.
He toke to hym his mace of brasse,
Þat fayled hym neuer sitt in naa case,
And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake,
Þat his helme al torafe & brake,
And alle tobrisssed his herne-pane,
And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane;
Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde,
Full dere þan gane þay þaire lyffes selle. 
Sir Galabere was full smarte & wyghte, 
Bot he myghte hym hytt no strake aryghte 
Bot at þe laske he gafte hym ane, 
And therwith he braste his scholdre bane. 
One knees he felle & cryed: 'Creaunt, 
For Mahownns luffe, and Termagaunt!' 
Bot Sir Fuke ne wolde noghte lefe swaa, 
The hede he smate the body fraa. 
Thanne alle the lorde of þat citee, 
Vnto þo þatis full faste gane þam hye, 
And alle the keyes þay with þeym broghte, 
And the kyng of mercy þay bysoughte, 
And gyffe þat he wolde saue þaire lyffes, 
þay wolde bene Cristyn bothe men & wyffes, 
And wende with hym, withowtten fayle, 
In þe forbreste of euery bataylle, 
And of hym holden that ilke cite. 
The kyng graunte it swa to bee; 
A bischoppe he bade come oneane, 
And Cristyn þam euereilkeane, 
Bothe littill & mekill, lesse & mare, 
Alle in þat tyme þay Cristened ware. 
Kykyn Richerd enterde thane into þat cite – 
And Kynge Philippe to Acres ther wente hee – 
And in þat cite Kykyn Richerd bylefte still, 
þe newe tornede men serued hym at will. 
Bot who so that will nowe bee in pese, 
May heryn a geste of grete nobilnesse. 

Pe Chefe Sowdane of alle Heythynnesse Chief Sultan of all Heathen world [i.e. Saladin] 
Was fledde into Babyloyne ywysse. 
His consell thane he sent vnto þat tyme 
And thare semblde full sone many a Sarayyne; 
For fourty hundrede þowsande þat day was telde 
Of knyghtis & gilte spowrres in þe felde, 
Withowtten other pedaylle, 
þat þer come to þat bataylle. 
Als he sayd þat was the spy 
þat tolde þe folkes of bothe party, 
Sixty hundrede þousand of haythyn men 
Were þer þat come to þe batel with þe sowdane. 
Bot herkyns nowe bothe 30nge & alde, 
For his lufe þat Judas saulde, 
þer als God luffes es trewthe & righte, 
And ther will he sende powere & myghte; 
And that was þere full wele ysene. 
Oure Cristyn oste, withowtten wene, 
Were no moo, in buke as I fynde, 
In all bott four score þowsande.
For Philippe & his men weryn bot ille
By þe tone syde of the cite,
And kepþe Saraænes þat weren stowtte;
Was nane so balde dorste anes luke owt.

For Kyng Richerde one þe to syde laye
And bekeride full faste to þam, I saye,
With mawngonells and gud spryngells,
With full many arowes & quarel, and
And gud staffe-slyngers, for þe nanes,
Pat bekerid full faste with harde stanes.
Bot the cite was so strange within,
[Þat þer was no man þat þam myȝte wynne.
Bot the mawngonells, for the nones,
Braste þe walles with grete stonys,
Paire ȝatis and paire berbycane.
And þe sekin þat þe haythen ilkane
Made encountrle full harde & strange
Þer many a man drede þam amange.
Bot had Kyng Philippe trewe ybee
At þe segge of þat ilke cite,
Þare hade neuer scapede thane
Heythyn kynge ne þit sowdane,
Þat þay ne hade bene slayne downn-righte.
For Kyng Richerde euer appon þe nyghte,
When þat þe sonne was gone to ryste,
With his oste he wolde be priste
To gyffe batelle bothe harde & stowtte
Þat na Saraænes myȝte wynne owte.
And sleþe þam downn ful grete plente,
And wilde fyre keste into þe cite.
Þe Saraænes defendid þam full faste,
With bowes Turkesys and alblaste;
Stronge fyghte was þam bytwene,
Als they seyd þat it hade sene.
Quarells & arowes ful thikke gane flye,
Als powder dose vndir þe sky,
And wylde fire þe folkes to bryne.
Bot to conselle went þe haythen then
To feghte with þam righte in the felde,
For þay wolde noghte þe cite ȝelde.
Þay cried: ‘Trewes!’ appon þe walle
To Kyng Richerde & to his men alle.
Bot of Kyng Richerd myȝte þay noȝte spede,
To take trews for nankyns mede.
‘Nay, forsothe,’ quod Kyng Richerd thane,
‘Till I hafe slayne the sowdane
And brynte þat es in this cite.’
Þe latymere thane tornede he

were incompetent
one side
kept [within] / brave
bold / that dared look out once
And on the other side
attacked
catapults / bow-like engines
arrows / bolts
soldiers armed with slings
attacked / stones
strong
Knocked the walls down
gates / outer fortifications
be certain / every heathen
had KP been true
siege / same city
would have never escaped
[Neither] heathen / nor sultans
But they would have been slain

sun had gone to rest
host / ready
[so] hard / boldly
escape
killed plenty of them
cast Greek fire

Turkish bows / crossbows

those who had seen it
flew as thick
As dust
to burn people
And the heathen sought advice
did not want to yield
Truce

they would not obtain
under any circumstances
Certainly not
burn all that is
interpreter went
To the tothir syde of þe townn,
And cried ‘Trews!’ with full grete sownn.
To þe riche Kynge of Fraunce,
And he granted with mekil meschaunce.
For a porcyoun of betyn golde;
And ells had þe town bene ȝ30lde,
And alle the Saracen es therin slayne.
Extremely delighted
And seide: ‘A fy, cursed false man!
Loo, how þat for couetys of tresoures,
He dose hymselfe full gret dyshonour,
þat he solde thus the Saracen es respit gyffe,
It is harme þat slyke a man solde lyfe
To breke þe segge thus & gange awaye,
þan will þe Saracen es feayne, I dare saye.’
And grete joye made þe Saracen es amange,
Danced / played the trumpet
Messangers came fra the sowdane
And gret Kynge Richerde one faire manere
And seid: ‘Sir, gif thou will to here,
My lorde, þe sowdane, to the sent,
Giff þat þou will grante in present.
þou art strange of flesche and of banes,
And he es doughty, for the nanes.
þou dose hym grete harme, he says,
And fouilly distroyes his contreys,
And slaes his men and etis amange,
And þou werres agaynes hym all with wrange,
And cravys herytage in this lande;
He dose the wele till vndirstande
þat þou ne hase þerto no manere of righte.
Thou says thi God es full of myȝthe,
Bot, will þou graunte with spere and schelde
To dresse the righte into the felde,
With helme & hawberke & brandis bryghte,
One stronge stedis þat bene gude & lighte,
should give the S. a period of grace
such a man / live
go away
Danced / played the trumpet
Come from
Greetings
Hear
To you
If
Your do
Slay / eat [his men]
Make war against / wrong
Crave sovereignty
You have no right
You say your / powerful
Grant / Spear
Arm yourself
Helmet / Mail shirt / sword
On a strong steed / is
And whether so bee of mare powere
Jhesu or ells Jupiterere?
And he sende me to saye the this:
Giff pat thou will ane horse of his –
Bot in alle the landis thou hafe in gane
Slyke a stede sawe thou neuer nane –

And prove who is more powerful
tell you
If / will [accept] a horse
you have been
Such a steed you have never seen
neither Favel / nor the famous Lyard

for Fawelle of Cipres ne Lyarde of pris
are noghte bothe so gude als he es.
And gif thou will graunte, pis ilke daye
He salle be broghte to þe to assaye.’
Kyne Richard answerd & sayd: ‘Þou says wele,

Slyke ane horse, by Saynt Michaelle,
I walde hafe to ryde appone.
For myn aren wery and forgone,
And I sall, for my lordis lufe –
Þat sittis hegheste in heuen aboue –

such a steed you have never seen
want to have
worn out
this very day

If his [i.e. the sultan’s] own / is
If
told

As I may yield my soul to God
him [i.e. the sultan]

what kind of one [i.e. horse] he is
trustworthy / without doubt
shall want no other
went home
in that place
ready

Through the devil’s craft
demons / air

both of one hair [i.e. same colour / breed]
was never seen any such [horses]
The one / in the likeness of a mare

Whenever
so bold

should the mare give out a neigh
When / whinny / loudly
run to her

on his knees / suck his mother
Then
kill

an angel told him
Pat to hym come abowte midnyghte—
And seyd: ‘Wakyn Richerd, pou gud knyghte,
Mi lorde dose the to vndirstande
Pat þe sall come ane horse to hande,
Bot als wyde whare als þou hafe gane,
Slyke ane ne sawe thou neuer nane;
Faire it es of body, I the plighte,
Bytreye the giffe þe sowdane myghte
Bot one hym to ryde haue þou na drede,
And purveye the a tree grete & strange,
Þofe it be of fourty fote lange,
And trusse it ouerthrwerter thi horse mane,
And alle þat he metys þay sall be slayne
With that tree he sall doun felle.
It es a fende, als I the telle,
Bot ryde appon hym in Goddis name,
For he ne may do the nankyns schame.
‘And do it faste appon his hede,
And be the brydill in his mowthe
Þan may torne hym northe or southe.
And he sall serue the at thi will
When þe sowdane sall ryde the till.
And hafe here a spere-hede of stele,
He hase none annours wroghte so wele,
Þat ne it will þam perche, be þou balde.’
And when þe angelle hade hym thus talde,
Thane full suythe agayne to heuen he went.
And at morne þe horse was to hym sent,
And Kyng Richerd of the horse was blythe,
And garte ordeyne hym a sadill suythe;
Bathe the crowchis of stele full strange,
For þat þay solde endure wele & lange.
And with a chyne he girde hym faste,
Þe brydelle one his hede he caste,
Righte als the angelle had hym taughte.
Bot twa gud stronge hukes forgat he noȝte
In his crowche he sett byfore.
And with waxe he stopped bothe his eres þore,
And sayde: ‘By þe appostills twelue,
Giff þat þou be the deuyll hymselfe,
Þou sall serue me þis day at my nede.
He þat one the rode gane blede,
And suffred grymly woundis fyve,
And sythen rase fra dede to lyve
And boghte mankynde owte of helle,
And alle þe fendis myghte gan felle,
Þat ilke lorde God and persones three,
In his name nowe I charge the:
came to him at
Wake up
tells you
a horse shall come to you
as [far and] wide as you have gone
Such one you have never seen
I assure you
Even though the sultan might betray you
on him [i.e. the horse] / no fear
serve you / your need
procure yourself / log / strong
Even though / were / long
tie it / crosswise
fiend / tell you
cannot do you any
put
serve you / your
the sultan / towards you
steel-pointed spear
He [i.e. the sultan]
pierce them / you may be sure
swiftly
in the morning
 glad
 prepared / saddle swiftly
Both / saddlebows / strong
should / long
chain / tied
And two / hooks / did not forget
to set in front of / saddlebow
wax / plugged his ears
apostles
Even though you were
shall
he [i.e. Christ] / on the cross bled
five wounds
then rose from the dead
saved mankind from hell
felled all demons
the three persons [i.e. the Trinity]
order you
He schoke his hede and stode stille;
The kyng stodied alle that nyghte.
At the morn, when it was dayes lighte,
Seuen sowdans with full grete rowte
Of the cite pay ischewedede owte,
And batelde pay appon pe ryuere,
With brode baners, & helmys clere.
Pat daye was talde, withowtten lesynes,
Of sowdans & of haythyn kynges,
Ane hundrethe & maa, als I telle can,
Pat pe leste of those broghte with hym pay
A twenty thowsande and ten
Of those false corste haythyn men.
Bot who pat will tent nowe to my tale,
Sall here nowe of a grete bataylle
Pat was full trewe, sance faile,
And done in dede, withowtten tale.
For her was in pat ilke fighte
Slayne doun of paire stedis lighte
Full many a stalworthe knyghte.
Be vawarde pat led full ryghte,
And 3it to littill was paire myghte.
Pay were spred both este & weste,
Als it were a grete foreste;
Of pe Sarazenys so grete was pe oste,
Pat a twenty miles of that coste,
Grownde ne grysse myghte no man see
For bryghte armours and speris hye.
Be Sarazenys thoghte batelte to habyde,
And messangerse bytwene gane ryde
To the noble Kyng Richerde,
To aske gif pat he wolde holde forwarde
That they had made the daye byfore.
The Sarazenys alle redy was thore,
Fyve hundrethe thowsande & maa gan her bee.
Kyng Richerd loked & gane pat see:
Als snaue lygges appon mountaynes,
Filled was hillys and playnes
With helmys pat were brighte and clere,
And alle of pe haythyn powere.
To here their noyse it was grete wondre;
And als gyf pat pe werlde schold faile insondre,
And scholde the fourte party falle adoun.
Oure Cristyn men than made pat bownn.

To arms! vnto his men he sayde.
He sayd: ‘Fellawes, now for pe rode,
Lokes pat 3e be of comforthe the gode,
And thynkes wele, and vndirstandis,
That we hafe wonn many landis,
And gif þat we gete þe pris this daye,
Of haythynnes alle the noblaye –
By hym þat made mone and sonne –
For euermare thane hafe we wonn
Haythynnes by Goddis myghte.

Byhaldis me wele how I sall fighte,
With swerde, spere, and axe of stele.
Bot I this daye do note þam wele,
Eueremore forthe fro hythen forwarde
Holdis me for a feynt cowarde,

Bot if euerilke Cristyn mane & page
Hafe this ilke nyghte to his wage
Ane hede of a Saraȝyne
Thorowe Goddis helpe & myn.
Swylke werke I sall amanges þam make,
Of these þat I may ouertake,
þat fra this day to domysdaye,
þay schall speken of my paye.'
Our Cristyn men were armed wele,
Bothe in iryn and in stele.

þe Kyng of Fraunce with his bataylle
Was redy the Saraȝenes to assayle;
Abownn the Saraȝenes þay ryde,
Ther als þay wolde batelle habyde.
þe France men grete boste gane make,
Saraȝenes crownnes for to crake.
Bot in geste, als it es talde,
Nane of theym was so balde;
þay ne dorste noghté come þe haythyn nere,
Till þat Kyng Richerde was comen, I dare swere.

When Kyng Richerd commes with his oste,
He will vmbyclose þam by anoþer coste,
Bytwene theym and the cite
þat na Saraȝenes sall mowe flye;
Bot þif þay pay will into a reuere gaa,
Or ells þe Cristyn men sall þam slaa.

Bot thane comes Kyng Richerd with ostis thre,
And one gaffe assawte to þe cite,
And two forthe with hym he ledde.
To bryng hym his horse, þan he bad,
That the sowdane had to hym sent.
And seyde: 'With his awenn present,
I sall mete hym large or nyghte'
And to his horse þan was he dighte.
Bot or he into the sadill wold leppe,
Of many thynges he toke gud kepe.
Hym lakkede noghte þat he ne hade,
His men broghte hym alle pat he bade:
A grete square tree of fourty fote lange, at þe leste,
He gerte byfore his sadille befest

5785
Full faste men there þan gane it brase,
þat it ne faylede for nakyns case.
And so þay dide with stronge hukis of iryne,
And with gud rynges and with fyne;
For oþer festenyngc reghte nane þer was

5790
Bot irdyn hokes for alkyns case,
And jitt were þay girde & wroght full wele.
Bothe his gerthis and his peytrelle,
A qwaynttes of the kynges awenn,
Appon his horse there was drawenn,

5795
With foure lebardes of golde tellde,
Als men may see in townn & felde.
And byfore his crowche, his axe of stele,
For it wolde fesse the Saraþenes wele.
And hymselfe was full richely ouer bygane,

5800
Fro the creste vnto taen.
He was enarrned full wondirfully wele
In full sure platis þat weren of stele,
And jitt abownne alle ane hauberke,
þat was wroghte of Tracy werke.

5805
And abownn his armours his cote armour,
Hose and gloues of stele in that stowre,
And one his scholdir a schelde of stele,
With thre leberdis departed full wele.
Ane helme he hade of gude entayle,

5810
And traysty & trewe was his auentayle.
And one his creste a doffe whytte,
In syngnyfycacoun of the Saynt Espyritte.
And appon a crosse the dofe stode,
Of golde wele wroghte bothe riche & gude,

5815
In syngne for whome þat he faughte.
His sperè-hede ne forgatte he noghte,
And a full grete schaft þer was broghte
And the heghe name þerin was wroghte.
Bot herkenys now how þe Sarazenesc sware

5820
Or they into the batelle gane fare:
'Gyffe it were swaa þat Kyng Richerd myghte
Slaa þe sowdane in felde with fyghte,
He and his men scholden thethyn gane
At their wille euereilkane,

5825
Into the cite of Babloyne,
And also into the kyngdome of Macedoyne,
And he scholde hafe alle vndir his hande.
And giff þat þe sowdane of that lande
Mighte slaa Kyng Richerde in that felde,

5830
With swerde or spere vndir schelde,
The Cristyn thane schoulde gange awaye

log / fourty-foot long, at least
in front of / fastened
covered it with bronze plates
[So] that it should not fail for anything
hooks of iron
good and fine rings
there was no other fastening [device]
Except for / for everything
yet / tied
his [i.e. the horse's] belt / breastplate
[And the] ornamental trappings / own

lions / embroidered with gold
field
saddlebow
rout
himself [i.e. KR] / trimmed
From crest to toes [i.e. completely]
armed
plate armour / steel
over / a mail shirt
Thracian craft
overgarment with heraldic arms
Armour for the lower legs / gauntlets / combat
shoulder / shield
lions separated vertically
A / style
trustworthy / mail for face and neck
white dove
To signify
stood

As a sign of whom [i.e. Christ]
spear / did not forget

high name [i.e. Christ]
listen / swore
Before / went
If / so
Slay / in the field
from there should go
every one
Cairo

then / go away
Owte of that lande for euer and aye,
And þe Sarayenes haue þaire will in walde.’

Now quod Kyng Richerde: ‘& thereto I halde

And thereto my gloue, als I ame knyghte.’

Pay were wele armede and redy dighte
And Kyng Richerde into the sadill lepe;
Who so þat þeroffe wolde take kepe,
To see þat syghte it was fulle fayre.

The stedis rane with full grete ayere,
Als so faste als þay myghte gange,
þat aftire þaire fete sprang fire strange.
Tabours bett and trumpes gane blawe,
Ther myghte men see in a thrawe

How that Kyng Richerde, þe noble mane,
Encontrede with the sowdane,
The Chefe Sowdane callede of Damas.
His trayste aIle in his mere was
Therefore, als þe boke vs tellis,
The sowdane hange his cropour full ofbellys,
His mere whenyed, hys beIlys gan rynge
And a fawcheoun in hande he bare,
For he thoghte þat he wolde thare
Slaa Kyng Richerde with tresoun
When þat his horse knelys downn,
Als a colte þat wolden sowke.
And he was waITe of that powke,
His eres with waxe were stopped faste,
And þe fente in the syde,
And gaffe þe sowdane a dynt of dede
Righte in his schelde, full verrament,
þat hade payntted in it a serpent.
With the spere þat Kyng Richerde helde,
He bare hym thorowe into the felde,
Nane of his armours ther myghte laste;
For brydill and paytrelle alle tobraste.
And mawgrethe his hede he garte
Backwards ouer his meres crowppe,
His fete towarde the firmament.

And perfore was Kyng Richerd no3te agaste.
He strykes þe fente in the syde,
And gaffe þe sowdane a dynt of dede
Righte in his schelde, full verrament,
þat hade payntted in it a serpent.
With the spere þat Kyng Richerde helde,
He bare hym thorowe into the felde,
Nane of his armours ther myghte laste;
For brydill and paytrelle alle tobraste.
And mawgrethe his hede he garte
Backwards ouer his meres crowppe,
His fete towarde the firmament.
Byhynde hym Kyng Richerd his spere oute hent,
And lete hym lygge appone the grene.
And sythen strykes the fende with spowITes kene,
And in the name of the Holy Goste,
He dryues into the haythen oste.
And also sone als he was commen,
Oneane he brake their chiltrone;
For alle þat euer þe hym stode,
Horse and man to the erthe 3ode,
3aa! A twenty fote one ayther syde.
And whome \( \text{pat he ouertoke in that tyde} \)
\( \text{Of lyfe ne was there warande nane.} \)
Thorowte theym he made his horse to gane,
\( \text{whoever / at that time} \)
\( \text{There was no guarantee of life} \)
\( \text{Through / go} \)
\( \text{drove} \)
5885
\( \text{Als bees swarnes abowte the hyves} \)
The Cristyn men in aftir hym dryue,
And helmys \( \text{pay brake & braynes owte gan welle,} \)
And many Sara\( \text{3enes doun \( \text{pay felle.} \) \( \text{broke helmets / brains gushed out} \) \( \text{A / more / counted} \) \( \text{dead} \) \( \text{knew for certain} \) \( \text{the Christian had the upper hand} \) \( \text{grew bold / took} \) \( \text{shook} \) \) \)
And thi cursede goddis aIls. \\
all your cursed gods
Knyng Richerde dryves aftire full faste, \\
chased
The sowdane was full sore agaste, \\
forest
5935 Bot a grete wode the sowdane sees, \\
At once / he turned
And thedir too full faste he flyes, \\
a heathen
Bot Knyng Richerde myght noghte in for his tree. \\
cut him open
Oneane his horse thane torned hee \\
10
And mett with ane haythyn kynge.
Bot a grete wode the sowdane sees,

5940 He toke pe axe owte of the rynge, \\
cut him open
And hitt pe kynge appon the creste, \\
forest
And clafe hym doun into the breste.
And anothir he hitt appon the schelde, \\
That helme and hede flewe in the felde.

5945 A seuen he slewe of haythyn kynges, \\
truth
To tell pe sothe in alle thynges.
In this storye reghte, als I fynde,
3aa! Ferre maa than ane hundrethe thowsande \\
Ah! / Far more
Of tome sadills abowe 3ode
Every / so wished could ride them
5950 Of the false laye, by the rode.
false law [i.e. the S.] / by the cross
Gud stedis rane with grete pryde, \\
steeds
Ilke man þat walde myghte þam ryde.
The batelle lastede till it was nyghte;
When þay were alle slayne dounrighte –
5955 þe Saraþenes þat þay myghte ouertake –
made
Grete joye thane gane the Cristyn make.
þay knelde and thanked God of heuen,
And wirchipped hym faste & his names seuen, \\
knelt
For a fayrere batelle was neuer 3itt wonn,

5960 Sene þat þis werlde was firste bygun.
Since
This was appon Sayne Jhones daye, \\
On both / slain
At Midsomer, als I 30we saye,
number
One bathe þe parties weren folkes yslewe;
Bot the nombire of the Cristyn lawe
5965 þat laye dede there in the felde –
On both / slain
To God þay gane their saulits yelde –
One hundred
Ware slayne there ane hundrethe & thre. \\
souls yielded
Bot of the Saraþenes ware slayne gretter plente:
many more
Thre hundrethe thowsande & 3itt maa, trewly.
even more
5970 And loo slyke grace God vs sent and Saynt Marye, \\
behold such
The Cristyn þan to the cite gan gane, \\
went
And of golde and siluer and precyous stane \\
found plenty
þay fande ynoghe, withoutwyn fayle, \\
[And] food / supplies
Mete and drynke and othir vetayle. \\
in the morning / rose
5975 And at morne, when þat þe kynge rase, \\
hear mass / at once / went
To here messe anone he gase, \\
came
And the Saraþenes byfore hym come, \\
And asked of hym Cristyndome.
to be baptized

10 But Richard may not enter [the forest] because of his log [i.e. the one tied crosswise to his horse's neck].
And there was cristenyde, alls I fynde,  
Maa thane ane hundrethe thowsande.  
And kirkes garte he make of Cristyn lawe,  
And alle their Mawmetts he garte doun drawe.  
And alle thase that wolde noghte cristenyde become,  
He garte swythe sla thaym, alle and some,  
And departede alle their tresoure  
Amanges Cristyn men with honour,  
Bot[h] erIe and barownn, knyghte & knafe  
Hadde als mekill als ãy wolde haue.  
And there they soiournede fourtene nyghte,  
I ne will the gyffe of na lande,  
And one a daye they them dighte,  
Kyng Philip spake a worde of pryde  
And sayd: ‘Kyng Richerd, listyn to mee,  
Jherusalem ãy will haue it,’ he sayd then,  
‘Gaa forthe and wynn it with thi men.  
Myn offerande,’ quod Kyng Richerd, ‘lo it thare,  
And went forthe at Alle-Halowmesse.  
And Kyng Richerde pan one hym gan crye,  
And seyde he dide grete velanye  
To wende hame for any maladye,  
Owte of ãe landes of Surry  
Till slayne weren alle Goddes enemys.  
For lyfe or dede in any wyse,  
The Kyng of Fraunce wolde noȝte hym here,  
Bot passede forthe one this manere;  
And attiere their partynge thare, forsothe,  
Euermore forthe afterwarde were ãy wrothe.  
Kyng Richerde went than with his oste  
To Jaffe, withowtten any boste.  
The kynges pauelyoun, faire & fyne,
Was pighte doun in a gardyne.
And other lordes gun abowte hym sprede
6030
There pauelyouns in a full faire mede.
Kyng Richerde than with his men alle
Off the cite made the walle,
Dat neuer there was in þe Saraʒene lande
So strange a walle wroughte with mannes hande.

The castelle was stronge and riche,
In the werlde was nane it liche.
The kyng thane soiournede thare
Till Jaffe was made bothe lesse & mare
Sauely þat þay myghte gaa abowte

Many a mile withowtten dowte.
Kyling Richerd than to Chaloyn went
And fande the walles alle torent.
Mekill and faire was that cite,
And Kyng Richerd þeroffe hade pite,
And there he bisoughte his lordis alle
Of þat cite to make the walle.
And he wolde make the halfendele
By hymselfen, fynly and wele.
The gentills þan, euerilkeane,

Graunteðe his askynge sone oneane,
Saue the Duke of Ostrike,
For Kyng Richerd he thougte to beswyke.
Kyng Richerd ther faste gane trauayle
Abowte the makynge of þat ilke walle,

And swaa þay dide, bothe ane & othire:
The fadir, the sone, the eme, & þe brothire.
Some made þe mortere & some layd stane,
At þaire myghte euerilkan.
Euerilke a kyng and emperour

Stanes bare or ells mortere,
Saffe þe Duke, þer euyll mote hym spede.
He ne wolde nøyte helpe for nankys nede,
And one a daye, Kyng Richerde hym mett,
And full hendely he hym grett,

And preyede hym, for his curtasye,
Of the walle to maken his partye.
And he ansuerde one this manere:
‘My fadir was neuer masone ne carpentere,
And giff þour walles alle torschake,

I ne schall neuer helpe þam to make.’
Kyling Richerd thougte he spake grete errourre,
And wretched hym gretyly & chaunged coloure;
The duke agayne þe breste he smate
With his righte fote, God it wate,

Agayne a stane that he ouerthrew, 
Bot the duke rase agayne, full pale of hewe.
‘Now, fy,’ he sayd, ‘thou vile cowarde,
In helle be ðou hangede harde.
Gaa qwitly faste owte of oure oste,
Be the sydes of swette Jhesus,
Remove [yourself] completely from our army

[If]I find you still among us
three days from today
I shall be your death

curssyng hafe thou of the Holy Goste.
Be the sydes of swette Jhesus,
If I find you still among us
three days from today
I shall be your death

We trauelle wele alle bothe day & nyghte,
In werre, in wakyng, and in fyghte,
And thou ligges ay still, als a foule glotoun,
And rystes the in thi pauelyoun,
And drynkis wyne, gud and strange,
And slepis alle the nyghte lange.
Bot I sall take thi banere,
And caste it into the ryuere.
Thane harne went the duke full wrathe,
His lyfe to lose hym was full lathe,
Of this dispytte he was vnblythe,
And garte trusse his hernays also swythe,
And sware by Jhesu in Trynytee,
Mighte he euer his tyme see,
He solde one Kyng Richerde hym so wreke
pat alle the werlde thereoffe scholde speke.
And he helde hym alle to trewe forwarde,
In helle therefore be he hangede harde.
For thurgh his tresoun & his trecherye,
And thurgh the wattyng of his spye,
He dide Kyng Richerde grete schame,
Pat sythen tomed alle Ynglande vnto grame.
Bot a littill langere & he hade myghte
Haffe lyffede, by God almyghte,
Ouer kyng and duke and emperoure,
He hade bene lorde and conqueroure;
Alle Cristyndom and eke paynym
Solde hafe bene holden hally of hym.
The Duke of Ostriche pan hied hym faste
Awaye with his men in haste,
And with hym the Duke of Burgoyne,
The folke of Fraunce, & þe Erle of Bolyne.
And the kyng garte brekyn his banere,
And caste it into a ryuere,
And cryed one hym with voyce stepe:
‘Hame ðou schrewe, ðou cowarde, ðou schepe!
And come no mare, in any wiese,
Neuere aftire in Goddes seruyce.’
Kyng Richerde lefte than with his Ynglys,
Toscanys, Gascoynes & Lumbardes ywysse,
Scottismen, Irys folkes, & folke of Bretayne,
Of Geene, of Norweye, & also of Spayne,
And made þe walles daye and nyghte,

Then / went home / angry
He was most reluctant to lose his life
humiliation / upset
set about immediately packing up his equipment
swore
Should he ever see the chance
would avenge himself on KR

he kept that pledge
May he be hanged in hell
through
ambush
then turned / sorrow
For had [Richard] lived a little longer

would have been
Christendom / also heathen lands
Would have ruled completely
hurried

broke [the duke’s] banner
shouted at / loud voice
[Go] home / rogue / sheep
no more / in any manner

remained
Tuscans, Gascons
Irishmen / Brittany
Genoa
Till that they were bothe strange & wighte.
And when he hade with grete payne
Made the walles of Chalayne,
Alle his oste with hym he tase
And wente hym for the a grete pase.
Be firste nyghte, in the name of Marye,
He laye in a townn pat highte Femaly.

And at morne þay gan þam arme wele,
Bathe in iveryn and in stele,
And by the maryn forthe þay went
To Albarye, a castelle gent,
Þat was a castelle of heythynes,
Full of store & of grete reches,
Bathe of iveryn and of len,
Whete and hauere, pese & been.
Kynge Richerde it wanne & soiourned thare
Thre wekes alle pleyner,
And sent spyes by alle wayes,
For to aspye alle the countreyes,
Bathe of ferre and also nere,
Into dyuerse londis ser,
And to alle contres tythynges to spere.

Bote thane of a castelle Kynge Richerd herde,
Wele alle togedir how that it ferde,
And alle was it full of Sarayenes
Pat euermore were Jhesus whethirwynes.

And Kynge Richerde went thedir in haste –
Þe Sarayenes alle he thoghte to agaste –
And so he went in his journeye,
And come thedir one Sayne James daye
For to byssege the royaBe castell Daroun,
And to wynne the castelle & the townn.

Bot the castelle was made of slyke stone
Þat þay dowttede assawttes neuer one,
And abowte the castelle was a dyke,
Þay hade neuer sene nane slyke.
And the Sarayenes cried one þaire langage:

'þee Cristyn dogges with euyll rage,
Bot þe the sonere nowe wendis home,
Here thane haue þee fechide þour dome.'
Bot when that Kynge Richerde herde þat crye,
He swere his athe by Seynt Marye

Þat these Sarayenes scholde hanged alle,
Or slyke a chaunces þam solde byfalle.
Þe Cristyn gane to assayle, & þay gane defende,
And full many quarells to þam þay sende.
Alle that daye and alle that nyghte,

Pay and the Cristyn helde the fyghte.
Bot the Cristyn sawe þat þay myȝte noȝte spede,
And Kyng Richerd toke þan ane othir rede.
Kyling Richerd bad thane alls his Ynglys
To take grete trees and rysse one alle wiese,
followed another strategy
ordered / Englishmen
branches of all sizes

And fill with theym the dykes of Daroun
To take the castelle and the townn.
And two grete engynes for þe nones
Kyling Richerd garte caste in grete stones.
By watire þan were þay broghte oneane;
[w/] two siege machines
threw in
they [i.e. the machines] / at once
the one [machine]
a hill
tower
the other was called
own catapult
small tower
got the branches bound

The Mategriffone was the tane,
And it was sett appon ane hille
To breke doun bothe toure & castelle.
And þe toþer highte a Robynett,
Appon ane othir hill it was sett,
filled up the ditch

And Kyng Richerdes owenn emangonelle,
Þat was sett to anothire turelle.
And þe kyng garte the rysse bynd faste,
And into the dike þam to caste,
And alle playne the dyke þay made.

Bot the Sarazenes þeroft no drede þay hade,
For wylde fyre anone one þam þay garte caste
Þat alle þe rysse were one fyre & þat in haste,
And brynte þam euyn vnto the grounde
Greek fire / cast on them
wood
burned
soon / little while
were under the walls
Of that / great
catapults / continually
broke

Righte sone within a littill stounde.

Bot the Sarazenes þeroft no drede þay hade,
For wylde fyre anone one þam þay garte caste

And by than myghte oure Cristyn folkes wele
Entre into Daroun Castelle.
the world
assaulted
broke into [it] on his steed
high tower
others / outside

And Kyng Richerd toke þan ane othir rede.
Kyling Richerd bad thane alls his Ynglys
To take grete trees and rysse one alle wiese,
And many a stede stekyde alswaa;
Robert Thorname with his fawchoun,
He gane crake þer full many a crownd.
6230
And amanges þam come Kyng Richard
And to feghte manly he nothynge sparede,
And many ane þer in littill stownnde,
With his axe he broghte to grounde,
And alle one fote ther gan he fighte.
6235
Bot when the Sara3enes sawe þat sygte
How plentenuous was his payement,
Nane ne dorste thane habyden his dynte.
Thane went they qwic, withowttyn fable,
And slewe there stedis in the stabill –
6240
Þat myghte any knyghte at nedis.
Whete and floure, flesche & lardire,
Alle togedir they sett one fyre;
For þay hade leuere for to [do] soo
6245
Þan that theire vetayle schold helpe þaire foo.
And by the sauoire Kyng Richerd aspiede,
And thane slewe he doun one euery syde
Alle thase that he myghte ouertake,
For none amendis ne myghte þay make.
6250
The kyng assayled thane the heghe toure
With wighte men of full grete valoure.
Þe Sara3enes in the toure one ferre
Sawe þat þaire endyng daye was nere,
And wilde fire sone owte þay keste
6255
Amanges oure Cristyn full haste.
Þe fire flewe abowte so smarte
Þat full many a Cristyn it hurte.
And þay myghte suffre no langere [that] thrawe,
And oneane þay bigane þam to withdwre
6260
A mile fra Daroun Castelle.
And þay gane caste one brade many a fire barell
And sone þeraftir, in littill space,
And thorowe the helpe of Goddis grace,
The castelle was in fire aIle
6265
Fra the heghe toure to þe vttirmaste walle.
The howses brynte & alle the hurdas,
And full grete smoke ywys there rase.
And the Sara3enes in the heghe toure
Weren in so grete doloure,
6270
For in hete þay weryn almoste alle loste,
& in smoke nere dede, by the Holy Goste.
Bot thane they cried at a worde:
‘Now, mercy Kyng Richerd, lefe lorde,
Late vs gange owte of this toure,
6275
And þou sall hafe full grete tresoure.
Late vs gange with oure lyfe,
And a thousands pownde we sail be gyffe.'

‘Nay!’ quod Kyng Richerd, ‘be Jhesu Criste,
Bi his dede and his vprise,

3e schall neuer come adoun
Till payed be youre rawnsoun.
And 3itt ther aftire, at my will,
Whethir I will 3owe saue or spill.’

‘Alle thi will,’ quod they, ‘will we do,
To hange or bryne, or ells to slee.
Oure lyfe and dede nowe alle ligges in the.’
And Kyng Richerde granted þam thane,
And comande ilke a Cristyn man:

‘Late the Sarayenes be with sorowe
Vntill the sonn rase one the morowe.’
When this was done, als I fynde,
Kynge Richerde garte þam faste bynde
Appon a playne before the walle.

Pe kyng than garte men lede þam alle,
And he þat payed a thousands pownde,
Of his hede he myghte be sounde.
And þat wolde so mekill gyffe,
Till a certayne daye, he lete þam lyfe.

And he that payede na rawnsoun,
Alle quyte his hede was smyttyn of sonne;
And thus Kyng Richerd wanne Daroun,
There God giffe vs alle his benysoun,
And oures also when it comes ther too.

Aftere the wynnyng of Daroun,
Kynge Richerd went to anothir toun,
To Gaytris, with full faire men3ee
For to ensege that ilke cite.

Bot herkenys nowe how he it wanne,
And heris nowe of a doughty mane,
A full stowtte werryoure & in fighte full qwaynte
þat neuer 3itt was funden faynt.
He þat was lorde of Gaytris

Was a man of mekill pris,
And full felle to fighte agaynes his faa.
Bot that ilke tym was he noghte saa,
Bot ther he dide a faire qwayntise,
And herkenys nowe one what kyns wyse.

Emyddis the townn appon a stage,
He garte make a marbill ymage,
And crowned hym als a kyng,
And charregd his folkes, alde & ynge,
To no Cristyn, noþer hye ne lawe,
they had no other lord [i.e. god]

they had no other lord [i.e. god]

Except for that image in that town

Swiftly attacked

without delay

gates

slay the people

in truth

entered / peace

where

no lord

[i.e. Saracen idols]

looked at

high / in such a place of importance

eagerly

I marvel

am able / through the power

a spear break / into pieces

you would be amazed

And / believe in

yes

ordered to make a spear ready

stout timber / great strength

strong [enough]

ordered to tie

three / rods of strong iron

then

[And] had there placed a sharp circlet
to [be] seen

Favel / brought

saddle

made a charge

struck the image

head flew from

stood beneath

all the others said

became Christian

Young / old / low / noble
I paire alde lorde þey gan forthe brynge,
And taulde hym alle of theire assent.
And Kyng Richmond loughe with gud entent
And gaffe hym that cite with wyn to welde,
Þe þat he leude to Adams elde.

And to Chaloyne thane he wente agayne,
Forthe by the see the sothe to seyne,
And there he soiournede a seuen nyghte
With full many a noble & doughty knyghte.
Þey pighte thare pauelyouns, faire & wele,
To ensegge thare a stronge castelle –
Þat was a littill there besyde hym
And bot thre mile fra Castelle Pilgryme –
With full thikke walles & tourres of pryde;
The castelle was callede Lefruyde.

The Sarazenesees þat þe kyng was commen,
And full wele þey wende to hafe bene nommen,
Þaire herttis weren alle ille bystedde,
And alle by nyghte awaye they fledd.
The yates thay vnschotte full þerne,
And stale alle forthe at a preue posterne;
For, for alle wyde medilerde,
Þey dorste noghte byde Kyng Richmond.
And this noble castelle, verrament,
Kyng Richmond [wanne] withowtten dynt.

And thethyn he went to Gebelyn,
Þat þe Ospetulers wonned in
And also the Templers, bothe in fere,
And had kepide that cite many a þere.
Bot Sir Bawdewyne was slayne with [...] 

Saladyn, þe sowdane, toke þe townn into his hande –
And in that cite was Seynt Anne borne,
Of whayme oure lady Saynt Marye was of borne –
And there they pighte the kynges pauelyoun
And with strengthe þey toke the townn,

And slewe the Sarazenesees, by Sayne Jame,
Þat walde noghte lefe in Cristis name.
Bot ther than come þe firste ill tydnyge
To Richerd Couere de Lyone, oure kynge,
Þat of Ynglande his brothir John –
Þat was alle þe fendys prey, flesche & bone –
Thorowe helpe of the barouns samen
þe trewe chaunchelere he hade taken
And wolde nedis, by maistry of han de,
Be crownned Kyng of alle Ynglande

At the Paske tyde, þat felle neste aftirwarde.
Bot thane answerde Kyng Richmond:
‘What deuyll!’ he sayde, ‘whatt es this?
Tellis John of me no mare prys?

old / brought forth old / brought forth
agreement laughed in good faith
laughed in good faith with pleasure / to reign
Though he might live to be as old as Adam
Ascalon

to tell the truth

Ascalon

stayed brave
pitched besiege

only three miles from
splendid towers

Castle of the Figs

learned / had come
anticipated / seized

hearts / sorely afflicted

sneaked away through a secret passage
for anything in the world
they dared not face
in truth
won without a blow

then / to thelin

in which the [Knights] Hospitaller lived
together

had kept / years

Of whom / was born
pitched

convert to Christianity
bad news

Lionheart

devil’s own
Through / the barons
loyal chancellor / seized
would be / by force

At Easter time

Does John not respect me more than this?
He wensys þat I will noghte lyfe lange,
And therefore he wolde do me wrange.
And he trowed þat I were one lyfe,
I trowe he wolde note with me stryfe.
And giff John hym corowmn at Paske tyde,
Whare will he thane me habye?

There es naa no kynge in Cristyantee,
Certis, þat schalle his waraunte bee.
Bot I may neuer trowe, for nakyn nede,
þat my brothir John walde do me this dede.'
And therefore Kyng Richerd alle pis thyng
6435 In herte ne helde it bot fore a lesynge.
And oneane thane fra Gebelyne he went,
To Bethanye, a castelle gent,
And slewe there full many ane haythyn man,
And the noble cite he wanne.
6440 And there come othir messangerse
þat tolde Kyng Richerde, stowte & ferse,
þat Jhon his brothir wolde bere
þe crown at Pasche, he bigane to swere.
Kyng Richerde was lathe withdrawe his hande
Till he hadde wonne the Holy Lande,
And slayne the sowdane with a swerde,
And vengede Jhesu Cristis dede.
And he bythoghte hym, by þe Holy Goste,
6445 Till he hadde wonne the Holy Lande,
And slayne the sowdane with a swerde,
And vengede Jhesu Cristis dede.
And he bythoghte hym, by þe Holy Goste,
6450 And with a pryue men3ee
Into Ynglande wolde hee,
And pese that were some onenone,
Bytwene hym and his brothir John.
And come agayne in alle þe hastynge,
6455 Till fulfill alle his begynnynge. ...
... 'For hym will I noghte thedir wende,
Bot some I sall them socoure sende.'
And to hym he called his eme, I saye,
A baroun of grete vertue, par ma faye,
6460 þat highte Sir Henry of Champayne,
And badde hym wende to Jaffe agayne.
'Take,' he seid, 'with the thyn oste,
And loke þat thou felle the Sarayenes boste.'
'As armes!' than Sir Henry lete crye
6465 þat alle his oste scholden hye,
And with Sir Henry swythe forthe wende
Jaffe to helpe, and to defende
Owte of the handis of Sir Saladyn,
6470 At morme arely went forthe Sir Henry,
And with hym barouns & knyghttis full hardy:
Gascoyns, Spayneolfes, France men & Lumbardes,
At the biddyng of Kyng Richerde,
Pay went forthe ay be the maryn,
Alweys by the reuere of Chalyn.
And Sir Saladyne oste at þe laste þay gane see
How that it laye spred ese ouer the contre.
And when þat þe Duke Henry it wiste,
He fledde agayne, by Jhesu Criste.
And ther he ne made no taryinge
Till þat he come to Richerde, oure kyng, 
And seid: ‘Sir, sothely I ne sawe neuer, jitt ne herde
In alle this wyde medillerthe,
Halfendele þe peple of men
Saladyne hase, by down & dene.
Ne no tounge, ’he sayde, ‘ne may þam telle;
I trowe þay bene comen owte of helle.’
Bot than ansuerde the Kyng Richerd:
‘Now, fy a debylls, þou vile cowarde!
Ne salle I neuer, by God aboffe,
Trayste one Franche manes luffe.
þe Cristyn þat in Jaffe ware
May wele whitte þe alle þayr care,
And thorowe thy defaute I ame drede,
My full gud barouns are alle euyll bystadde.
Bot nowe, for þe luffe of Saynt Marye,
Schowse forthe en[k]erli my galy
And stow faste gose & schippes 30w bothe one & othir,12
The fadir, the sone, the eme & the brothire,
And alle that euer nowe luffes mee,
Goose to schipe now faste, pur charytee.’
And alle þat wapynye bere myghte,
To schippe þay went anone righte,
And hiede agayne to Jaffe warde
With the doughty Kyng Richerde.

Bot nowe herkyns my tale for it es sothe,
þat I swere 30w þerto nane othe,
I will 30w nenên romaunce now none
Of Partymp ne of Ypomedone,
Of Alexander ne of Charlemayne,
Of Kyng Arthoure ne of Sir Gawayne,
Ne jitt of Sir Launcelott de Lake,
Of Beues ne of Sir Gy ne of Errake,
Nor of Vly nor jitt of Sir Octouyane,
Nor jitt of Sir Ectore, the strange man,
Of Jasone ne jitt of Ercules,
Of Eneas ne jitt of Achilles.

12 And quickly provision it, and board everyone.
For I ne wene neuer, par ma faye,
pat in the tyme of their daye
do not believe, by my faith

Did any of them so many doughty dede,
Nor ȝitt so strange batell in þaire nede
brave deeds

Als Kyng Richerde dide, saunce fayle,
Att Jaffe in this ilke bataylle
without doubt

With his axe and his spere;
very battle

His saule now assoyle oure lorde so dere.
soul / absolve of sins / dear lord

It was byfore the mydnyghte,
The mone and the sternnes schonne full bryghte,
moon / stars

Kyng Richerde to Jaffe come

Att Jaffe in this ilke bataylle

With his galays alle and some.
galleys

He loked towards the castelle
Bot he herde naper pype ne belle,
neither pipe nor bell

Bot thane they drewe þam nere vtnto þe lande,

Gyff þat þay myghte oughte vndirstande,
So that they would be able to

Bot ne couthe righte aspye
[they] could not find out

Be nokyns sounde of mynstralsye,
By no sound of music

þat qwike man in the castelle ware.
If there was any man alive in

And þefore fulle bycome Kyng Richerd of care:
full of grief

‘Alas!,’ he seyd, ‘that I was borne.
abandoned

My gud barouns I hafe forlome,
I learn that / is slain
Slayne I wote es Sir Robert of Leycestre –
most noble official

þat was my full curtaine maystir –

Ilke ane here of his hede was worthe a knyghte!

And Sir Robert Thomame, þat was so wighte,

And Sir Bertrame and Sir Piparde,

That in batelle were wyse & harde.
bold

And many of my balde barouns,
in all my domains

Þe beste of alle my regyouns,
Were / in the morning

Was slayne ȝisterdaye at morowe.
live longer

How may I lyfe langare, for sorowe?
I take revenge on

Till that I be worsen one Saladyn,
I will lose my joy

Now certis I mon my joye alle tyne.’
fumed / all the time

And thus fure Kyng Richerde aye
it was dawn

Till it was þe spryngynge of the daye,
herald / came to the battlement

þat a wayte come till a kimelle,
played / surprisingly loud

And pipede a note woundirly schille.
only once

He had pipide bot a sythe
many hearts very happy

When he made many ane herte full blythe.
He [i.e. the herald] / the ships

He lokede doun and sawe the galys,
fleet

Kyng Richerde and alle his nauys,

The schippis & the galys full wele he knewe,
merry

And a mery note thane full sone he blewe
Rise up! Now, come on!

And pypped: ‘Suse! Ore suse, ore suse!
has come to [rescue] us

For Kyng Richerde es comen till vs.’
And / heard

Bot when þat þe Cristyn herden this,
In [their] hearts / certainly

In hertis þay weren full glade ywys;
To the walls / at once

Erles, barouns, sqwyers & knyghte,

Vnto þe walles þay went anone righte,
& when pay sawe Kyng Richard, þair lorde, 
Pay welcomed hym all at one worde:
6570 ‘Welcome, lorde!’ þay seid, ‘in Goddis name.
Oure sorowe nowe es turned alle to gamen.’
Bot when Kyng Richerde wistyn this,
He was neuer halfe so fayne ywys,
And ‘as armes!’ he cryed, ‘dose makis 30w 3are!’
6575 To þam þat with hym comen ware.
‘We ne hafe lyfe bot one, 
Selle we it dere bothe blode and bone
For to clayme ours heritage.
Slaa we thies paynmys of euyl rage,
And who þat dowttes of þaire manacce,
Hafe he neuer sighte of Goddes face.
Take me myn axe in myn hande – 
Þat was wroghte in mery Ynglande –
It sall þis daye do God seruyce,
6580 Þat many a Sarasyne sall aagryse,
For þaire harmys no mare I ne dowte
Þan þofe it were a pilche-cloute,
And thurgh the grace of God in Trinyte,
Þis daye men sall the sothe see.’
6585 A
nd al thir firste one lande he lepe,
And of a do3ane made ane hepe,
And he bygane to crye with voyce clere:
‘Where es that haythynpe comen
6590 Þat was commen to Jaffe strete?
With myn axe I schall mete
þat þay sall cry owte one Mahownn, I saye,
Slyke wassalle I salle þam drynke, be my faye.’
And with þat he layde one on euerilk syde dounri3te
And slewe the Sarasynes full faste, I sowl plighte.
6595 Bot the Sarasynes fled faste & were nere mate,
With grete cry owte at the 3ate,
And in theire hertis þay mad myche sorowe,
Þat alle þe gatis were þam to narowe.
To the wallys þay rane of the townn,
6600 Þat was wroghte in mery Ynglande –
And ilkane cryed one this manere,
Als that þe schalle now aftir here:
‘Malcan starram naire arbn
Lor fermor toir femom.’
& þis es to saye one Ynglys:
‘The Ynglys deuyll comen is,
Gif he vs mete we mon dy þis day;
6605 And perfore flye we hethyn owte of his waye.’
And owte of þe townn þay fled ilkane
That therin ne lefte neuer ane,
Bot a foure hundrethe or a fyve
Pay Kyng Richerd garte lose paire lyfe,
6620 And at the 3atis he sett porters,
And stabled wele vp his dexters.
Bot than the kynge leped appon Fawelle,
Wele yarmede in yryn and stele.
His folkes were armede, alle in fere
6625 \(\text{pat owte of the galys comen were.}\)
And full many come owte of the castelle
\(\text{pat weren yarmede full fynly} \& \text{wele.}\)

\(\text{K} \) yng Richerd rade forthe at pe 3ate,
And two haythyn kynes mett hym \(\text{perate,}\)
6630 \(\text{With sixty thowsande Sarayenes ferse,}\)
\(\text{With armours brighte} \& \text{brode baners.}\)
And the tone he hitt appon the hede,
That at the girdille-[stede] it \(\text{withstode.}\)
And the tothir one the helme he hitt
6635 That vnto the sadill he hym slytt.
And his knyghtis and his barouns
Faughte als \(\text{pay hade bene wode lyouns,}\)
And slewe those Sarayenes also swythe,
Als girse fallys fro the sythe.
6640 \(\text{And the Sarayenes sees [n]o better wane,}\)
\(\text{And fled awaye euerilkane}\)
Vnto the sowdans grete oste,
\(\text{pat fytetene mile laye fra \(\text{pat coste.}\)}\)
Twa hundreth thowsande, \(\text{par ma fay,}\)
6645 \(\text{Of Sarayenes kene was slayne \(\text{pat daye;}\)}\)
\(\text{For alle thiere armours ferde als waxe}\)
\(\text{Agaynes gud Kyng Richerde axe.}\)
\(\text{Many a Sarayyne} \& \text{gret lordynge}\)
\(\text{3alde theym thare to Richerd oure kynge.}\)
6650 \(\text{He toke \(\text{pam into ostage \(\text{pat daye,}\)}\)}\)
\(\text{\(\text{per was of lordis a thowsande prisoners, I dare say.}\)}\)
\(\text{And the chase lastede right full lange,}\)
Till \(\text{pat it was \(\text{pe tyme of euensange.}\)}\)
And Kyng Richerde rade affir till it was ny3te
6655 \(\text{And slewe all \(\text{pat euer} \) he ouertake myghte,}\)
\(\text{\(\text{pe nombir couthe no man acownnte,}\)}\)
\(\text{How many \(\text{pat it wolde to amounhte.}\)}\)
\(\text{Kyng Richerde lefte withowtten \(\text{pe townn,}\)}\)
\(\text{And pighte reghte ther his pauelyoun.}\)
6660 \(\text{And that nyghte, with mylde hert,}\)
\(\text{He comforthed his barouns smarte.}\)
\(\text{Als \(\text{3e schalle here, at one \(\text{pe morowe,}\)}\)
\(\text{Pat was a daye of mekill sorowe,}\)
\(\text{And ane of the strangeste batells, I vndirstande,}\)
6665 \(\text{Pat euer 3itt was herde of in any lande.}\)

\(\text{no one remained in town}\)
\(\text{Except for four or five hundred} \)
\(\text{KR killed them}\)
\(\text{placed porters at the gates}\)
\(\text{noble horses}\)
\(\text{And / leapt on}\)
\(\text{Well armed / iron}\)
\(\text{together}\)
\(\text{As [they] came out of the galleys} \)
\(\text{came} \)
\(\text{were}\)
\(\text{rode / gate} \)
\(\text{heathen / there}\)
\(\text{fierce}\)
\(\text{the one}\)
\(\text{waist it [i.e. the sword]} \)
\(\text{the other / helmet}\)
\(\text{he split him open to the saddle}\)
\(\text{as / mad lions}\)
\(\text{swiftly}\)
\(\text{grass falls from the scythe}\)
\(\text{no better choice than [to run away]}\)
\(\text{everyone}\)
\(\text{Towards / host}\)
\(\text{lay fifteen miles from}\)
\(\text{Two / certainly}\)
\(\text{were slain}\)
\(\text{behaved like wax}\)
\(\text{good KR's}\)
\(\text{Surrendered}\)
\(\text{took them as hostages}\)
\(\text{long}\)
\(\text{evensong}\)
\(\text{rode}\)
\(\text{No man could count the number}\)
\(\text{would amount}\)
\(\text{outside}\)
\(\text{pitched / pavilion}\)
\(\text{heart}\)
\(\text{barons' pain}\)
\(\text{hear / the following day}\)
\(\text{much}\)
\(\text{one of the fiercest battles}\)
And 3e, þat will of þat batelle here,
Herkenys nowe and 3e schalle lere,
And for the luf of God allemyghte,
Fill þe coppe oneane righte.  

A

Als Kyng Richerde ssatte at his sopere,
And comforthede his barouns with myld chere,
And gladded þam with gud wyne,
Reght swa come in messangers fro Saladyn
One twa moyles, & douȝ hay lighte.

6675
In silke and fyne golde ware þay dighte,
And aythere toke othere by the hande
And sayde: 'Kyng Richerde, vnderstande,
Sir Saladyne, oure riche kynge,
Sendis the now this tythyng:

6680
Giff þat þou be so doughty a knyghte
That thou will duelle here alle nyghte
Till tommorne þat it daye ware,
Of alle þi blyssse þou solde be bare.
For thy lyfe and thy barouns

6685
He will noghte gyffe two botouns,
He will the take with strengthe of handis,
For he hase alle þe folke of many landis,
Of Egere and Gregeys & of Turky,
Maroyns full many & of Araby,
Baschells also and Nubyens,
Full egere knyghtis & of grete defense,
Egipcyenes and also of Babylonyne,
Of Ynde and also of Askaloyne,
Of Orygenes & also of Capadosy,
Of Sydones & also of Barbary
Two hundrethe thowsande knghthis, sance faile,
And fvyetene thowsande of gud amyralle,
That the grownde may vnnethes þam bere
þe folkes þat comes the to dere.
Bot by oure rede do nowe reghte wele,
Torne agayne to Jaffe Castelle
For in safewarde þerin þou may bee,
Till þou hafe sene oure men3ee.

6705
Torne agayne into Ynglande,
And thus thou may fra thy dede flee
Hame to thi contree by the see.’
Bot in ire Kyng Richerd toke a lafe,
þe croste in his hande he rafe,
And sayde vnre that Sarayyne:
Now God gyff the euyll to tyme,
And for þoure conselle and þoure tythyng,
God gyff þow bothe euyll endyngye,
3ow and Saladyn þoure lorde,
The deuyll hange 3ow with a corde!
Gase nowe and says to Saladyne
Pat in the dispite of Mawhoun & Appolyne,
I sall habyde here till the tyme
Pat it be tomorne pryme.

Giff I were bot myselfe allane,
I dorste habyde thaym euerilkane.
And gyffe that dogge will come to me,
My polaxe sall his bane bee.
Gase now swythe & says hym thus,

And the malyson 3e hafe of swete Jhesus.'
The messangers thane forthe gan wende,
And tolde the sowdane worde & ende.
And Sir Saladyn hym hugely marvellde þan,
And sayd hym semyde none erthly mane:

'Hae a deuyll or ells a saynt;
For he was neuer gitt fonden faynte.'
And oneane he made his ordynaunce,
Bot therof ne roghte Kyng Richerd by no chaunce,
And went hym one to Jaffe warde

And þerof ne toke Kyng Richerd no kepe,
Bot in his logg[ing] full faste he slepe
Vntill it was agaynes þe dawnynge.
Per herde thane a full schille cryinge;
Thorowe Goddis grace ane angelle of heuen
Pat seyd vnto hym, with mylde steuen:
'Ryse vp, Richerd!' quod he, & lepe appon Fawelle,
And torne agayne to Jaffe Castelle

For þou hafe slepide lange ynoghe.
For þou salle fynde bothe harde & toughe
Or þou come to that cite,
þou sall be full wrathe & alle thi men3ee,
And affir the batelle þou do thyn ese,
With Saladyne the byhoues to make pese.
Take trewse and late thy baronage
Go to þe flome to do their pilgremage,
To Na3arethe and to Bedleme,
To Caluareye and to Jerusalem,
And late theym wende hame affir thane,
And com thou hame with thi schipmen,
For þou hafe many famen, I vndirstande,
Bothe here and in thyne awenn lande.
Now, vp gud Sir Kyght! & wele mote þou spede;
For þou ne hade neuer gitt more nede.’

And vp stirte Kyng Richerd, & þat in hy,
And full smarly he bygane for to cry:
‘Suse a suyse, ore suyse or suse!
For vs hase warnde oure Kynge Jhesus,
He blewe, he cryede: ‘As armes whatt!’

Go / say [i.e. the Saracen idols]
shall stay tomorrow at 6:00 am
[dare face them everyone
if / dog
pole-axe shall be his doom
Go fast / tell him
Or / curse went forth
sultan / from start to end
[Richard] did not seem human
either a devil or a saint
never yet found cowardly
at once / command
And / [Saladin] took no heed
went towards
KR took no heed
And / lodgings / slept fast
dawn
loud cry
Through / an angel
mild voice
said / leap / Favel
return
have slept long enough
Before you come / town
very angry / your retinue
you can take your rest
you should make peace
a truce / let your
the river [Jordan]
Bethlehem
Calvary
let them go home afterwards
you come home / your shipmen
you have / enemies
your own
[get] up good / you must
you have never yet had
rushed up / in haste

Come on! Now, rise up!
Jesus has warned us
Arm yourselves!
And jitt almsaste he come to late,
For why Sir Saladyne & alle his oste
Bytwene þam & Jaffe was, by þe Holy Goste,
For thedir he hade tane the waye,
Kynge Richerde to hafe taken þat daye.

6765

6770

6775

6780

6785

6790

6795

6800

6805

6810

almost / had come too late
host

to that place / had taken
to defeat KR on that day
great worry

And / spurred
made his spear cut

heathen army

neither horse nor man
cut / bodies
felled their

Whoever / seen
would never have forgotten him
fly about him as thickly
As bees do from hives

rode

they were eager to fight on that day
they beat

long swords / sharp spears
struck vigorously

them outright

they took little notice

As many of them lay in a heap

As those [who were] not slaughtered
seen / battle

bog / outside
good mile wide / be assured

despite
drove / bog

might see heathen men
Lie / swamp
wished to

[i.e. They were killed by KR]

almost slain

The sultan, had he not been rescued

heathen

two hundred thousand

found

a little while

returned

vigour

There was no man

[13] [Because] he could not arrange his host in a hurry.
Pat with his awn handis so many haythyn men gun quelle.

Bot in the moste perelle of alle the batelle,

Kygng Richerde saughe, withowtten fayle,

His eme, Sir Henry of Champayne,

Fellid downn of his horse appon þe playne,

And the Saracenys hade hym vndir hande

To slaþ hym full faste abowte þay fande.

For it hade bene his daye laste,

Had noghte Kyng Richerde comyn in haste.

Kygng Richerdyd cryed thane with lowde voyce:

‘Helpe now, lord God and the holy croyce,

Þis ilke daye myn eme þou schelde

Fra the dede of those wild dogs

Now lordynge,’ he sayd, ‘one faste lays one,

And I myselfe sall profe to smyte,

Gyffe that my polaxe will oughte byte.’

And ther men myghte see hym, with myȝte & mayne,

Stryke the Saracenys thurghe blode & brayne;

For appon that playne that Greene was

Full many a saule was sent to Sathanas.

For by granynge of the more

Mighte men see þer Kyng Richerd fure.

And þe ErIe of Leycestre, gud Sir Robert,

And þe ErIe of Richemonde & gud Kyng Richerde:

For ther als thies knyghtis forthe rade,

Þay made a waye & that full brade

That þre waynes myghte one mete,

And ther full many a Saracenys lefte þay swete.

And at þe laste, with full grete payne,

Kygng Richerde wane to þe ErIe of Champayne

And sett hym agayne appone a stede

Þat was righte gude at ilke a nede.

And bad hym habyte ther by his syde,

And noghte ferre fra hym ryde.

Bot a messangere come there swythe one a reke

And sayde þat with Kyng Richerd wolde he speke,

And sayde hym: ‘Sir, pour charitee,

Torne agayne to Jaffe citee,

For couerde þay are bothe mounte & playne.

For Kyng Alexander ne Charlemayne,

Ne ledde neuer ȝitt swylyke a rowte,
Als alle the cite es nowe withelayde abowte.
And the 3atis are one fyre ysett

fully besieged

Of alle gud Jaffe chastelelet,
Thy men ne may noper in ne owte,
And þerfore of the thay hafe grete dowte,
And þe ne may noghte to the 3atis ryde,
In the felde whate awnntir 3ow so betyde.

Your men may [get] neither in nor out
they fear what might happen to you
If you cannot reach the gates
what fate [may] happen to you

And also I warne 3ow, withowtten fayle,
Full mekill enpayrede es 3our bataile,
And the Patriarke he taken es,
And Sir John the Nele es slayne ywysse,
Sir Willyam of Arsour & Sir Gerarde,
Sir Bertrame Braundis, þe gud Lumbarde,
Alle thies are slayne and many mare.'
And Kyng Richerde hym bythoghte there,
And cried anone: 'Tomes arere,
Everyone were

Full many Sara3enes byfore thaym was sett,
With axes grym and speres full grete,
With fawcheons and with maces bathe.
And gud Kyng Richerde þay made full wrathe,
For þay slewe Fawelle vndir hym,
both broad swords and maces
furious

And than was Kyng Richerd bothe wrothe & grym,
And to that Sara3ene full nere he drewe, killed Favel
And with his axe he hitt hym sao
pat his hede fell euen in two.

He [who] had stabbed Favel
in return

Bot thane one fote he was & one he layde,
Full many vndir his hande ther dyede,
[Richard] was on foot / struck blows

Alle þat he with his axe ouerreche myghte,
Bathe horse & man he slewe donrighte,
block might have reached

And gane crye appon Kyng Richerde
And seide: ‘3elde the, þou thefe, þou false cowarde!
Or we sall sla the in this place.’
Surrender / you thief
Or you lies,’ quod Kyng Richerd, ‘by Goddes grace.’
You lie / said
And with his axe he hitt hym soo
head

Þat his hede fell euen in two.
‘Of the,’ quod Kyng Richerd, ‘now am I sekire.’
[Richard] was on foot / struck blows
His brothir com with þat righte in þat bekire,
head
Appon a stede with grete raundoun,
came / battle
And thoghte to bere Kyng Richerd doun,
at a great speed

And gaff hym a grete wounde thurgh pe arme
did KR much harm
Þat dide Kyng Richerd full mekill harme;
gave / through his arm
For one the sper head was venyme.
on the spear head there was poison
And Kyng Richerd stowtely smate to hym,
pat horse & man bothe felle to pe grounde:

6915 "Lykke there," quod Kyng Richerd, "thou heythyn hounde,
For sall thou neuer telle Saladyne
Pat thou made me my lyfe to tyne."
Bot thame fyve dukes of haythunes
Come one with their ostes, withowtten lese,

6920 And bysett abowte Richerde oure kynge,
And thoghte to pe dede scholde hym brynge,
Bot thase fyve dukesNONE slewe he slawe,
And fyve hundrethe aftir thane,

6925 Of many a stronge heythyn mane.
And at the laste, cose it were late,
Kyng Richerde wanne to Jaffe 3ate.
Pan were the Cristyn therin full sekire
bat pay solde ouercome full wele bat grete bekire.

6930 The Erle of Leycestre, Sir Robert,
Broughte oure kyng his stede Lyarde,
And Kyng Richerde into the sadilliepe.
Bot thame fledde pe Sara3enes awaye lyke schepe,
And Kyng Richerd rade aftir to it was nyghte,

6935 And slewe alle bat he ouertake myghte;
For thare laye slayne in playne & den
Ten hundrethe thowsande of haythyn men.
That nyghte Kyng Richerd, withowtten lese,
Wanne into the cite of Jafes,

6940 And thanked Jhesu, the Kyng of Glorye,
Of that ilke faire victorie;
For sen this werlde was firste bygun
A fayrere batelle was neuer nane 3itt wonn.
Bot thane at pe morne, he sent Sir Robert Sabuelle –

6945 For he couthe doo a message welle –
And bade theym sey vnto the sowdane
bat hymselfe agaynes fyve hundreth men,
In the felde batayle wolde holde & fyghte
For to maytene Goddis ryghte:

6950 'And gyff I it wyn, to hafe this lande
Euermare in Cristyn mens hande,
And gyff þe Sarayenes slaa me maye,
Owte of pis lande to wende for aye.
And giffe he ne will here of what þe saye,
Sayse hym bat thre thre, thre monethes, & thre dayes
I will take trewse, withowtten delaye,
To wende hame & come agayne þan.'
Pe messangerse went with this tythynges to þe sowdane
And tolde the sowdayne bothe worde & ende.

6955 Bot he ne wolde assent to þe batelle for none ende.
V hundred agaynes one, saunche sayle,
þou may say hym tomore & he will come,
The trewse sall be redyly nommen.  
And so one þe nexte [daye] þay bande forwarde

considered
made a treaty  f.163va

6965 Of trewse vnto Kyng Richerde
For thre þere, thane went þay to þe flome
Alle that fra Acris wolden come.
And than afterwarde alle those thre þere,
Cristyn men bothe ferre and nere

three years / river [Jordan]
All those from Acre that wished to
Christian men / far and near
Travelled to

6970 3ode the wayes to Jerusalem,
To the holy sepulcre & to Bedelem,
And to alle othir pilgremage,
Withowtten harme or any damage.
And Kyng Richerde þat was so doughty of hande

three years / river [Jordan]
All those from Acre that wished to
Christian men / far and near
Travelled to
[places of] pilgrimage
strong of hand

6975 Torned hamwarde into Ynglande.
Kyngle Richerde regned here
Noghte bot allanly ten þere,
Sythyn was slayne with schotte, alias,
At the Castelle Galyarde there he was.

Returned home to
reigned
only
Afterwards [he] / with a [crossbow] bolt
Gaillard

6980 And thus endys þe romaunc of Richerdoure kynge,
And God grante vs alle gude endynge.  Amen
Explicit the Romance of Kyng Richerd þe Conqueroure
Explanatory Notes

In the following notes, references are explained and intertextual connections noted; where relevant, bibliographical references are supplied so that the reader can explore the subject further. For practical reasons, bibliographical references are at a minimum; primary sources are referred to by their abbreviations, and secondary sources are noted as: ‘Author (year of publication), (page number)’. Proverbs included in B. J. Whiting’s Proverbs, Sentences and Proverbial Phrases from English Writings before 1500 are noted by Whiting’s reference number.

3

*Kyng Richerde*: Richard the Lionheart (1157-1199), Count of Poitou, Duke of Aquitaine; Duke of Normandy and King of England from 1189 to his death. He took part in the Third Crusade and, through his participation in the siege of Acre, the battle of Arsuf and the defence of Jaffa, he consolidated his reputation as a warrior and crusader. See Gillingham 1994, and 1999.

11-19

There are two lists of (romance) heroes in *Richard*; cf. note 6509. See vol. 1 ‘History versus Fiction’, pp. 137-43.

*Duke Rowlande & Sir Olyuere*: Heroes of the French epic *La Chanson de Roland* and the Middle English *Roland and Ottuel* and the *Siege of Milan*.

*duggepere*: The twelve peers (OF doze (vr. duze, duzze) pers) or paladins of Charlemagne, of whom Roland and Oliver are the most famous.

*Alexandere*: Alexander the Great (356-323 BC), regarded as one of the greatest military strategists and tacticians who ever lived. The first version of the *Romance of Alexander*, which brings together numerous legends attributed to the emperor, dates from the third century AD but, during late Antiquity and the Middle Ages, the text underwent many expansions and re-writings both in Latin and in the vernacular; there are extant five major Alexander romances in Middle English.

*Sir Gawayne*: One of the knights of the Round Table, Sir Gawain is King Arthur’s nephew, known as the Sun of Chivalry and hero of a number of romances, e.g. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, *The Marriage of Sir Gawain*, *The Wedding of Sir Gawain and Dame Ragnelle*, and *The Awntyrs off Arthure*.

*Kyng Arthure*: King Arthur appears in Nennius’ work *Historia Britonum* (c. 830) as a ‘leader of battles’. According to the tenth-century *Annales Cambriæ*, Arthur was killed at the Battle of Camlann in 537. Geoffrey of Monmouth’s *Historia Regum Britanniae*, however, constitutes the first major popularization
of the Arthurian legend. Geoffrey's work influenced Robert Wace and Layamon, who expanded the Arthurian tales. By the time of Richard's composition, there were numerous Arthurian romances in circulation, mostly in French.

**Sir Charlemayne:** Charlemagne (742–814), King of the Franks (768–814) was crowned Emperor of the Romans by Pope Leo III on Christmas Day, 800. He appears in *La Chanson de Roland* and the Middle English romances *The Sultan of Babylon, Roland and Owel, the Siege of Milan,* and the *Tale of Ralph the Collier,* among others.

**Bischope Turpyn:** Turpin, Archbishop of Reims, features in the legends of Charlemagne, in *La Chanson de Roland,* and in the ‘Charlemagne’ romances in Middle English, e.g. *The Siege of Milan.*

**Sir Ogere Danays:** Ogier le Danois appears in *La Chanson de Roland* and in the ‘Charlemagne’ romances in Middle English.

**Troye:** The siege of the city of Troy, famously narrated by Homer in *The Iliad.* The principal sources of the medieval Troy legend, however, were (apart from Virgil) the works of two putative eyewitnesses of the siege: Dares Phrygias (mentioned by Homer, *Iliad V*) and Dictys Cretensis. Dares was believed to have written an account of the destruction of Troy, whose Latin translation, *Daretis Phrygii de excidio Troiae Historia,* was then ascribed to Cornelius Nepos. This text was considered the most authoritative source because it was believed to derive from an eyewitness account. But Guido delle Colonne's *Historia Destructionis Troiae* (1287), thought to be a condensed version of the *Roman de Troie* by Benoît de Sainte-Maure, was the most widely translated version of the Troy story throughout Europe, and it is the source for Lydgate's Middle English *Troy Book,* completed in 1420; see Simpson, 397-423.

**Ectoure:** Hector, son of Priam, is the Trojan hero killed by Achilles at the end of the Trojan war; and Achilles is the Greek hero of the Trojan war.

*In Fraunce bokes thies rymmes men wrote:* A reference to romances on the siege of Troy, Charlemagne, and King Arthur; for discussion of why this line is unlikely to refer to a French source for *Richard* is a translation, see vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 96-8.


**Kyng Henry:** Historically, Henry II (1133-1189) married Eleanor of Aquitaine in 1152, two years before being crowned King of England. Henry and Eleanor had eight children, five sons and three daughters.

**Saynt Thomas of Cantirbery:** Thomas Becket (c1120-1170) was at first a close friend of Henry II; the king made Thomas chancellor and, in 1161, Archbishop
of Canterbury. But the relationship between Becket and Henry deteriorated and on 29 December 1170, four knights, believing the king wanted Becket killed, confronted and murdered the archbishop at Canterbury Cathedral. Becket was made a saint in 1173 and his shrine at Canterbury became an important site of pilgrimage.

schipe: The description of this ship brings to mind a medieval cog, or hulk, but it could also be a galley which, unlike cogs, was a sailing vessel that could also be propelled by oars (see note 4896, and plates 22, 23, and 24); for discussion of the marvellous ship, see vol. 1, ‘Sources’, p. 122 ff. For specific terminology about ships, see plate 25.

Als white als any mornnes mylke: Whiting M548; similes abound in the romance; comparisons typically draw on nature, war, and atmospheric phenomena. Cf., for example, ll. 76, 138, 306, 385, 553, 868, 1032, 1529, 2210, 2296, 2542, 2568, 4920, 5189, 5207, 5521, 6639, and 6782.

als pe sonne dose thorowe pe glasse: Whiting S881; this image has religious overtones. It is reminiscent of similar expressions used in Middle English Marian lyrics, of the sunbeam entering Mary’s chamber through a window in Annunciation iconography, and of the sun coming through a church window. See vol. 1, ‘Sources’ pp. 125-6, and note 68.

als whitte als floure: Whiting F308; see also note 68.

Westmynstere refers to the royal abbey and palace of Westminster. Two of the largest buildings in medieval England, Westminster Hall and Westminster Abbey represent the royal power of Henry as English monarch. Historically, the shift of the royal capital from Winchester to Westminster began under Edward the Confessor, but it was Henry II who completed it with his governmental reforms; see Rosser, 16ff.

Corbarynge of Antioche: Cassodoren’s father’s name evokes the Saracen leader in La Chanson de Antioche, Corbarans (Akbari, 201). Antioche is probably one of the sources for the episode of Richard’s mother; see vol. 1, ‘Sources’, p. 126.

my qwene: Henry II’s queen was Eleanor of Aquitaine; Cassodoren is a fictional creation of the romancer, even though he may have drawn on several sources. See vol. 1, ‘Sources’, pp. 121 ff, and note 37.

lauacyoun: The elevation of the host. In c. 1208, a Paris synod regulated the procedure for the consecration of the host: priests were to keep the host concealed before their breast until they had said the words Hoc est corpus meum (This is my body), and then to raise it aloft so that it could be seen by all. In time, this procedure came to be known as the Elevation, which, in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, would come to represent the most dramatic – and dramatised – moment of the mass (Barnwell; Kennedy 1944; Thurston).

sacrament: The Eucharist; see note 189, and vol. 1, ‘Sources’ p. 121 ff.
two sonnes and a mayden: See note 37.

Jhon: Richard’s brother, John (1166-1216) known as Lackland, became King of England when Richard died in 1199.

Topyas: In the romance, a sister of Richard. Like her mother, Cassodorene, Topyas is a creation of the romancer and not based on any of Richard I’s historical sisters.

bell bygan to rynge ... sacrynge: The elevation of the host emphasised the sacrifice (sacrynge) performed at the altar and, at the climax, a bell was rung – the ‘sacring bell’ – to attract the attention of those in the nave (Barnwell, 132-33); see vol. 1, ‘Sources’ p. 121ff.

And owte at be kirke rofe: The episode of the demon-mother brings to mind the mirabilia recorded in the twelfth and early thirteenth centuries by Gerald of Wales (Opera VIII, Bk 3, Ch. 27) and Gervase of Tilbury (Otia, Bk 3, Ch. 57); see vol. 1 ‘Sources’, p. 127 ff.

Neuer more gaffe he hym noo women vntoo: In light of the life of the historical Henry II, this could be read as an ironic comment from the romancer; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 5423, 6803.

Bot ordeyned sane aftir his endynge / His sane Richerdefor to be kynge: These lines are almost historical; although Richard succeeded his father after his death in 1189, Henry was far from pleased with the prospect (Gillingham 1999, 76-100).

joustinge: In the early twelfth century individual encounters between two knights often preceded the charge of two teams, the tournament proper. Later the contact was better regulated, the area of fighting was defined, and a judge or judges viewed the fighting and awarded prizes (Keen, 86-7, 201-11). In this episode, the romancer does not mention any judges but the area of fighting is well defined.

awnterows knyght: The knight-errant frequently appears in romances. The meaning of ‘errant’ (wandering or roving) suggests that the knight would wander the land in search of adventures to prove himself in jousts and tournaments.

Richard jousts in disguise, in three different armours, a common romance motif; see, for example, Chrétien de Troyes’s Cligés, Hue de Rotelande’s Ipomedon, the prose Lancelot and, Sir Gowther. Cf. notes 271, 754, 1647, 5357, and see vol. 1, ‘Sources’, p. 117.

And one his creste a rauen there stode: The crest was a decoration, a distinguishing mark, or a heraldic device which was fixed to the top of the helmet; some historical examples were as elaborate as any described in the romance; see l. 337, and plates 6.1 and 6.2.
gorgere: A gorget is the piece of plate armour worn to protect the front of the neck; see also l. 323, and plate 9.

als rede als blode: Whiting B358; see note 68.

besygewe: A besagew is a small round shield laced to the mail at the shoulder to defend the armpit; see plate 8.

pesane: A mantle made either of plate or mail, attached or not to the helmet and extending over the neck and upper breast; see plate 12.

helme: The helm, known also as ‘barrel’ or ‘pot’ helmet, was generally made from several smaller sheets of steel, completely covering the face. From manuscript accounts, it appears that they were often painted in the colours of the knight, and might also have been washed in gold or adorned with brass, bronze or latten decor, generally in the form of a cross under the occularia and down the front of the face. During the thirteenth century, the ‘great helm’ was developed; it provided better face protection by means of a face mask – pierced with ventilation and sight holes – which was attached to an iron skull cap (DeVries, 70-1); see plates 5, 6.1 and 6.2.

deuyll: Cf. II. 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.

thorghe plate: Single plates of metal armour were used from the late thirteenth century onwards (and fully developed in the fourteenth century) to protect joints and shins; these plates were worn over a full mail shirt. By the end of the fourteenth century, larger and complete plates of armour had been developed; see plate 3.

Thorghe actoun: The acton or aketon was an arming coat, a stuffed jacket or jerkin developed in the thirteenth century. Initially, it was of quilted cotton and worn under the mail; in later times, it was made of leather or other material and plated with mail; see plate 13.

For mail and plate armour, see DeVries, especially chapters three and four.

hawberke ne hawbergoun: The hawberke was a mail shirt, generally long enough to protect the thighs. The hawbergoun was a shorter version of the hawberke, usually laced down the sides. See plates 10 and 11.

als whitte als mylke: Whiting M545; see note 68.

And appon his schelde a crosse of rede: This image of a red cross on a white ground is proleptic of Richard’s taking the cross later in the romance.

To wynne the crosse: The relic of the ‘true cross’, on which it was believed Jesus had died, had been captured by Saladin at the battle of Hattin (1187).

Sir Fuk Doly: A fictional character probably based on a Lincolnshire knight of
the House of D'Oyly, who is not recorded as participating in the Third, or any other, Crusade. In the romance, he is one of the two knights (the other being Thomas of Multon) who accompany Richard to the Holy Land, first as spies and later as crusaders; for the connection between Doly and Multon and the importance of these characters, see vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', p. 103 ff.

bacenett: The basinet was a type of helmet introduced around 1300, consisting of a conical bowl often raised to a peak on the top of the head and which protected the ears, cheek and neck. Open-faced, it was usually fitted with a movable visor (DeVries & Smith, 291-2; France, 17); see plates 4 and 7.

Sir Thomas of Multon: A fictional character probably based on a historical Lincolnshire knight of the same name who is not recorded as participating in any crusade. See note 397.

deyll: Cf. ll. 370, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.

als white als snawe: Whiting S437; see note 68.

with pyke, scrippe ... slawyne: The staff, satchel and cloak by which a pilgrim would be recognised; see plate 35.

palmers: Pilgrims to the Holy Land would bring back a palm branch in token of their visit, which is why they were known as palmers, as opposed to other pilgrims going to Santiago de Compostella, Rome, Canterbury, or other shrines.

The fictional itinerary followed by Richard, Multon and Doly is composed of a number of place names that a medieval audience, who would not necessarily have travelled themselves, would have identified as belonging to a journey to the Holy Land. Some of the places are geographically accurate, some of them function as proleptic of the future conquests of Richard, Multon and Doly, and others may have been included for rhyming purposes.

Macedoyn: The geographical region of Macedonia, unlike the previously mentioned places, cannot have been in the itinerary from Acre to Babylon. In the Middle Ages, Babylon denoted either Egypt or Cairo and not the city-state of ancient Mesopotamia (present-day Al Hillah, Iraq). The region of Macedonia, therefore, cannot be between Acre and Cairo, unless the romancer refers to the territories conquered by Alexander the Great. See Map 8.

Nynyve: Niniveh lay on the eastern bank of the Tigris in ancient Assyria, across the river from the modern-day city of Mosul, Iraq (see map 7). The city is frequently mentioned in the Old Testament (e.g. Genesis 10: 11; Jonas 1: 2 ff; 4 Kings 19: 36; Tobias 1: 11; Judith 1: 5; Isaias 37: 37; Nahum 1: 1 ff) and, in the New Testament, in Matthew 12: 41, and Luke 11: 32. Therefore, the audience would have recognized it. Historically, Niniveh lost importance after 627 AD and was eventually abandoned and replaced by Mosul. There is no record that the site was ever visited by pilgrims to the Holy Land. However, as the name is repeated several times in the romance, it might represent a Middle Eastern place name the geographical location of which is now obscure.
Zebedy, Sudayn Turry ... Castelle Orgoylyus: These names anticipate the fortifications which Doly, Richard and Multon will successfully besiege in the course of the crusade (cf. notes 4004, 4094, 4357); see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 153 ff.

Zebedy: This place has not been identified; see note 4357. It might refer to Ibelin, a fortification situated between Jaffa and Ascalon, built in 1141 to protect the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem from the attacks from Egypt. It is worth noting, however, that the romancer refers elsewhere to Ibelin, calling it Gebelyn (I. 6400). See map 5.

Sudayn Turry: This place has not been identified, but it might be a fusion of the names of the cities of Sidon and Tyre (called Tyros – Τύρος – in Greek); see map 6.

Castelle Orgoylyus: The ‘Proud Castle’ is fictional and has romance overtones. It appears, for example, in the continuations of Li Conte del Graal, in Wolfram von Eschenbach’s Parsifal and, later, in Malory’s Le Morte Darthur.

Cite of Appayrynous: This placename has not been identified. It might refer to the Greek port of Pireus, but it would not be geographically correct, as this city should be in the Middle East.

Saffrane: The castle called Safita (Chastel Blanc) was built by the Knights Templar in the County of Tripoli during the crusades; as it was placed at the summit of a hill, it provided a commanding view of the surrounding areas. It was one of the most important fortifications for the crusaders (Kennedy 1994, 138-41); see map 6.

The Knights Templar (the Poor Fellow-Soldiers of Christ and of the Temple of Solomon), one of the medieval military orders, were skilled warrior monks. The order, founded in 1129, played an important military role during the crusades. They were recognised by the emblematic white mantles with a red cross, worn over their armour. The order was suppressed in 1312 by Pope Clement V; for a detailed study of the order, see Barber 1994.

Taboreth: This probably refers to the city of Tiberias, also called Tabarie (Loomis 1916, 457). Archane has not been identified. Apart from providing geographical references, however, these two places anticipate the future French humiliation (cf. notes 3886, 3940); map 5. See also vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 153 ff.

The episode of the imprisonment of Richard, Multon and Doly before the crusade is, of course, fictional, and so are the ‘kyng of Alemayn’, Moderd, his son Ardryn (ll. 741, 751, 851, 859), and his daughter Margery (I. 881 ff, 1007ff). Historically, Richard was taken prisoner by Leopold of Austria after the crusade, on his return to England. The romancer has probably invented this episode to provide Richard with his sobriquet, Lionheart, early in the story.
at pryme: Because of the canonical hour of prime (usually at 6:00 am) and the service of prime, held at that hour, the term 'prime' came to signify the first division of the day, from 6:00 to 9:00 am and/or the hour of sunrise.

bofete: The exchange of hand blows, or buffets, is a traditional romance motif; see, for example, the late Middle English romance, *The Turke and Sir Gawain*; cf. notes 271, 272, 1647, 5357. See vol.1. 'Sources', p. 117.

Saynt Martyne: Saint Martin (c. 316-c. 397) was bishop of Tours and his shrine was an important stop for pilgrims on their way to Santiago de Compostela. The Abbey of Saint-Martin at Tours was one of the most prominent and influential establishments in medieval France; Alcuin was one of its abbots. The son of a Roman senior officer, Martin joined a cavalry at the age of fifteen. According to legend, one very cold day, Martin met a half-naked beggar; moved with compassion, he divided his fur coat into two and gave half to the poor man. That night he dreamt of Jesus wearing the half-coat, which confirmed him in his piety. He served in the military for another two years until he determined that his faith prohibited him from fighting; instead, he volunteered to go unarmed to the front of the troops. Martin is the patron saint of soldiers and horses.

And waxid his handis agayne pe fire: To the best of my knowledge, the practice of applying a coat of wax on one's hands before a fight has not been recorded. One can speculate, however, that a coat of wax would help Richard; thus protected, his hand would not feel the impact of the blow, as wax has the effect of blocking sensitivity. See Textual Note 778-80.

dede als any stone: Whiting S759; see note 68.

Seynte Semyoun: Simeon, or Simon, the Zealot appears to have been a cousin of Jesus. He was chosen to be the second Bishop of Jerusalem when his brother, James the Lesser, was martyred. According to the *Legenda Aurea*, Simon evangelized Egypt and then joined Jude in Persia, where both were martyred. Simon's usual attribute is the saw, since his body was said to have been sawed to pieces. He is the patron saint of tanners.

Men schall no kyng to pe dede do: The ban against regicide has to be understood within the concept of the 'divine rights of kings', whereby monarchs were supposed to have divine authority to rule. An attack on a king was perceived as both a direct challenge to the king’s divine right and to God’s will.

hange nor 3it to drawe: From the times of Henry III and throughout the Middle Ages, the punishment for treason was to be hanged, drawn and quartered. The condemned person would be first dragged at a horse's tail, or on a hurdle, to the place of execution (drawn, *OED*). He would then be hanged by the neck for a short time, disembowelled and emasculated. Finally, he would be beheaded and the rest of his body divided in four parts (quartered). This type of punishment was extensively used by Edward I in his campaigns in Wales and
Scotland; for example, William Wallace was hanged, drawn and quartered in 1305. See Neilson 129-31.

1024-1025 *agaynes be lawe of lande ... to wenden withowtyn lefe*: Note the use of irony; Richard has killed the king's son but refuses to leave without saying goodbye. On medieval etiquette and discussion of whether the outsider's rejection of hospitality injured the host's reputation, see Kerr, 322-35.

1032 *als whitte als mornes mylke*: Whiting M548; see note 68.

1100 *With erles & barouns full prowde in presse*: Cf. l. 3448.

1103 *And wette be hert righte in be salte*: The romancer uses the verb *weten* (to moisten or dampen sth.), but this verb does not describe his action, as the heart is moist and not the salt. In fact, Richard is seasoning the lion's heart. Cf. note 3160.

1108 *deuyl*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.

1114 *Quere de Lyoun*: Ambroise (l. 2306, trans., 65) is the first to call Richard 'quor de lion' (Lionheart); see note 2202.

1136 *Matyns*: The canonical hour of matins, the first canonical hour (usually comprising matins and lauds), recited at midnight or in the early morning. *Bellys rynges*: See note 221-222.

1261-1330 The romancer here interrupts the chronological sequence of events to give an account of the fall of Jerusalem and the call for the Third Crusade, which have taken place before Richard's parliament; cf. note l. 2693.

1263 *Surry* approximately designates the area of today's Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Israel and Palestine; see map 6.


1277 *Duke of Melone* refers to Guy of Lusignan (c. 1150-1194). Paris, 362 n. 6, suggests that *Melone* could be a corruption of 'Guion'. Guy was married to Sybilla, sister of the King of Jerusalem, Baldwin IV. After Baldwin had died in 1186, Guy became King-Consort of Jerusalem. However, Guy could only be crowned after defeating his rival, Count Raymond of Tripoli. After the battle of Hattin (1187), Saladin released Guy, who proceeded to lay siege to Acre; see also note 1281. *Surry londe* designates the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, see map 6.

1279 *the sowdane*: Saladin (c. 1138-1193), Sultan of Egypt and Syria. After having conquered Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia, he turned his attention to the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem. He defeated the Christian army in the battle of Hattin in 1187, and captured the relic of the true cross; he then captured Jerusalem. He expelled the Christians from the Holy Land, except for the city port of Tyre, which in turn was used as a base for the siege of Acre; see Bahāʾ al-Din, and
Lyons & Jackson.
Note that, like the contemporary Arab historian Bahā’ al-Din, the romancer
refers to Saladin as ‘the’ sowdan (sultan), while the title of sultan is applied to
other leaders without the definite article; cf. note 3349.

Erle Reynawde: Raynald of Chatillion (c. 1125-1189) had taken part in the
Second Crusade and stayed in the Holy Land afterwards; by marriage, he
became lord of the castle of Kerak and Montreal (map 6). In 1177, he helped
King Baldwin IV of Jerusalem defeat Saladin at the battle of Montgisard. In
1181, despite the truce between Baldwin and Saladin, Raynald plundered the
caravans that passed by Kerak. War broke out between Saladin and the Latin
Kingdom of Jerusalem in 1182. Raynald launched ships to Mecca and Medina
but, after attacking a number of villages along the coast of the Red Sea, his
pirates were captured and beheaded. In 1186 Raynald allied with Baldwin IV’s
sister Sibylla and her husband Guy of Lusignan against Count Raymond and,
consequently, Guy was crowned King of Jerusalem. In 1187, after the
Christian’s defeat at the battle of Hattin, Guy and Raynald were brought to
Saladin’s tent and Saladin himself beheaded Raynald. Guy was spared; first, he
was sent to Damascus but then was allowed to go free (Gabrieli, 114-125); see
also note 1277.

Erle Rosse: Raymond III, Count of Tripoli (1140-1187) is also blamed in the
chronicles (IP, Bk 1 Ch. 5, 31-2; Ambroise, l. 2443 ff, trans., 67-8); see notes
1277, 1281.

Markes Feraunt: Conrad, Marquis of Montferrat (d. 1192), was the ruler and
defender of Tyre. IP (Bk 1 Ch. 7, 36) at first regards him as ‘an extraordinary
man of action and hard working in all his endeavours’ but later blames him for
the famine in the crusader camp (Bk 1 Ch. 66-77, 126-34). Richard of Devizes
(Cronicon, 47) calls him ‘son of a serpent’ (vir leviannigena); and the
contemporary Arab historian Bahā’al-Din (125) holds him responsible for the
crusade because of a letter the marquis sent to the Archbishop of Canterbury
asking for help, and later reports the secret negotiations between Montferrat
and Saladin (see note 3243).

Kyng Bawdewyne sone: Guy of Lusignan was, in fact, brother-in-law of
Baldwin IV, King of Jerusalem.

Whare he bycome ne in what kythe: Historically, on his release after the battle
of Hattin, Guy of Lusignan proceeds to lay siege to Acre; see notes 1277 and
1281.

holy pope ... highte Vrbane: According to legend, Pope Urban III (d. 1187) died
of grief at news of the Christian defeat at the Battle of Hattin (1187). So he
could not have called for the crusade. The romancer may have confused his
name with Pope Urban II, who called for the First Crusade in 1098. The call for
the Third Crusade was the first act of Urban III’s successor, Pope Gregory VIII,
in his papal bull Audita tremendi (1087). However, Gregory did not live to see
the crusade; he died of fever that same year.
The Kyng of Fraunce: Philip Augustus (1165-1223) was King of France from 1180 until his death. A member of the House of Capet, Philip was one of the most successful medieval French kings in expanding the royal territories and the influence of the monarchy. Philip went on the Third Crusade with Richard. At first, the French and English crusaders travelled together but the armies split at Lyon, as Richard went by sea, and Philip took the overland route through the Alps to Genoa (see map 3). The French and English armies were reunited in Messina, where they wintered together. On 30 March 1191 the French set sail for the Holy Land, and arrived on 20 May. Philip then marched up to Acre, but he abandoned the crusade after the city surrendered on 12 July. Philip decided to return to France to settle an issue of succession in Flanders, a decision that displeased Richard – and the chroniclers (see note 3804). Philip’s decision to return to France may have been encouraged by the realization that with Richard campaigning in the Holy Land, English possessions in northern France (Normandy) would be vulnerable (see Gillingham 1999, 163-6). When Richard returned home after the crusade, war broke out between England and France over possession of English-controlled territories in present-day France.

Pe Duke of Bloyse: Theobald, Count of Blois, was the seneschal of France and died only three months after arriving in Acre (IP, Bk 1 Ch. 42, 98; Gesta, 2, 148).

Pe Duke of Burgoyne: Hugh III, Duke of Burgundy, accompanied Philip Augustus on crusade. After Philip abandoned the crusade, Hugh stayed as commander of the remainder of the French army in the Holy Land, and as representative of the king of France (IP, Bk 2 Ch. 6, 148; Bk 3 Ch. 21-23, 224-6).

Pe Duke of Ostryche: Leopold V, Duke of Austria, arrived in the Holy Land in the spring of 1191. After the deaths of Frederick Barbarossa and his son, Frederick of Swabia, Leopold took command of the German army; see notes 721, 1425, 6050, 6091.

Pe Duke of Sesoyne: It is not clear who is referred to; it may be Henry, Duke of Saxony (1129-1195), known as Henry the Lion. Henry, however, did not take part in the crusade because, when Frederick Barbarossa took the cross, he banned Henry from going to the Holy Land.

Emperor of Almayne: Frederick I, Barbarossa (1122-1190), Holy Roman Emperor took the cross in 1189 and died en route to the Holy Land while crossing the River Saleph in Cilicia, south-eastern Anatolia (IP Bk 1 Ch. 24 64-8; Pacaut); for the route followed by the German army, see map 3.

Pe Erle of Flaundres: Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, accompanied the king of France on crusade (IP, Bk 2 Ch. 6, 148) and died at Acre in June 1191 (IP, Bk 3 Ch. 6, 207; Chronica, 111).

Pe Erle of Colayne: No Earl (or Count) of Cologne took part in the Third Crusade, and this character remains unidentified; the name probably supplies a suitable rhyme-word.
Pe Erle of Artays: This character may refer to Robert of France, Count of Artois, who accompanied his brother Louis IX on the Seventh Crusade and died at the battle of Mansurah in 1250; for other examples of participants in the Seventh Crusade included in Richard, see notes 1824, 2191. See also vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, p. 98 ff.

Pe Erle of Bolayne: There is no record of this name in the chronicles; however, Loomis 1915, 527, notes that an Earl of Boloyne accompanies Richard in the early fourteenth-century French poem, Le Pas Saladin.

In harueste, aftir pe Natyuyte: The Feast of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary, 8 September. Here the romance resumes the narration of the primary sequence of Richard’s story after the analepsis informing the audience about the events that provoked the Third Crusade.

Jerusalem and the crosse es lorne: See notes 390 and 1279.

Cristyn kynges es hangede and drawe: The reading for kynges in C, knyjes, is more historically accurate as those who were killed in the wake of Hattin were Knights Templar and Hospitaller, while the King of Jerusalem was spared (IP Bk 1 Ch. 5, 34; Gabrieli, 123); see notes 1277, 1310.

apere Robynettt: The chronicles do not mention a siege machine of this name in connection with the Third Crusade; however, it is mentioned in connection with Edward I’s campaign in Scotland; see vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, p. 98 ff.

maister Alane Trenchemere: This name of appears in neither IP nor Ambroise, but it is mentioned in the same context by Robert Mannyng, who states that ‘Trenchemere’ was the name of Richard’s galley (Chronicle, 2, 1. 4209). An Alan Trenchmer is mentioned by Roger of Howden (Chronica, 206 and 235) but in a post-crusade context, when Richard is prisoner of Leopold of Austria.

Catelle, dromounde, or galaye: The catelle (catal) was a large, principal ship. The dromond (plate 24), originally developed in Byzantium, was a very large ship with rowers and a single sail used both in war and commerce. Large ships used by the Muslim navy (like the one described on l. 2480 ff) resembled the Byzantine dromonds (DeVries, 288-9).

The galley (plate 25) was propelled by oars and sails; it developed from the Byzantine dromonds and probably relied mainly on sail, but carried a large crew to man its oars. As well as rowing, the crew also defended the ship; for discussion of the use of galleys in medieval naval warfare, see DeVries, 295, 300. The romancer appears to have first-hand knowledge of ships, which is evident in his descriptions (cf. note 60) and in his care with specifying particular kinds of vessels (cf. notes 2093, 4896).

thurgheweote Almanye ... Moderde: The romancer connects this passage with the previous episode when the King of Almane imprisoned Richard (see note 721). Historically, however, Richard met the King of France at Vézelay, and
then set sail eastwards from Marseille; cf. l. 1435.

1446 *qwitt hym his mede:* Note the use of irony; speaking of the man who has imprisoned him and tried to get him killed, Richard says he will pay Moderde as he deserves; however, the word he uses is not 'villainy' but 'gift'. Cf. notes 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.

1450 *The Erchbishop Bawdwyns:* Baldwin of Exeter (c. 1125-1190), Archbishop of Canterbury since 1185, died at the siege of Acre in 1190.

1521 *Gumery:* It is not clear which town is referred to; it might be the medieval Gummeresbracht (present-day Gummersbach in North Rhine-Westphalia).

1529 *als whitte als milke:* Whiting M545; see note 68.

1557 *Marberett:* (vr. Marburette) This place name has not been identified; it might refer to Marburg, in Hesse, Germany.

1573 *Carpentrace* has not been identified. There is a town called Carpentras in the south of France, 23 km northeast of Avignon, situated almost half way between Vézelay and Marseille (Richard's historical route). Although a town in the south of France is an unlikely place for a king of Germany to hide, the possibility cannot be ruled out. Another candidate is the city of Kerpen, situated about 30 km southwest from Cologne. Kerpen castle was the birthplace of Otto von Kerpen (d. 1208), who was the second Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.

1580 *For the gose pat pay had dighte:* The romancer refers to the goose that Richard, Multon and Doly were eating when they were captured by the King of Germany's men (l. 657 ff). Allusions to previous or later episodes suggest that the romancer(s) endeavoured to give the romance coherence and cohesion.

1647 *Two riche rynges:* The gift of rich, magical, rings with protective powers is another traditional romance motif (see Bordman, 26-8); see for example, *Beues of Hampton*, l. 1469 ff; *King Horn*, l. 593 ff; and *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, l. 1817-20. Cf. notes 271, 272, 754, 5357.

1649 *Ynde:* A broad geographical term for much of southern Asia, often including part of China or islands to the south and southeast of Asia.

1665 *maister Robert of Leycestre:* Robert Fitzpernel, Earl of Leicester (d. 1204). He accompanied Richard on the crusade, and was invested with the earldom of Leicester in 1191, while the crusading forces were at Messina.

1667 *Robert of Thorname* (or Thornham) (d. 1211) was, according to *IP* (Bk 2, Ch. 27, 174), appointed by Richard to direct and watch over the fleet when they left Messina; see note 2107 below.

---

1 I thank Catherine Batt for pointing to Carpentras and its location.
1677  

*Greffoun* derogatorily refers to Greeks collectively or individually, or to any person of Greek origin; Sicily had been part of the Byzantine empire until the late eleventh century. Ambroise (l. 549, trans., 38), *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 12, 155), and Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 17) also call the people of Messina Griffons.

1687  

*a treson thought be Kyng of Fraunce*: For Philip’s treachery, see *Chronica*, 98.

1689-1697  

*Kyng Tanker ... of alle Poyle*: Historically, Tancred (1138-94) was King of Sicily (1189-1194), and his father, Roger III, was Duke of Apulia (1118-48). In the romance, Tancred is King of Apulia and his son, Roger, is King of Sicily. According to the chronicles, on arriving in Messina in 1190, Richard made two demands from Tancred (successor of William II to the throne of Sicily). First, Richard demanded that Tancred release his sister Joan, the widowed queen of William, imprisoned by Tancred in 1189, and second, that he restore her dowry and inheritance. In addition, Richard forced Tancred to fulfil the commitments that William had made to the crusade. Roger of Howden recorded the encounter between Richard and Tancred (*Chronica*, 97-8). When the French crusading army joined Richard in Sicily, the foreign military presence caused unrest among the populace of Messina, and they revolted. Richard responded by attacking and capturing the city. Once Messina had been looted and burned, Richard established his base there and stayed the winter. Although the French did not openly fight against the English, they did not condemn those who did (*Cronicon*, 19 ff; Ambroise, ll. 964-65, trans. 44). The romancer distorts the chronicles’ sequence of events in order to emphasise the French king’s treachery.

1720  

*Pys*: The readings of *C Rys* and *L Riis* appear to point to the city of Reggio in Calabria, which is in the south of Italy opposite Messina; see map 3.

1726  

*Saynte Lenarde*: Saint Leonard was venerated by the crusaders. Nothing certain is known of his history, as his earliest ‘Life’ was written in the eleventh century, six centuries after he is supposed to have lived. According to legend, Leonard belonged to a noble Frankish family of the time of King Clovis. Numerous miracles are attributed to him, above all the release of prisoners. At the end of the eleventh century, his name had already become renowned among the crusaders captured by the Saracens. He is generally represented holding chains in his hands; see Poncelet.

1752  

*letir*: See note 1687 above.

1776  

*Hospitalle*: The Order of the Hospital of St John of Jerusalem, the most important of all the military orders, both for the extent of its area and for its duration. At the time of the crusades, the order owned numerous buildings, several of them in Sicily; see Nicholson 2001.

1784  

*Ynglys tayllyardis*: According to Richard of Devizes, the people of Messina insulted the followers of Richard by calling them ‘Anglos’ and ‘caudatos’ (tailed) (*Cronicon*, 19) and the romance uses the insult in the same context. The insult may have originated in the tail attributed to Satan, or to demons, or
dogs, or the tail with which, according to St Augustine of Canterbury’s biographer Goscelin (c. 1100), the inhabitants of Rochester were punished for having mocked the saint (Randall, 34-5; M. Jones, 204).

1801-1812 *For with be Fraunce men & with the Griffoun ... lyes slayne in the towne:* Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 19) says that there was unrest among the people of Messina because of the foreign armies encamped there but, as they had made peace with the French, they sought revenge from Richard. The English were denied all trade and they were slain wherever they were found unarmed.

1824 *Sir Willyam Longspey:* No one of that name took part in the Third Crusade; the name most likely refers to William Longuespée II, who died fighting at the battle of Mansurah in the Seventh Crusade (Lloyd; and see vol. I, ‘Date of Composition’, p. 98 ff).

1827 *de Erle of Leycestre:* see note 1665.

*de Erle of Hertheforthe:* This reference might point to Henry de Bohun, first Earl of Hereford (1176-1220). Bohun was created Earl of Hereford by King John (1200) but his relations with the king deteriorated from 1212, which resulted in his being one of the twenty-five sureties of the Magna Carta in 1215. He died on pilgrimage to the Holy Land, but never took part in a crusade.

1830 *Bowmen, speremen, & alblasterers:* The infantry was composed of archers, men armed with spears, and crossbowmen. Bowmen had a prominent role throughout the Middle Ages, especially the longbow archers. From the twelfth century, however, the crossbow (a mechanical bow attached to a stock; the bow string was held in place ready to be released by a trigger mechanism) proved to be more powerful and accurate than the bow, although it took longer to load (DeVries, 33-44); see plates 14 and 15.

1838 *spryngalles:* Springalds were mechanical artillery devices, torsion-powered bow-like engines, with which it was possible to throw large bolts. As in this episode, springalds were often used as defensive weapons; they were set up in towers to defend the gates. They allowed defenders to knock an armour-clad man off his horse at a safe distance; plates 29.1 and 29.2.

1840 *dogges with your taylles:* See note 1784.

1859-1866 *I hafe a castelle ... it sall hat Matte Griffoun:* The siege tower called Mategriffoun (Griffon-killer) is mentioned by *IP* (Bk. 2, Ch. 20), Ambroise (ll. 938-41, trans. 44), Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 25), and Roger of Howden (*Gesta*, 138; *Chronica*, 67); see plates 28.1 and 28.2.

1869 *By be watir 3e schall ham assaylle:* A common tactic, whereby ships would attack towns or castles from the sea using siege machines, archers and crossbowmen. Sometimes two ships placed side by side formed a platform for the stone-throwers and catapults; see plate 27.

1880 *Bifore be cite appon ane hill:* This line echoes *IP*: ‘[the Mategriffoun] was
placed on a suitable hill next to the city’ (Bk 2, Ch. 20, 167).

1885

*mawgonelle*: Mangonels were heavy launch catapults employed primarily to defeat a castle’s walls. While mobile versions existed, mangonels were more likely assembled *in situ* within range of their target. Mangonels featured a low, flat trajectory and an extremely high velocity, designed specifically for smashing through thick stone walls at short range; plate 31.

1888

tailed dogges: See note 1784.

1912

*And keste wilde fire*: Greek fire (also called ‘wild fire’ in the Middle Ages) was invented in the seventh century by the Byzantines. A liquid that ignited on impact, it had the property of developing intense heat, spreading immediately in all directions, and burning on water. As it was a powerful weapon, its composition was a closely guarded military secret. However, the fact that it gave rise to black smoke, suggests the inclusion of petroleum and resin; it also probably contained potassium nitrate and its base may have been naphtha or crude oil. ‘Greek fire has a noxious stench and bluish-grey flames, which can burn up flint and iron. It cannot be extinguished with water, but it can be put out by shaking sand over it’; see *IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 34, 88; Partington, 1-41; Haldon & Byrne; Haldon.

1931

*pe Watire Towre*: There is no mention of a Water Tower in the chronicles; it is most likely the romancer’s invention.

1941-1942

*His banere one pe walle*: Monsir Griffoun it [...] pighte: Conventionally, the victorious army would raise its banners above the walls of a captured town or castle; however, by raising Richard’s banner themselves, the people of Messina (the Griffoun; see note 1677) perform the ultimate gesture of humiliation after defeat.

1970

*no manere of tayle*: See note 1784.

1971-2008

*The Kyng of Fraunce ... cryed mercy*: The romancer distorts the historical incident to emphasise the rivalry between Richard and Philip. Richard of Devizes (*Crónicon*, 22-3) explains that Tancred with a large retinue, both secular and clerical, and Philip with French bishops and archbishops met Richard and negotiated the terms of a truce; as in the romance, Richard was magnanimous but war was re-ignited when a Sicilian killed an Englishman.

2013-2014

*Margaryte and ... Hewe of Pympotit*: Margarit and Jordan of Pin (or del Pin) were, historically, commanders in the retinue of the King of Sicily. Initially, *IP* says that Margarit was ‘a great man of action’ who boldly crushed pirates. Later, however, the chronicle blames him and Jordan of Pin for the incidents at Messina: ‘There were two crafty and deceitful Lombards who had instigated the city mob’s attack on the pilgrims. [...] Jordan del Pin and Margarit’ (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 14, 43-4; Bk 2 Ch. 16, 160). Richard of Devizes (*Crónica*, 22) and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 57) mention both Admiral Margarit and Jordan of Pin in the retinue of Tancred (see note 1971). Ralph of Diceto (*Imagines*, 86).
says that Margarit and Jordan of Pin were commanders of Messina who fled in secret, taking their families with them. The romancer makes Margaryte and Pympotit justices of France who insult Richard after Philip's humiliation, most probably to emphasise the rivalry between the English and the French.

*Plene ... to the Franche kynge*: The legal term *plene* (appeal) is perhaps being used ironically here, as Pympotit, in the romance, is a judge of France.

The episode of the conquest of Cyprus provides a good example of the romancer's craft. He uses a historiographical basis (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 30 ff; Ambroise l. 1194 ff; *Cronicon*, 35 ff; and *Chronica*, 105 ff) but re-arranges, distorts and embellishes it so that his sources serve the romance's internal logic; for other examples see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 149 ff.

*Towarde Cipirs*: This passage agrees with the historical records; Richard sailed from Sicily to Cyprus, while Philip went to Acre; see maps 2 and 3.

*A tempeste rase full sodeynly ... Vnneneth the maryners it he/de*: Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 35-6) comments that two ships were driven by the force of the winds and were broken up by the rocks near Limasol while a third ship turned back into the open sea and escaped the danger; *IP* (Bk 2, Ch. 30, 180-01) and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 106) also describe the storm and the shipwreck.

*For the Griffouns*: Like the chronicles, *Richard* calls the people of Cyprus Griffouns. Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 36) describes them as ‘warlike and accustomed to live by plunder’; the incident of the attack on Richard’s ships and crew is also recorded in *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 30, 180-01) and Ambroise (II. 1401-25, trans. 50-1).

*the emperoure*: Isaac Comnenus had been sent by the Emperor of Byzantium to Cyprus as governor in 1085 but soon declared independence. He then made an alliance with Saladin and refused to deliver supplies to the Franks.

*nauys*: A two-masted round ship with lateen (i.e. triangular) sails, the *nefs* or *naves* (known as hulks in the north of Europe, plate 26) were used when open-sea voyages were required (DeVries, 295); cf. II. 2472, 4895, 6560. See also note 1433.

*alle his saylande galys*: See note 1433.

*He calles Steuen & Sir Willyam and Sir Robert of Thorne*: The chronicles say that Richard sends envoys to the emperor – *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 32, 183), Ambroise (l. 1445, trans., 52), and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 106) – but they do not mention their names. The romancer, however, names them. Robert of Thorham was appointed by Richard to direct and watch over the fleet when they left Messina (see note 1667). Robert took part in the battles in Cyprus and, when the island was pacified, he was made governor of Cyprus; therefore, his appearance on II. 4986, 6228, and 6543 is the romancer’s creation. *Steuen* might refer to Robert’s brother, Stephen of Thorham (d. 1213/14), who accompanied Richard on crusade. In April 1192, he visited Jerusalem and, in
the following year, he escorted Queen Berengaria and Joan of Sicily on their journey from Palestine to Rome (DNB).
It is not certain to whom Willyam refers but it might be William Longuespec; see note 1824.

2113

Seynte Denys: The mention of St Denis is significant because this third-century bishop of Paris became the patron saint of France (cf. l. 3274). Nothing is definitely known of the time or place of birth, or of the early life of Denis. He is usually represented with his head in his hands because, according to the legend, after his execution his corpse rose again and carried his head for some distance. After he was executed by the heathen, Denis received an honourable burial and a small shrine was erected over his grave. This was later replaced by a basilica. From the reign of King Dagobert (622-638) to the eighteenth century, the church and the Benedictine monastery attached to it were continually endowed by the French crown. The ‘Saint Denis’ or ‘Montjoie! Saint Denis!’ became the war-cry of the French armies in the Middle Ages; and the oriflamme, which in time became the standard of France, was the banner consecrated on his tomb (see, Stiglmayr).

2119

Launce: The lance developed from the weapon used by infantry, the spear (a light wood shaft and a small iron head). The typical cavalry lance was made of strong hard wood with a leaf-shaped metal head, and had a handgrip. From the middle of the twelfth century to the end of the Middle Ages, the lance dominated in mounted shock combat, and during the crusades, it was the principal offensive weapon because the crusaders always attacked first with a mounted charge ( DeVries, 9-14); see plate 17.

2141-2163

Pe emperour stiewarde: This incident is very briefly recorded by Roger of Howden (Chronica, 110), and by Robert Mannyng (Chronicle, 2, l. 4097 ff). However, as discussed in vol. 1, ‘Sources’, pp. 111-12, the romance may be Robert Mannyng’s source.

2178

Cesse: Note the legal terminology; cf. note 2032.

2190-2192

Chesse: Chess was introduced in southern Europe shortly before the beginning of the eleventh century and spread northwards; it reached England after the Norman Conquest. At first, it was associated with gambling but, as chess became popular amongst the nobility and clergy, the Church accepted it (see Riddler). The social value attached to the game, as a pastime for the nobility, is suggested by the rich decoration of some medieval chessboards (Vale, 172). Between the twelfth and the fifteenth century, the game features in numerous texts in Latin and the vernacular. The romance notes that Richard gambles and always wins (l. 2192).

2191

Pe Erle of Richmonde: No Earl of Richmond accompanied Richard on crusade; the most likely candidate on which this character may be based is Pierre Mauclerc, first Earl of Richmond second creation (c. 1190-1250), who was a second cousin of Louis VIII of France and accompanied Louis IX on the Seventh Crusade (1248-54). He was wounded at the Battle of Mansurah (1250) and died shortly afterwards. As discussed in vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’ (pp.
98 ff), the romancer includes knights who took part in the Seventh Crusade (e.g. William Longuespee and the Count of Artois) as Richard’s companions; see also notes 1326, 1824.

2202

as a lyoun: Richard of Devizes (Cronicon, 19-20) describes Richard as a ‘fearful lion’ who ‘roared horribly’; previously he had said that the Griffons called Richard ‘the lion’ (Cronicon, 17); Gerald of Wales (Opera V, 195-6) also calls Richard ‘a lion and more than a lion’; for other references to Richard as a lion, see Gillingham, 260; cf. ll. 1114 and 3606.

As a leberde: As one who is like a leopard in cunning and cleverness (MED). As an example of Richard’s intelligence and cunning – even though the word ‘leopard’ is never used – IP (Bk 2 Ch. 5, 146) says he has Nestor’s tongue and Ulysses’s wisdom; and Richard of Devizes (Cronicon, 9) observes how astute Richard was when he sold lands and honours to finance the crusade.

2207

The bowmen and the alblastererys: See note 1830.

2210

Als thik als falles pe hayle-stone: Whiting H13; see note 68.

2219

ane axe: Richard’s axe is mentioned by Robert Mannyng (Chronicle, 2, l. 3942) in the same context as in the romance; no other chronicler mentions an axe in connection with Richard. See vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 101-02, for references to the romance in Robert Mannyng’s Chronicle; for the use of axes by knights and infantry, see France, 23.

2240

als his awenn catelle: See Cronicon, 38.

2259

The emperour daughter: Historically, Isaac’s daughter was captured by Guy of Lusignan (see note 1277), who had come from Acre to help Richard in Cyprus; when the emperor learned that his daughter had been captured, he surrendered himself and Cyprus to Richard (IP, Bk 2 Ch. 39-40, 193-4; Ambroise, l. 1976 ff, trans., 59-60).

2292

the giltyn ern: The golden eagle was the emblem of the Roman Empire.

2296-2297

als ferse to fighte / Als euer was fawkon to the flighte: C reads fresshe to fy31, and corresponds to Whiting F25.

2321

And hymselfe was fled awaye: Historically, the emperor (Isaac) flees twice, first from Limasol to Nicosia and later from Nicosia to Candaira (?Caput Sancti Andrea) through Famagusta (IP, Bk 2 Ch. 33-38, 186 ff; Ambroise l. 1552 ff, trans. 53 ff; Cronicon 37 ff; Chronica 107 ff); map 4.

2342

Fawuelle: IP describes the horse as an ‘equo favello peroptimo’ (an excellent dun horse); Ambroise calls it Fauvel but, as Nicholson 1997, 191 n.134 observes, fauvel is the French name for a dun-coloured horse. Ailes and Barber, 57 n. 143, note that Fauvel was one of the most common names for horses in chansons de geste. Lyarde is not mentioned in the chronicles, but its name means ‘dapple-grey
horse’ both in OF and ME.

rabet (vr. rabyte, rabytt) appears to designate a type of Arab horse: roan or rabicano – from Spanish rabo (tail) and cano (white hair). The Arab horse, a breed of light horse developed in the Middle East, is known for its beauty, speed, and stamina. Arab horses may have entered medieval Western Europe either during the crusades, or from Spain (Price & Shiers, 175).

And by that he wiste full wele: See note 2321.

homage ... my landes of hym helde: In the Middle Ages, ‘homage’ was the ceremony in which a feudal tenant (or vassal) pledge reverence and submission to his feudal lord, receiving in return the investiture (the symbolic title to his new position). The ceremony symbolized the acknowledgement to the lord that the vassal was his man, and that the lands the vassal possessed, in fact, belonged to his lord.

so says the boke: This reference to ‘the book’ may point to the chronicles (see note 2321) or may function as a rhyme-word for toke; see vol. 1, ‘Sources’ p. 108-10.

Bonevent: The fortified castle of Buffavento was besieged by Guy of Lusignan; historically, the emperor did not take refuge there (IP Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; Ambroise l. 2009, trans. 60); see note 2259 and map 4.

The emperor’s alienation from his baronage is recorded by IP, Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; and Ambroise, ll. 1956-59, trans. 59.

Pyse: Historically, the emperor, who had been hiding in Candaira (?Caput Sancti Andrea), finally surrenders in Nicosia. All the manuscripts of Richard in which this passage survives, however, offer the same reading: Pys(e) (the reading of W is pryse). See note 1720.

Both his handis faste hym byhynde: The capture of Issac is recorded by IP, Bk 2 Ch 41, 195; Ambroise, l. 2060 ff, trans., 60; and Chronica, 111.

Pe Erle of Leycestre: Historically, Richard made Robert of Thornham governor of Cyprus; see notes 1665, 1667, 2107.

And grete festes: At this point, the A version narrates Richard’s marriage with Berengaria of Navarra, which historically took place in Cyprus (IP Bk 2 Ch. 35, 189; Ambroise ll. 1735-44, trans., 55-6; Chronica, 110); see Textual Notes 2048, 2052, 2070 and 2464.

galays ... nauys: See notes 1433 and 2093.

Pay sawe a dromounde withowtten mesure ... Hadde noghte pe Cite of Acris bene wonn: This episode is documented in the chronicles (IP Bk 2 Ch. 42, 195-99; Ambroise, ll. 2157-298, trans., 62-3; Chronica 111-12; Chronicon, 38-9). According to IP, Richard sent Peter des Barres to find out who was in
command of the ship; the answer was it belonged to the King of France, although no one on board could speak French. For *dromounde*, see note 1433.

2487

*Trenchemere*: See note 1425.

2493

*With the Kyng of Fraunce we duelle*: Although the Saracens often disguised their ships as Christian (*IP*, Book 1 Ch. 41, 97; Bahá' al-Din, 123-4), when recording this incident the chronicles state that the ship was immediately recognised as one of Saladin’s; see note 2480.

2499

*Sayne Thomas of Ynde*: Saint Thomas the Apostle, credited with evangelising India (see Thurston).

2526

*Oeure de Lyoun*: See note 1114.

2531

*myn axe*: See note 2219.

2540

*Owe, lowe, rombylowe*: This may well have been an early example of a sea shanty. Sea shanties served a practical purpose: the rhythm of the song was useful for synchronizing the movements of the sailors as they did repetitive tasks (e.g. rowing). Ritson, 352-3, suggests that phrases similar to this were popular among sailors. Indeed, its alliteration, musicality and rhythm render it suitable for the rowers to chant as they row quickly towards the enemy.

2542-2543

*also faste / Alsquarelle owte of alblaste*: Whiting Q7; see note 68.

2543-2544

*And alswa the dromounde come with pe wynde, / A lange qwartere pam byhynde*: If another meaning of *qwartere* is considered here, these lines may be interpreted differently. ‘Quarter’ also means ‘a side’ or ‘a direction’; thus, it was used by the ME translator of Vegetius in 1408: ‘Pe ... est wynde ... hap tweie side wyndes or quarter wyndes’. If this is the meaning for l. 2544, then it should read: *And alswa the dromounde come with pe wynde, A lange qwartere, pam byhynde* (note the comma after *qwartere*). This interpretation, however, presents a problem: the adjective *lange* (long), which cannot be explained in this context.

2548

*Bothe in iryn and in stele*: Note the repeated use of this line, ll. 2788, 5754, which could have been used as a formula, but also shows the extent to which the romancer endeavoured to give cohesion to the narrative.

2556-2557

Naval battles often involve throwing stones from the endcastles and/or the topcastle; see plates 22 and 38.5.

2568-2569

*Also thikke ... Als hayle aftere thonour dynt*: A variation of ‘as thick as hail’ (Whiting H13).

2572

*He drissed his rygg reghte to the maste*: The romancer here shows either his knowledge of fighting tactics or his common sense; when fighting on board a ship, the safest place to be is with one’s back against the mast, where one is protected from an unseen attacker.
And some he hitt appon the bacenett ... some into the girdill-stede ... some vnto the schippes borde: Note the progression of the blows dealt by Richard: first he hit on helmets, cutting some up to the neck; then, cutting others up to the waist; finally, cutting others open up to the ship's board.²

bacenett: See note 401.

the deuyll of helle: Cf. lines 370, 498, 1108, 3659, 6613, 6730.

furrour Gregis: Greek fire, see note 1912.

bowes Tourkys: Turkish bows, which were shorter than the long bow (approx. 1.7 m), were recurved (i.e. having tips that curve away from the archer) composite bows that fired barbed arrows shorter than those fired by long bows (DeVries, 34); see plate 16.

be dromounde: See notes 1433, 2480.

Surry: See note 1263.

A full grete cheyne: Although neither IP nor Ambroise mentions a chain in connection with Richard's arrival, a chain did exist at Acre harbour, as Ambroise confirms elsewhere (ll. 3950-54, trans., 86). The romancer says that the chain 'was fastened to two pillars', but the eleventh-century Persian traveller, Naser-e Khosraw, gives a better description of the position of the chain: 'The city of Acre, which they write Akkā, is situated on a rise ... Most of these coastal towns have a minā [harbour] ... Built right against the town, it has walls out into the water and an open space of fifty ells without a wall but with a chain stretched from one wall to the other. When a ship is about to enter the minā, they loosen the chain so that it goes beneath the surface of the water, allowing the ship to pass over; afterwards the chain is raised again lest strangers make untoward attempts on the ships' (Khosraw, 16-17); see map 1 and plate 2. For a miniature depicting Richard axing the chain, see plates 1.1 and 1.2.

pyment: The earliest known spiced wine in England was known as pyment (from Latin pigmentum, i.e. spiced drink). It was a white wine with added honey and spices, usually pepper. The earliest recipe is found in the fourteenth-century Tractatus de Modo, especially parts 15-18.

clarre: By the time of the composition of Richard, clarre (from Latin claretus i.e. 'clear') was one of the best known of pyments. It was a very sweet and spiced drink; more quantities of honey were required for its production and the spices added were pepper and ginger; cf. ll. 3501, 4728.

Caste wilde fyre into the sky: Chronicles do not record that Richard uses Greek fire when he arrives in Acre; however, it is reported that fires were lit in the crusader camp (IP Bk 3 Ch. 2, 203; Ambroise l. 2371, trans. 66); for Greek fire,

² I thank Nicola McDonald for pointing to this progression.
170

see note 1912.

2650

mangonells: See note 1885.

2654-2680

A milne he hade: Ambroise does not mention the mill but says that, before Richard’s arrival in Acre, ‘Germans built the very first windmill ever constructed in Syria. [The Saracens] looked on in astonishment and were most terrified by it’ (ll.3225-7, trans., 78). The mill on Richard’s ship is mentioned by the Short Chronicle (l. 2109) and Robert Mannyng (Chronicle, 2, l. 4303); both chronicles say that it frightened the Saracens (note, however, that the romance could have been Robert Mannyng’s source; see vol. 1, ‘Sources’, pp. 111-12).

3alowe, & rede, and grene, & bloo: The colourful mill’s sails are mentioned in the Short Chronicle (l. 2113) and Robert Mannyng (Chronicle, 2, ll. 4304-05).

2672-2678

Pe Sarajenes weren of hym sore afferde: The Saracens’ fear has been recorded by Bahâ’al-Din, 150; and Ambroise, ll. 2347, trans., 65.

2693-2884

the Erchbischoppe of Pys: Ubaldo Lanfranchi, Archbishop of Pisa took part of the Third Crusade (IP, Bk 1 Ch. 31, 82), but there is no record that he had received Richard. This passage – in which the Archbishop gives Richard an account of the hardship in the crusader camp – is functional to the narration, as by means of flashback, it conveys to the audience the events that happened at the siege before Richard’s arrival. This exemplifies the variety of literary devices used by the romancer (cf. note 1261). The same device is used by Ambroise (l. 2351 ff, trans., 66 ff) who, after narrating Richard’s entrance into Acre harbour, recounts the sequence of events from the fall of Jerusalem to the arrival of Richard. Like the romance, Robert Mannyng (Chronicle, 2, l. 4323 ff) tells how the Bishop of Perouse informs Richard of the hardship suffered by the crusader army before his arrival; see vol. 1 ‘Sources’, pp. 111-12, and ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 101-02.

2700

This segge has lastede bis seven jere: Historically, the siege lasted from August 1189 to July 1191. The period of seven years is the romancer’s creation to emphasise the crusaders’ failure before Richard’s arrival. See vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 149 ff.

2705-2708

a wyde dyke: The construction of the ditch is recorded in IP (Bk 1 Ch. 31, 81-2) and Ambroise (l. 3094 ff, trans., 76).

2710

Saladyn, the sowdane: See note 1279.

2713-2714

Markys Mawferaunt ... Pat lewys one Mawhoun and Termagaunt: Although the marquis was a controversial figure during the crusade, he never converted to Islam (see notes 1297, 3255-3256).

Mawhoun and Termagaunt: Medieval Christians wrongly believed that Muslims were polytheists and that Mahoun (a corruption of the name of the prophet Mohammed), Termagaunt, and Apolyne (Apollo) were part of the
pantheon of gods; see, for example, *La Chanson de Roland* (ll. 63, 2589, 2696, 2712, etc.), and *Sir Guy of Warwick* (I. 3701).

2719  
*Graunt hym grace of werldis schame*: Note the ironic use of a common phrase of praise functioning as deprecation; the phrase would be similar to ‘God grant him the grace of the world’s fame’ but the romancer changed ‘fame’ for ‘shame’; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 3776, 4081, 5163, 6803.

2741  
*Erle Ferres of Inglande*: William de Ferrers, third Earl of Derby, died at Acre in 1190 (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 31, 82; Ambroise I. 3120, trans., 76).

2743  
*pe Emperour of Almayne*: Frederick I Barbarossa died before reaching the Holy Land; see note 1323.

2744  
*Jeryn, pe Erle of alle Lawe Spayne*: This name may refer to James I of Aragón (1208-1276) called ‘The Conqueror’. In 1229, James successfully invaded Muslim Majorca and, by 1235, all the Balearic Islands were under Christian rule. By 1245, he had captured the Moorish kingdom of Valencia. He was the most famous Spanish king in the Middle Ages not only for his conquests in Spain but also for going on crusade to the Holy Land in 1269 (Schulman, 242-3; Runciman, 3: 330-1).

2749-2756  
*Pay garte pan take alle pe corpes*: This incident is recorded by chronicles but as happening before the construction of the ditch (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 31, 81; Ambroise ll. 3087-98, trans., 76).

2775  

2776-2820  
*pe Sarayenes owte of Acris went*: The romancer does not judge the knights, but *IP* and Ambroise accuse them of being greedy (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 40, 95; Ambroise, II. 3452-89, trans., 81).

2788  
*Bothe in iryn and in stele*: Cf. note 2548, and I. 5754.

2798  
*Bawdkyns*: See note 3369.

2823  
*The doughety Erle of Champayne*: Henry II, Count of Champagne (1166-1197), Richard’s nephew, joined the crusade in 1190. He arrived at the siege of Acre in advance of the kings of France and England (see map 3); *IP* Bk 1 Ch. 43, 99; Ambroise, II. 3510, trans., 81.

2825  
*Sir Raundolfe de Glamauylls*: Ranulf de Glanville, chief justiciar of England under Henry II, accompanied Richard on crusade, and died at Acre in 1190.

2826  
*John the Nele*: Jean de Neles was Governor of Bruges and did not take part in the Third Crusade. He did join the Fourth Crusade (1199-1204), accompanying Baldwin of Flanders.

*Miles*: Nothing is known about this character; there is no record that Jean de Neles had a brother called Miles.
Bawdewyne ... Erbsbishoppe of Cantirbery: See note 1450.

Hubert Gawmntir of Ynglende: Hubert Walter (1160-1205), Bishop of Salisbury, accompanied Richard on crusade. He was one of the principals involved in raising Richard’s ransom after the king was captured in Germany on his return from the Holy Land. As a reward, Hubert was made Archbishop of Canterbury in 1193.

Michaelmanes: Michaelmas, the Feast of St Michael the Archangel, 29 September.

Pe whethire was waxen full swythe calde: The inclement weather and the famine in the crusader camp are mentioned by *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 66, 127) and Ambroise (l. 4197 ff, trans., 90).

A quarter of whet ... For wheit tornys, ne sterlynge: *IP* gives an account of the inflated prices that the crusaders had to pay for food (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 66 ff, 127-134).

the Hospitalle of Seyne John: See note 1776.

Mategrifon: Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 43) records the re-assembling of the Mategriffon in Acre; see also note 1859.

twelwe schippes ful of bees: Although the practice of infesting a besieged town with bees has been recorded (Bradbury, 42), the chronicles of the Third Crusade do not mention that Richard has used that tactic at Acre. The *Short Chronicle* (II. 2090-2106), which gives practically the same account as the romance, is likely to have been the source for this passage; see vol. 1, ‘Sources’, p. 150 ff.

mawngonelle: See note 1885.

Called ... his mynour: Ambroise (II. 4903-4990, trans., 100-101) and *IP* (Bk 3 Ch. 5-7, 205-209) record that Richard was ill when the French king directs an unsuccessful undermining of the city walls. Afterwards, a convalescent Richard, commanding his miners and the rest of his men, has the tower finally brought down.

Maudit Colour is a corruption for *Maudit Coloun* (*Tur Maudite, Turris Maledicta*), i.e. the Accursed Tower, which was situated on the north-eastern corner of the city walls (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 7; Ambroise l. 4745, trans. 98); see map 1 and plate 2.

Sir Rabolyne: A fictional character; in the romance, he is Saladin’s nephew.

With thre Sarayene hedis: This image is historically impossible, as it is against the tenets of Islam. However, Saracens carrying standards with human images are recorded by Ambroise (l. 3364, trans., 80); the inaccurate tradition
(propagated by *chansons de geste* and romances) by which the Saracens used human images in their standards may then have begun at a very early stage.

*The conysable:* The term *conysance* (i.e. a device used for the purpose of identification; see l. 2985) would be appropriate here. However, this form rhymes with *fable*. Moreover, *sable* is the heraldic term for 'black', so the line might mean that the three Saracens' heads on the emblem were black. See the Luttrell Psalter illustration of the duel between Richard and Saladin (plate 36.2) in which Saladin's shield displays a black head.

3025

*Kyng Richerde laye full seke:* Both *IP* and Ambroise place Richard's illness before his first assault on the city (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 4-6, 203-8; Ambroise, l. 4599 ff, trans. 95).

3049

*Cristyn or Sarazyne:* Saracen physicians were held in great esteem in the Middle Ages; Bahā' al-Din, 159, reports that, during the siege of Acre, envoys from Richard would go to Saladin's camp to ask for 'fruit and ice' to alleviate the king's illness.

3071-3073

*in that contree ... no porke fynde:* As it is against the tenets of Islam to eat pork, it is not surprising that the Christians could not find it.

3086-3116

*Take a Sarazyne, yonge and fatt ... And become hool & sounde:* The first episode of anthropophagy probably has its origins in Richard's historical illness, contracted shortly after his arrival in Acre; see note 3025.

3140

*swylk dole I schal hem dele:* To 'dele dole' also means to give alms, so this line might also be interpreted as: 'I shall give them such alms'; cf. with other ironic comments on ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 4081, 5163, 5399, and 6803.

3160

Note that the terms of comparison are inverted. In the text, armour withstood Richard's axe no more than a knife does the wax but, more logically, it should say that armour withstood his axe, no more than wax does a knife. The word order, however, is necessary for the rhyme.

3166

*Gage:* This geographical place has not been identified; see Textual Notes for other witnesses' readings.

3243-3244

*So lat 3e make Kyng off Surry ... Markes Feraunt:* The Marquis of Montferrat privately negotiated with Saladin in 1191 (Bahā' al-Din, 194-99); see note 1297.

3255-3256

*He was Crystene be my fadyr day ... he has renayyd his lay:* There is no record that the marquis ever converted to Islam. Historically, the feud between Richard and the marquis was limited to the election of the King of Jerusalem, when Sybilla's death in 1190 left the throne vacant (see note 1277); Richard supported Guy of Lusignan, while Philip Augustus supported the marquis. The marquis won the election but he was assassinated before the coronation. Both *IP* and Ambroise, like the romance, show hostility to the marquis; see note 1297. For the election of the King of Jerusalem and the assassination of the
marquis, see *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 23-7, 302-8; Ambroise I. 8580 ff, trans., 147 ff.

3259

*He is wurs pan an hound:* Note that ‘hound’ is used here as a term of abuse. Cf. note 1784.

3260-3262

*He robbyd syxty pousand pound ... pat my fadyr sente into pis land:* Historically, Henry II – in penance for his part in the murder of Thomas Becket (see note 40) – accumulated a great deal of money which, together with that raised by the Templars and Hospitalers, was sent to the Holy Land. The money was used principally in the defence of the city of Tyre, during the siege that Saladin laid in 1187. The defence was led by the Marquis of Montferrat (*IP* Bk I Ch. 12, 42). Although the twelfth-century chronicles do not favour the marquis, none of them mention that Henry II’s money had been stolen. For the Knights Templar, see note 645; for the Hospitallers, see note 1776.

3270

*Wip wylde hors he schal be drawe:* See note 996.

3322

*In myn halff I graunte pe foreward:* Richard refers to ‘one half’, as the other half of the decision corresponded to the King of France; for the agreement between Richard, Philip and Saladin at Acre, see *IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 17-18, 218-21; Ambroise I. 5156 ff, trans., 103-4; Gillingham 1999, 155-71.

3349

*Amyrallys:* The title of ‘emir’ may refer to a commander, a general, or a prince. The ME *amryall* derives from the Arabic *amir* and denotes a high title of nobility or office; the term was used throughout the medieval Muslim World.

*Many sawdan:* The title of ‘sultan’ designates the supreme ruler of a medieval Muslim state, but it can also refer to any Muslim ruler or knight. When the romance refers to ‘the sawdan’, however, it always denotes Saladin; see note 1279.

3352

*To pe sawdon pey sente in haste:* Baha’ al-Din (160-1) gives an account of the dramatic letters that the defenders of Acre sent to Saladin, and the negotiations for their lives.

3369-3374

*bawdekin ... samyte:* ‘Cloth of gold’, produced by weaving threads of gold in silk or wool, was mainly used by the Church and by monarchs. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, Cyprus and Lucca were specially famed for their gilded cloths. From the thirteenth century, there were various names for gold-woven textiles, such as ciclatoun (see note 5084); baudekin (from Baldak or Baghdad); and samite, so called because the weft threads were only caught and looped at every sixth thread of the warp, lying loosely over the intermediate part. Medieval samite was not always made of gold; the term could refer also to satin silk (*Encyclopaedia Britannica* ‘Textiles’; for the place of textiles in romances, see Wright).

3373

*rabyte:* See note 2345.

3408-3650

*I schal 3e tell what pou schal don ... Till pat he hase made playne werke:* For discussion of the second episode of anthropophagy, see vol. 1, ‘History versus
Fiction’, p. 150 ff.

3448 *Wip dukes & eerles prowde in pres*: Cf. l. 1100.

3501 *Pyment, clarre*: see note 2641.

3588 *pe sawdones sone off Damaske* would refer to Saladin’s (the Sultan of Damascus’) son, which does not make sense as the ambassador is, in fact, speaking to Saladin; cf. note 5847.

3594 *kynges sone off Nynyue*: For Niniveh and its lack of historical relevance in the Middle Ages, see note 638.

3606 *As a wood lyoun he farde*: Whiting L344; cf. ll. 1114, 2202.

3659 *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 6613, and 6730.

3667 *paire god Mawhoun*: See note 2714.

3703 *sowdane althir hegheste*: See note 3349.

3722-3729 *Off Surr ye ... and of many a ne oper riche emperyre*: Several lists of geographical places occur in the romance; these place names re-create the Middle East for the audience who would recognise them, even though they had not travelled themselves (cf. note 619-51). Almost the same list is repeated on ll. 5054-7 (with the reading in C giving two extra lines which are identical to ll. 3728-9). This suggests that, either the enumeration itself may have been formulaic, or the romancer, playing with his audience’s memory, may have reiterated the names as a means of confirming the nations over which Saladin ruled.

3724 *Darras*: This place has not been identified; the romancer may have either distorted a real place name or created one.

3725 *Sessoyne*: It is not clear to which country this name refers. When *Sesoyne* is previously mentioned (l. 1322), it refers to Saxony. Here, however, it obviously points to a Middle Eastern place.

3726 *Bogy*: The identity of this place is unclear; all versions differ in their readings, and the only plausible place name occurs in E, *Libie*; see Textual Notes for the other witnesses’ readings.

3728 *Grete Grees*: The Greek expansion of 800-600 BC led to the founding several colonies in the south of Europe; among them, Syracuse (in Sicily), Neapolis, Sibaris and Tarent (in Southern Italy) were called ‘The Great Greece’. The Islamic conquest and rule in Southern Italy and Sicily can be traced to the seventh century; the subsequent Christian reconquest led by the Normans took place at the end of the eleventh century.

3729 *Tire*: The coastal city of Tyre, in present-day Lebanon; see note 641-643.
Prethir John: Prester John or Presbyter Johannes was a legendary figure popular in Europe since the twelfth century. He was said to be a Christian king who ruled a vast Christian nation which was imagined to be in the Far East, beyond Persia and Armenia. He was believed to descend from one of the Three Magi, and his extremely wealthy kingdom was supposed to be inhabited by strange creatures. The search for his kingdom was the object of numerous explorations, factual and fictional; see Otto von Freising (7, 334-35), Marco Polo, Travels (Bk 1 Ch. 46-50, 59; bk 2 Ch. 38-9), Mandeville (Ch. 30), and Silverberg.

he make tomorowe fyne: The ransom that Saladin had agreed to pay, apart from the money for the true cross and the release of the captive Christians (IP, Bk 3 Ch. 18, 220). IP (Bk 4 Ch. 2, 227) and Ambroise (l. 5506 ff, trans. 106) say that Saladin delayed the payment.

crosse: On the true cross, see notes 390 and 1279.

take þe Sarazenes fifty thowsande ... hedis þam alle withouten pite: For the execution of the Saracen prisoners in Acre, see the chronicles (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 4, 231; Ambroise, l. 5506 ff, trans., 108; Bahâ al-Din, 164-5). For discussion, see Gillingham 1999, 167-71.

Sir Appolyne: Apollo was wrongly believed to be a Saracen god; see note 2714.

Sayntours, tues, tues: The angelical intervention may pre-empt any potential criticism because Richard was following divine orders; cf. note 6740, where an angel tells Richard to obtain a truce with Saladin and leave the Holy Land (Paris, 384; Schellekens, 2:118). Moreover, the angel’s direct speech in French suggests that the romancer’s intention is to distance himself – and Richard – from the massacre; for a study of the inclusion of French words in Middle English texts, see Summerfield, especially 71-3. See Textual Notes for the other witnesses’ readings. For the use of French words in the romance, see vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 96-8.

Merye is in þe tyme off May ... many chaunces þan bytydis: These lines, with their bucolic description of the beginning of spring, connect Richard with romance. The insertion of such elegant and courtly lines immediately after the beheading of fifty thousand Saracens, however, represents another example of the romancer’s use of irony; cf. ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803. In addition, these lines may have been intended as a clear division between sections of the narrative, marking simultaneously the end of the siege of Acre and the middle of the romance. Cf. note 6662.

Giff ... of þi golde & thi purchais ... to erles, barouns, knyghtis: Richard’s advice to Philip and the French king’s refusal to follow it anticipate the following episodes in which the French king and his army are portrayed as cowardly and greedy; cf. l. 646, where the names of two cities are proleptic of
the French humiliation. Historically, the King of France abandons the crusade and returns to France after winning Acre, for which the chroniclers criticise him (IP, Bk 3 Ch. 21, 223; Ambroise, l. 5245 ff, trans., 104-5) and Richard with the remainder of the crusader army march towards Haifa.

seriaunutis of mase: The ceremonial mace is an ornamental staff, usually of metal or wood, carried before a sovereign or other high official by a mace-bearer to represent the official's authority. The earliest ceremonial maces were practical weapons intended to protect the king's person, and were borne by the Sergeant-at-arms. This position was first established in France by Philip Augustus and in England probably by Richard I.

3822-3829 giff pat he skomft ne in bekyre ... we may betriste pan of a strange ressett: The romancer once again exhibits his knowledge of military matters; Acre would be a useful refuge were the crusader army attacked on its way to Jerusalem.

3834 MynosteI wil doparten in three: The division of Richard's army into three to lay siege to three castles is recorded as having occurred in Cyprus, when Guy of Lusignan helped Richard to take control of the island (IP, Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; Ambroise, l. 1960, trans., 59); see notes 2259, 2409. After the fall of Acre, Bahá' al-Din (166, 170) states that the crusader army is divided into three hosts, but all of them march together.

3835-4900 These episodes, which feature fictional sieges and battles, are not included in versions ADEH.

3835 Kyng Philip, take pou thi menjye: Philip had already left; see note 3804.

3867-3884 For Franche men are euer arghe & faynte ... And slake abore of their boste: For discussion of the depiction of the French, see vol.1 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.

Slake abore of their boste: Although this line is here glossed as 'put an end to all their boasting', note that a different word separation (slake a bore) gives a different meaning: 'make a boar retreat in the face of their boasting', which should be interpreted as ironic. MED favours this word separation.

3886-3887 And a strange cite he bysett ... Toborett: Cf. note 646; for discussion of the fictional siege of Toborett, see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.

3901 cheff amyraylle: See note 3349.

3902 Terryabaute: A fictional Saracen name; cf. l. 4015.

3919 And Kyng Philip graunted & of pam toke raunson: Ransom was a very profitable and usual practice in medieval warfare; it usually happened after a battle or siege when the noble prisoners of a defeated army would pay for their lives (France, 10-11, 138). It could also be the payment to buy off a hostile army (MED), and this is what the Saracens are doing here.
With flour de lyce gold and azure: The royal arms of France.

city of Archane: Cf. notes 646 and 3886.

Henry of Champayne: See note 2823.

Robert of Leycestre: See note 1665.

Sir Bertrame: It is not clear who this character refers to; it could be the same ‘stout Lombard’ called Sir Brawndische of l. 4985 (other manuscripts’ readings confirm that Sir Brawndische is called Bertram; see Textual Notes). However, if he is a Lombard, he could not be from the ‘region of Brindisi’ (l. 3963).

his freres: If, as the context suggests, this refers to ‘friars’, it is anachronistic in the context of the Third Crusade, as the mendicant orders were not founded until the thirteenth century. But it could also mean *feres*, that is, companions.

the Temple: See note 645.
The Hospetulers: See note 1776.

bowes & arowes ... scheldys & sperys: See plates 14 and 15.

Staffe-slyngers: There are very few medieval literary examples of the use of sling weapons (hand-held or staff) and they usually feature in Biblical or ancient stories. Moreover, the very few depictions of slings in medieval manuscripts show either David and Goliath, or Muslim soldiers. Only one illustration in a manuscript of Matthew Paris’s *Historia Anglorum* shows European soldiers using staff-slings; it depicts naval soldiers using them in an attack on a coastal fortification (plate 21). De Vries, 33, suggests that this illustration may indicate that slings were used in medieval warfare.

In stark contrast to the rare occurrence of slings in medieval literature and art, the repeated mention of staff-slingers in *Richard* becomes significant in confirming the use of this weapon; cf. ll. 4459, 4541, 4571, 5347, 5494.

Sowdane Turry: See note 641.

Sir Thomas ... Orgolyus: See notes 619 and 641.

cite of Ebedye: See notes 619 and 641.

Kyng Richerde ... Sowdane Turry vmbylayde: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Sudan Turry; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.

Grawndary: A fictional Saracen name; cf. note 3902.

For the use of ladders to climb a wall, cf. l. 5349.
Sir Robert Thorname: See notes 1667, 2107.
Bertrame: See notes 3964, 4985.

swilke pardone he thaym delte: Note the romancer’s use of irony; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 5163, 5399, 6803.

Apolyne ... Mahoun: See notes 2714, 3763.

Sir Thomas ... laye ... at Orglyus: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Castle Orglyous; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.

mawngonelle: See note 1885.

Sir Orgalie: Fictional character; in the romance he is the chief officer of Castle Orglyous. Note the similarity between this name and the name of the castle.

De amyralle: See note 3349.

wollewarte, one my bare fete: The renegade declares that he will do penance by wearing woolen clothing next to his skin and going barefoot; cf. PP B-text, XVIII:1: ‘Wolleward and wete-shoed went I forth after’, and Brut, 99: ‘Heremytes, monks and prestes, and opere folc grete plente ... wenten bare-fote and wolward, forto haue mercy of þo ij kynges’.

pyment ... clarre: See note 2641.

pilgryme and palmere: See notes 611, 612.

Ebody ... Sir Fuke Doly it bylaye: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Ebody; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.

dåfe amyralle: See note 3349.

His faamen a newe layke to lere: This line has two readings; as glossed (to teach his enemies a new form of attack) – or ironically (to teach them a new game).

grete spryngalle: See note 1838.

C He bad hem to wyldrawe; this is a more logical line than the one in B because it explains that the men withdrew from the assault before going for wood and timber.

A sorye b[eluerage was there brewede: Note how the romancer uses the image of a (sour) drink that is being prepared as an analogy for the battle that is about to happen; cf. note 6803, and l. 59 in Appendix 2.

To Mawhownn firste, & sythen to Juboter: See note 2714.
Sir Arkarde ... Sir Cowdraye ... Sir Orphyas ... Sir Materbe ... Sir Gargoile: Fictional Saracen names which may have been intended as puns. Cowdraye is similar to coward (coward); Orphyas brings to mind Orpheus who, in Ovid's Metamorphoses Book 10, is torn to pieces by women; and Gargoile recalls the grotesque carvings that cover the spouts conveying water from a roof and away from the side of a building.

 Amyralls: See note 3349.

 Staffe-slyngers: See note 3972.

 Rabytt: See note 2345.

 Sir John Doly, of Sir Fukes kyn: It is not known who John Doly may have been.

 And ryste the there to domysdaye: A possible use of irony; cf. ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.

 Babills of stele: The bill was a staff-weapon which derived from the halberd (a combination of axe and spear) but which added a number of lugs or spikes protruding from the blade on all sides (DeVries, 30), plate 19. The word babill, however, might also refer to the babel, a scourge with spiked balls on thongs, but this interpretation does not correspond with the context as the babills are made of steel.

 Mace: The mace developed from the rudimentary club and, by the twelfth century, had completely replaced it as a battle weapon. Maces were made either entirely of metal or with a metal head atop a wooden shaft; their heads came in a variety of shapes and sizes, but all of them were made of iron or steel. The mace was an efficient crushing weapon when used against armoured opponents (DeVries 25-8).

 Bacenettis: See note 401.

 Pe fote folkes & symple knaues faughte with axes and with staues: Staffs were the usual infantry weapons. Axes were rarely used in the twelfth century (although Richard uses an axe in the romance, none of the twelfth-century chronicles records his use of that weapon). From the thirteenth century, however, the short-handled axe was in use among knights, while the long-handled was used by the infantry (France, 23).

 Pikes: The pike was a type of very long spear – about 15ft long – with a small iron head, usually used by the infantry (DeVries & Smith, 299; De Vries, 15, 30); plate 18.

 Rabittes: See note 2345.

 Philipe, pe Kyng of Frawnce: See note 3804.
oper some blode to lett: Bloodletting is the withdrawal of often considerable quantities of blood from a patient to cure or prevent illness. It was the most common medical treatment from antiquity up to the nineteenth century.

Note how both Thomas of Multon’s and Fulk Doly’s words duplicate Richard’s; the three characters’ utterances seem variations of the same theme. The reiteration is probably intended to flatter Multon and Doly, presenting them as duplications of Richard, and the English knights in general as brave and skilled, in contrast to the cowardly French; cf. l. 4759.

And badd pam alle the gude: Note the use of irony; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.

Ebidye: See note 641.

I ne will neuer syn: ‘Sin’ here might refer to ‘commit a sexual sin’ (MED).

Kyng cowarde ... Here hafe pou loste for ever thi praye: As if the narrator’s deprecation of the French (note 3867) – and the following confirmation of their cowardice by avoiding fighting (note 3919) – had not been enough, here the romancer makes the Saracens themselves insult the French king.

Of golde pou sall hafe alle thi fille: After winning the battle for Philip, Richard ironically comments on the winnings that Philip will have, thus illustrating how the French king could have gained much more by capturing the town in the first place.

nauye: See note 2093.

cogges: Cog is the type name for a medieval ship built with flush-laid flat bottom, straight stems, and clinker-built hulls (i.e. built with a method whereby overlapping edges of planks are fastened together to create a shell of planking); see Hutchinson, 154, 184. Clogs were not propelled by oars; therefore, even during battles at sea, the sail had to be up. See Flatman 81-6, and plate 22.

galie ... dromoundes: See note 1433.

Sayne James tyde: The feast of St James, 25 July. Historically, the crusader army left Acre in mid-August 1191 (Ambroise, l. 5570, trans. 109). Note that, from this line, the narration (loosely) resumes the historical events after the fall of Acre.

fowlles begynnes for to chide: Cf. l. 3776.

to Cayphas ... by the maryn: Historically, after the fall of Acre, the crusader army started their march towards Ascalon travelling along the coast, with Saladin’s horse-archers attacking them. The first city they reach was Cayphas (Haifa), outside which they encamp (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 5-11, 232-9; Ambroise, l.
ryuere pat highte Chalyn: There is no evidence of a river called Chalyn, but *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 10-11, 239) mentions that the army reached the river Kichon as they approached Cayphas.

4919  
*Fauelle of Sypris:* See note 2342.

4920  
*als swyfte als ... pe swalowe:* Whiting S923; see note 68.

4939-4943  
*Thurgh a carte pat was Sir Howbertes Gawntere:* The incident in which a Saracen cuts the right hand of one Everard, who was in the service of Hubert Walter, is recorded by *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 10, 238) and Ambroise (l. 5769-75, trans., 111); for Hubert Walter, see note 2831.

4955  
*pe Langespraye:* See note 1824.

4973-4976  
*Saynt George ... with armours whitte ... and a crosse on rede coloure:* The appearance of St George, dressed like a crusader (or a Knight Templar) and leading the Christian armies to victory, dates from the First Crusade, and is narrated – among other sources – in *La Chanson de Antioche*, which has other intertextual connections with *Richard* (cf. notes 163 and 3408); see Matzke, 152-4; see vol. 1 ‘Sources’, pp. 119-20.

4985  
*Sir Brawndische, a stowte Lumbarde:* It is not clear to whom this character refers; see note 3963.

4986  
*Robert Thorname:* See notes 1667 and 2107.

4994-4998  
*Chaphas:* The chronicles do not record that the crusaders captured Cayphas (Haifa); see note 4903.

5001-5002  
*cite of Palatyne:* This reference may point to the city of Caesarea Palestina (a town between Acre and Jaffa) (Jentsch, 186); according to *IP* and Ambroise, the crusader army marched towards Caesarea (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 12-14, 240-3; Ambroise, l. 5861 ff, trans., 113-14); see map 5.

5005-5006  
*there vetaile pat come by pe watir:* As the crusaders marched along the coast, their supplies were carried by their ships, which also protected the army (Ambroise, l. 6000 ff, trans., 114; Bahā’ al-Din, 169; for discussion of this military tactic, see Verbruggen, 232-9; Lyons & Jackson, 334-8).

5011-5029  
*To bette downn the castells:* As a result of the defeat of the Saracen army at the battle of Arsuf, Saladin orders that a number of fortifications in the region be destroyed to prevent the crusaders from having a safe place from which they could launch an attack on Jerusalem (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261; Ambroise, l. 6826 ff, trans., 124; Bahā’ al-Din, 178). In the romance, however, the order of events is inverted; the demolition of the fortifications takes place before the battle of Arsuf. For all fortifications, see maps 5 and 6.
Mirabelle ... the castel off Aukes lande: Although the incident has its origin in history, the list of castles knocked down by Saladin's men is partly historical (Mirabel, Toron, Jaffa, and Saint George) and partly fictional; for a list of the demolished fortifications, see IP (Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261), Ambroise (l. 6826 ff, trans., 124-5), and Bahā’ al-Din, 177-8.

There is no positive identification of Calaphyn; Schellekens (2: 120) suggests it could be the fortification of Calansua (Calansue), which was situated 25 km north of Mirabel.

Sessarye may refer to one of several places called Caesarea, but there is no record of its destruction. As the demolition of fortifications historically took place after the battle of Arsuf, the city was in Christian hands at the time; therefore, Saladin was not in a position to demolish it (l. 5018).

Castelle Pelgryme (Pilgrim Castle or Chastel Pelerin) was not built until 1218 (see Kennedy 1994, 124-7).

Castelle Jasare refers to Lazare, a castle and nunnery close to Jerusalem (Schellekens, 2:166); see Textual Note 5022.

Saladin did not demolish the walls of Jerusalem, and Bethlehem – a suitable rhyme-word – is not mentioned by the chroniclers.

Maydenes castel may refer to Casal Maen (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261) which was demolished by Saladin.

Aukes lande has not been identified.

5040-5260 Vndyr the forest of Arsour ... Kyng Richerde wanne Ar sour: The battle of Arsuf (7 September 1191) was an important victory in Richard's campaign; historically, it happened before the demolition of the fortifications (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 17-22, 246-61; Ambroise, l. 6122 ff; trans., 116 ff; Bahā’ al-Din, 172-77); see map 5.

5050 Seynt Marye euen pe Natyuyte: The date of the battle was 7 September 1191, the Eve of the Feast of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 17, 246).

5054-5057 Off Inde, off Perse, off Babloyne ... pe lande of Alexandry: Cf. notes 619-51, 3722, 6688.

5084-5085 Sykelatoun ... sendel: For ciclatoun, see note 3369. Cendal was similar to modern taffeta, and was woven in rich and varied colours, scarlet being most popular (Walkup, 94). Ciclatoun, samite and cendal were used in the manufacture of the same kinds of garment.

5091 bowe Turkeys: See note 2592.

5098 splentes of steel: For plates of metal armour, see note 373. These plates were worn over a full mail hauberk or habergoun, as explained on ll. 5802-3 (for hauberk and habergoun, see note 374).

5099 Fauel: See note 2342.

5106 5118 ff Jakes de Neys & Jhon de Neles ... Jakes de Neys was a noble knyght: Jacques (James) d'Avesnes who is described as a 'wonderful knight' by IP (Bk 4 Ch.
and as ‘valiant’ and ‘worthy’ by Ambroise (l. 6628, trans., 121) was cut off, surrounded and killed by the Saracens. The account of Jacques’s death in the romance is similar to the chronicles: IP and Ambroise mention that on that day some of Jacques’s ‘relatives’ had also died, without specifying whether they were his sons.

*Jhon de Neles:* See note 2826.

---

**5113**

*launse:* See note 2119.

**5115**

*Mahoun & Appolyn:* See note 2714.

**5132-5133**

*Duke off Burgoyne:* See note 1321.

*Pe Eerl off Bolyne:* There is no evidence of the existence of this knight; the name may function as a suitable rhyme-word.

**5144-5145**

*Templere ... Hospytalerere:* Ambroise (ll. 6644-9, trans., 122) and IP (Bk 4 Ch. 20, 258) mention that the one who failed to help Jacques d’Avesnes was the Count of Dreux. For the knights Templar and Hospitaller, see notes 645 and 1776.

**5154-5180**

*Whenne Kyng Richard wyste pis:* Richard’s reaction to the death of Jacques d’Avesnes and his driving thousands of Saracens towards a cliff (ll. 5205-6) is not recorded in any of the chronicles.

---

**5163**

*I vndyrstande it gan hym smerte:* Note the romancer’s use of irony; talking about a spear piercing the Saracen’s heart, he believes that ‘it hurt him’; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5399, 6803.

**5179-5180**

*Pe Frenssche says he slow an hundrid ... whereof is maad pis Ynglyssche sawe:* The different readings of this line (see Textual Notes) appear to point to a French source (which is not Ambroise, as this incident is not recorded by him). If a French source for this incident existed, however, it could not have been the hypothetical AN original from which *Richard* might have been translated, as this incident occurs in an interpolated passage; see vol. I, ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 96-8.

---

**5189**

*Als grewhoundes dose with hares:* Whiting G461.

---

**5225-5241**

*Flede fro the Batelle of Arsoure ... Pat pay wiste neuer where paire gudis to done:* Saladin’s escape from the battlefield is the romancer’s creation. The chronicles, however, report the confusion among the Saracens, and how they escaped from Arsuf, leaving tents and equipment behind (IP, Bk 4 Ch. 21, 259; Ambroise, l. 6735 ff, trans., 123).

---

**5236**

*Of tygris, of dragouns, of lyouns, & of leoparde:* These animals have strong heraldic overtones. They were extensively used on shields, crests and badges (Oliver, 59-65). Here they are decorating Saladin’s pavilion.

---

**5248-5249**

*Of Napills ... Sir Gauthere, Pat was Maister Ospetulere:* Garnier was born in Nablus, in the Holy Land (map 5) and was Master of the Order of the Hospital
between 1190-92. He was with Richard in Messina and took part in the battle of Arsuf (Riley-Smith, 107-8). *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 20, 258-9) and Ambroise (l. 6689 ff, trans., 122) say that the Templars and the Hospitallers looked for Jacques d'Avesnes's body in the battlefield and buried him in the church of Our Lady in Arsuf. The romancer here uses a synecdoche – Garnier for the Hospitallers.

5254-5255 *And ledis Sir Jakes ... into Jerusalem:* The chronicles state that Jacques d'Avesnes was buried in Arsuf (see note 5248). This passage, however, could be conflating the story of Jacques d'Avesnes and that of Frederick Barbarossa; *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 24, 66) says that the emperor's son, Frederick ofSwabia, boiled his father's body, separated flesh from bones, buried the flesh in Antioch, and carried the bones with the aim of burying them in Jerusalem. This procedure, practised from the Second Crusade onwards, was known as *Mos teutonicus* (German custom); see Brown, 221-70. See also notes 1323 and 2743.

5266 *Wende wille we to be cite of Nyneue:* The following episodes (until l. 6024) are fictional interpolations. For Niniveh, see note 638.

5270-5271 *Babylowe ... Macedoyne:* See note 635.

5278 *playnes of Toke:* Neither Toke nor Odok (variant reading in C) correspond to any place mentioned in the chronicles.

5287-5297 *the Sarayenes balde ... Sarayenes pat ware so stowte:* The romance is full of praise for the Saracens' bravery (cf. ll. 5375, 5436), as are the chronicles (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 15, 216; Ambroise, l. 3410 ff, trans., 80).

5338-5350 *With bowes, with alblasters, & oper gynn ... And many leddirs sett pe walle vntoo:* For the fictional attack on the city of Niniveh, the romancer deploys a wide variety of tactics used in medieval siege warfare.

*Mawngonells:* See note 2650.

*Staffe-slyngers:* See note 3972.

*Tripgettis:* The siege machine called 'trepeget' (also known as trebuchet) had been in use since antiquity in the defence and attack of walled cities or castles, either to knock down fortifications or to hurl projectiles over the walls. The counterweight trebuchet appeared around the end of the twelfth century; it could hurl very heavy stones at high speed. Sometimes, instead of stones, infected corpses were thrown into cities (or from the cities towards the besiegers' camp) in an attempt to spread disease among the enemy (DeVries, 133-8). A famous trebuchet, nicknamed Warwolf, used by Edward I at the siege of Caerlaverock castle, was capable of hurling 200-pound missiles; see plates 30.1, 30.2 and 30.3.

*Many leddirs sett pe walle vntoo:* Cf. ll. 4031-4.

*Wylde fire:* See note 1912.

5357-5358 *Of batelle bytwene three: Thre of theym and thre of his:* The romance motif of
the triple challenge also appears in *King Horn* (Fellows, 22, l. 810); cf. notes 271, 272, 754, 1647. See vol. 1, ‘Sources’, pp. 116-17.

5378-5380 *Sir Arcolyn ... Sir Coudrebras ... Sir Galabere*: Fictional Saracen names; cf. ll. 3902, 4015.

5399 *Kyling Richerd was his preste*: Note the romancer’s use of irony; the reference to ‘the priest’ points to the administration of the last rites and to the priest being the last person a dying person sees. Cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 6803.

5414 *mace of brasse*: See note 4619.

5423 *Hym lykede pat day werke nothyng wele*: After narrating the gruesome deaths of the first two Saracens, it seems an ironic understatement to say that the third Saracen thought that, ‘He was not pleased with the day’s work’; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.

5452 *And of hym holden that ilke cite*: The inhabitants of Niniveh would hold their land from Richard, the feudal expression denoting that they have become Richard’s vassals, having paid homage to him; cf. note 2361.

5464-5937 *Chefe Sowdane of alle Heythynnesse*: See note 1279; cf. l. 5847. The passage narrating the fictional single combat between Richard and Saladin is enclosed in a larger episode which starts with the also fictional siege of Babylon; for discussion of fictional sieges, see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 158 ff.

5482 *in buke as I fynde*: Either the fictional siege of Babylon (Cairo) is the romancer’s creation, and, consequently, the reference to ‘the book’ is also fictional, or a source once existed but has not survived; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 160-1.

5485 *For Philippe & his men weryn bot ille*: Cf. ll. 3804, 3867, 4739, 4845, 4881, 5504, and 5763.

5492 *Gud spryngells*: See note 1838, but note that in this episode, the springalds are used by the attacker.

5520-5521 *arowes ful thikke gane flye / Als powder dose vndir pe sky*: Whiting P344; see note 68.

5538 *For a porcyoun of betyn golde*: Note the interesting choice of adjective – *betyn* – for ‘gold’, meaning gold leaf, used here to emphasise the low price for which Philip is willing to favour the Saracens. Indeed, the romancer could have chosen the adjectives *fyne* or *brende*, both of which mean ‘pure’ when qualifying ‘gold’.

5565-5873 The fictional duel between Richard and Saladin – who never met – is briefly reported by Langtoft, 102, and depicted on the Chertsey Tiles (c. 1280) and in the Luttrell Psalter (1320-40); see plates 36.1 and 36.2. For discussion of the
duel, see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, p. 158 ff.

5585

*Jubitere:* See note 2714.

5587

*Giff pat pou will ane horse of his:* This part of the episode may have been inspired by a historical event. At the battle of Jaffa, Richard’s men were being unhorsed; at that, out of courtesy, Saphadin, Saladin’s brother, made Richard a gift of two Arab horses (*IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 22, 364).

5595

*Saynt Michaelle:* St Michael, the Archangel, is one of the principal angels; his name was the war cry of the good angels in the battle fought in heaven. Christian tradition gives St Michael the offices of fighting against Satan, and rescuing the souls of the faithful from the power of the enemy. He was the patron of the Church and of chivalric orders (e.g. Templar, Hospitaller) during the Middle Ages (Holweck). The mention of *Saynt Michaelle* at this point is relevant, as Richard is about to receive a demon-horse, about which an angel will warn him.

5637-5649

*Pat be sall come ane horse to hande ... it es a fende:* Demon-horses usually appear in medieval texts connected with Lucifer or with hellish punishment. The romancer has changed the negative implication of the demon-horse by supplying the angelical warning, which in turn leads to a humorous conclusion; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’ p. 158 ff. For demon-horses, see Owen, 131; McAlindon, 328; and cf. *Le Morte Darthur*, ‘The Noble Tale of the Sankgreall’ (Caxton XIV).

5681

*alle be fendis myghte gan felle:* Note the assimilation of Christ with a knight who falls demons, as the crusading knights fell Saracens.

5698-5701

*tent nowe to my tale ... Pat was full trewe, sance faile, And done in dede, withowtten tale:* The self-referential use of the possessive adjective ‘my’ (*my tale*) seems to indicate that the story’s authority does not come from any *auctoritas*. However, the following four phrases (‘full trewe’, ‘sance faile’, ‘done in dede’, ‘withowtten tale’) over-emphasize the veracity of the story. Although these phrases are frequently used as line fillers, the concentration of four of them in two lines is infrequent enough to regard them as merely a coincidence. As with the references to unknown ‘bokes’, these phrases may help create a ‘truth’ whose reference is not found outside the romance; see vol. 1, ‘History versus Fiction’, pp. 160-1.

5746-5747

*Hafe this ilke nyghte to his wage:* Note the subtle use of an idiom of economics to convey military matters, compare *wage* here with l. 5752; cf. also the legal terms used in the romance (ll. 954, 1024).

*Ane hede of a Sarayyne:* This expression brings to mind the anthropophagy episode; cf. note 3650.

5752

*Pay schall spaken of my paye:* Compare *paye* here with l. 5746.

5754

*Bothe in iryn and in stele:* Cf note 2548.
Bot in geste, als it es talde, none of theym was so balde: Pay ne dorste noghte come pe haythyn nere: Cf. ll. 3804, 3867, 4739, 4845, 4881, 5485.

his peytrelle: The breastplate, or peytral, protected the horse’s chest. In addition, heraldic emblems could be displayed on this piece; see plate 3.

four lebardes: See note 5808.

platts hat weren of stele: See notes 373 and 5098.

wroghte of Tracy werke: The reference to Thracian metalwork cannot be found in any chronicles of the Third Crusade.

Hose and gloues of stele: For hose (plate armour to protect legs) and gauntlets (plate armour to protect hands and lower arms), see plate 3.

thre leberdis departed full wele: Richard’s banner at the time of the crusade was two lions rampant (plate 37.1). In 1198, however, he adopted the three lions (plate 37.2). As French is the language of heraldic terminology, a lion passant guardant – one that is walking across while facing the viewer – is always called a léopard. The heraldic terms describe the animal’s posture, not his species; therefore, ‘thre leberdis’ describes ‘three lions passant guardant’ (see Ailes, 71-2; Oliver, 61).

auentayle: The aventail was the mail attached to the bottom edge of the helmet, to cover neck and shoulders, plate 7.

And one his creste a doffe whytte, in sygnyfycacoune of the Saynt Espyritte: The expression ‘in significacyoun’ recalls ll. 281, 339 and especially 391-92, where the same symbolic meaning for a white dove is given; this suggests a conscious intention to render the romance cohesive and coherent. See also plates 6.1. and 6.2.

Chefe Sowdane callede of Damas: See notes 1279, 5464.

als pe boke vs tellis ... the sowdane hange his cropour full of bellys: This reference to a book could support Loomis’s (1915, 513-14) claim that this episode was adapted from another source; however, as noted on note 5482, it is more likely that the romancer provides fictional – or formulaic – references to books.

paytrelle: See note 5792.

His fete towarde the firmament: The graphic description of the sultan’s fall must have been reproduced humorously by the romance performers; cf. note 5936.
5902  *Of Salysberye the Longspey*: See note 1824.

5926-5936  *And bygane to flye onane ... Kyng Richerde myght noghte in for his tree*: As with l. 5871, this incident must have been used to raise audience laughter. Note however, that here it is Richard who provides the laughter.

5982  *Mawmettis*: See note 2714.

5996  *Saynt Austyn*: This reference may point to Augustine of Hippo (354-430), author of *Confessions* and *The City of God* among many other works (see Portalie), or to Augustine (d. 604) who was the first Archbishop of Canterbury (see Clifford).

6006  *a floreyne to be cite warde*: The word floreyne may be a corruption of flayn(e) or floyn(e), variants of flone (MED), which denotes an arrow used for long-bows; see l. 2209.

6008-6017  *And pan for irre wexe seke Kyng of Fraunce ... he went to Fraunce in hye ... And seyde he dide grete velanye to wende harne/or any maladye*: Historically, Philip Augustus had left the Holy Land immediately after the fall of Acre, for which all the chronicles criticise him; see note 3804.

6014  *Alle-Halowmesse ... All Saints’ Day (the Feast of All Saints), 1 November.*

6026  *Jaffe*: The city of Jaffa, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Arsuf; see map 5. From this line, the romance (loosely) resumes the historical itinerary of the crusader army (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 25-7, 263-5; Ambroise, l. 6932 ff, trans., 126-7).

6041-6130  *Chaloyn*: The city of Ascalon, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea between Jaffa and Darum; see map 5. *IP* and Ambroise report that, after the battle of Arsuf, Richard desired to rebuild the walls of Ascalon, but the French disagreed and their opinion prevailed (see references for note 6026). Later, however, Richard persuaded the others and the walls of Ascalon were rebuilt, *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 6, 288-9. The romancer merged these two events in one episode.

6050-6073  *Saue the Duke of Ostrike ... the duke agayne he breste he smate*: In the romance, the argument between Richard and Leopold, Duke of Austria, happens when the crusaders are rebuilding the walls of Ascalon. According to Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 46-7), however, the argument had taken place at Acre, when Leopold had placed his banner at the top of the walls with those of Richard and Philip Augustus. *Cronicon* reports that, when Richard saw Leopold’s banner, he threw it over the wall.

*Duke of Ostrike*: For Leopold, Duke of Austria, see note 1321.

6091-6092  *Bot I sal! take thi banere and caste it into the ryuere*: The mention of Leopold’s banner by the romancer suggests that, either he knew when the argument had historically taken place (note 6050) and wittingly changed it, or he may have
known of the circumstances of the argument but not when it had taken place.

6098-6106 Mighte he euer his tyme see ... Pat sythen torned alle Ynglande vnto grame: The romancer refers here to the historical imprisonment of Richard, who was ambushed by Leopold of Austria when the king was on his way back from the Holy Land; see Gillingham 1999, chapter 13.

6115-6116 the Duke of Burgoyne ... pe Erle of Boloyne: Cf. note 5132.

6134 Femaly: This place name has not been identified.

6138 To Albarye, a castelle gent: This castle has not been identified.

6157 Sayne James daye: 25 July; note that the same day has been used repeatedly. This may derive from the importance of St James for pilgrims (Santiago de Compostella). Note that crusaders considered themselves pilgrims. Cf. ll 2775, 4901.

6158 castell Daroun: Castle Darum was situated on the Mediterranean coast south of Gaza; it was one of the few fortifications that Saladin did not demolish after the battle of Arsuf. See note 5011, and map 5. For Richard’s journey to reconnoitre Gaza and Darum, see IP, Bk 5 Ch. 19, 298-9. For Richard’s attack on – and capture of – the castle, see IP, Bk 5 Ch. 39, 316; Ambroise, l. 9127 ff, trans., 155 ff.

6184 by watire: See note 5005.

6190 emagonelle: See note 1885.

6193-6194 into the dike pam to caste ... playne the dyke pay made: Cf. note 4357.

6204 Pe Robynett and pe Matgriffoun: The reiteration of the names of Richard’s siege machines gives the romance cohesion; see notes 1416, 1859 and 2898.

6217 destere: Destrer or destrier does not refer to a breed, but to a type, of horse: the finest, strongest warhorse. Destriers were more suitable for jousting, while coursers were preferred for other types of warfare (Oakeshott, 11); cf. note 2345.

6228 Robert Thonname: See notes 1667 and 2107.

with his fawchoun: The falchion, a variation of the long sword, was introduced in the late Middle Ages. It was a short, single-edge weapon with a very broad curved blade; it combined the weight and power of an axe with the versatility of a sword. Falchions are found in different forms from around the eleventh century up to the sixteenth century. It is possible that the Islamic scimitars have influenced the falchion’s design (DeVries, 25; Al-Sharraf, 167-73); see plate 20.
Spryngals: See note 1838, but note that, in this episode, the springalds are used by the attacker.

Gaytris: Refers to the coastal city of Gaza, situated between Darum and Ascalon, map 5. For Richard's journey to reconnoitre Gaza, see IP, Bk 5 Ch. 19, 298-9. The chronicles, however, do not describe the successful attack on the city.

A doughty mane ... full stowtte werryoure & in fighte full gwayne: Cf. ll 5287, 5375, 5436, 5488.

Ane angelle and na man: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, and especially 6730.

Ioghe pat he leude to Adams elde: Adam was traditionally thought to have lived nine hundred and thirty years.

Castelle Pilgryme: Also known as Chastel Pelerin, Pilgrim Castle was a Templar fortification, completed in 1218; see note 645 and map 6.

The castelle was callede Lefryde: This may refer to the Castle of the Figs (Chaste! des Figues); IP (Bk 5 Ch. 41, 320) and Ambroise (l. 9370 ff, trans., 158) report that when Richard attacked the castle everybody ran away; see map 5.

He went to Gebelyn: Ibelin of the Hospitallers, which is about eight miles from Hebron, was granted to the Hospitallers in 1136. The chronicles mention Richard's arrival there (IP, Bk 5 Ch. 44, 322; Ambroise, 1. 9484 ff, trans., 159-60), but do not mention Baldwin. See map 5.

Sir Bawdewyne was slayne with: It is not clear which Baldwin is referred to here. If it is the King of Jerusalem (see notes 1277, 1281, 1308), this could be another example of analepsis – albeit erroneous, as Baldwin was not killed in battle, but died of his illness. Schelleckens (2:129) suggests that the name refers to Baldwin of Ibelin, Lord of Ramlah.

Sayne Jame: See note 6157.

Richerd Couere de Lyone: Cf. notes 1114, 2202, 2526.

His brothir John: News from England about John's intentions to seize the throne are recorded in the chronicles (IP, Bk 5 Ch. 42, 320-1; Ambroise, ll. 9408-35, trans., 159).

Alle pe fendys prey, flesche & bone: This reference brings Cassodoren to mind; cf. l. 60 ff. Note, however, that this reference also appears in the versions of the romance that do not include the episode of Richard's demon-mother.

At the Paske tyde: Easter time; cf. ll. 6429, 6443.
To Bethanye, a castelle gent: It is not clear to what place this name refers; Jentsch, 215, suggests that the name is a corruption of Betenoble (or Betenopolis) mentioned by IP (Bk 4 Ch. 34, 278-9), map 5. But this place name may also refer to the biblical city of Bethany, famous as the home town of Lazarus and his sisters Martha and Mary. Like Niniveh (note 638), Bethany may have been easily recognised by a medieval audience as a place in the Holy Land, even though it had no connection with Richard’s campaign.

JafFe: See note 6026. Historically, when Saladin hears that Richard is leaving from Acre to England, he attacks Jaffa. The city’s garrison then sends a message to Richard, who returns by sea. Historically, Henry of Champagne was not there, neither was he sent; he arrived at Jaffa after the battle (IP, Bk 6 Ch. 12-14, 349-54; Ambroise, l. 10758 ff, trans., 175 ff).

Chalyn: See note 4905. Both occurrences of Chalyn in the romance are part of the same rhyme: Chalyn/maryn.

He fledde agayne ... poul vile cowarde: See note 5485.

Schowse forthe enkerli my galy: See note 6460.

Of Partynope ... ne zitt of Achilles: This list of (romance) heroes brings to mind the beginning of the romance (cf. note 11-19), and connects with Ambroise (Il. 4173-96, trans., 89-90) who makes a similar list, albeit in a different context. For a study of similar lists in romances, see Fewster, and Liu. See vol. 1 ‘History versus Fiction’, pp. 137-43.

Partynope ... Ypomedone: Note the romancer’s decision to start with two romance heroes.

Kyng Arthoure ... Sir Gawayne ... Sir Launcelott de Lake: See note 11-19.

Of Beues ... Sir Gy ... Errake: Although Beves of Hampton and Guy of Warwick are arguably two of the most famous romance heroes, it is not clear to whom Errake (vrr. Vrrake, Sydrake, Cydrak) may refer. It is possible that the phrase ‘Sir Gy ne of Errake’ is a corruption of ‘Guy of Warwick’.

Vly (vrr. Ely, Vry): May refer to Ulysses (Odysseus), King of Ithaca, husband of Penelope and father of Telemachus, hero of the Odyssey. Ulysses also features in Virgil’s Aeneid as the one who creates the ‘Trojan horse’ stratagem. Sir Octouyane refers to the first emperor of Rome, Augustus, whose name was Octavius. It may also refer to the romance hero called Octavian.

For Ectore, see note 11-19.

Of Jasone ne zitt of Ercules: Jason, son of the King of Iolcus, Aeson, and husband of Medea was a Greek mythological figure famous as the leader of the Argonauts and their quest for the Golden Fleece. Ovid mentions the Argonauts in his Metamorphoses and Chaucer retells the story in the Legend of Good Women.
Ercules refers to Hercules, who like Jason and Ulysses, was a hero of Greek mythology. The three heroes are famous for their wisdom.

Eneas ... Achilles: Aeneas, son of Venus, is the hero of Virgil's Aeneid. For Achilles, see note 11-19.

6524-6525 Att Jaffe in this ilke bataylle with his axe and his spere: For the battle of Jaffa, see IP, Bk 6 Ch. 15, 354-5; Ambroise, I. 11079 ff, trans., 179-80. Note, however, that the chronicles say that Richard wielded a sword; for the use of axes, see notes 2219, 4625.

6540 Slayn I wote es Sir Robert of Leycestre: The Earl of Leicester could not have been in the citadel at Jaffa, because he was with Richard in the attack (Ambroise, ll. 11386-7, trans., 182).

6544 Sir Bertrame and Sir Piparde: Bertram de Verdun is said to have been appointed to guard the Hospital of St John after the capture of Acre (1191). He died at Jaffa in 1192 (Gesta, 2, 149-50). Gilbert Pipard accompanied Richard on crusade but died in Brindisi (Peerage, 10, 527, quoted by Schellekens, 2: 132).

6560 nauys: See note 2093.

6610 Malcan starram naire arbn lor fermor toir femorn: Note the romancer’s intention to reproduce the Saracen language. It is impossible to ascertain whether these lines, which make no sense in the form they are preserved in the different versions, were originally accurate in Arabic; however, as the translation is provided (ll. 6613-14), they may only have been intended to recreate a sound (note the profusion of letter r), which the audience may have interpreted as the sound of Arabic.

6613 deuyll: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6730.

6638-6639 also swythe /Als girse fallys fro the sythe: Whiting S 102; see note 68.

6661-6669 He comforthed his barouns smarte: Fill pe coppe oneane righte: This passage, which summarises the story that will be narrated in detail later, might indicate a pause in the performance (cf. note 3776). To resume the story, the romancer recapitulates by repeating a phrase: ‘comforthe him barouns’ (ll. 6661 and 6671); for discussion on romance performance, see Vitz, Ragalado and Lawrence 1-11; Zaerr, 193-200; Busby, 61-71; Coleman, especially 76-147.

6673 messangers fro Saladyn ... This incident is not recorded in chronicles.

6688-6695 Of Egere and Gregeys ... & also of Barbary: Cf. this list of geographical names with previous ones (ll. 619-51, 3722-28, 5054-57); see maps 5 and 7.

Egere might refer to the Aegean coast.
Maroyns: If this refers to the Maronites, it is a mistake, as Maronites, who lived and still live mainly in Lebanon, are Christian.
Baschells: It is not possible to identify to which nation this reference points.
Nubyens: Nubians inhabited in part of the present-day Sudan, and in the south of Egypt.
Babloyne: See note 635.

Ynde the More: One of the regions into which Ynde can be divided; it was also called Ynde Major or Gret Ynde. It is not clear which geographical area it referred to; it might have indicated Northern India. Ynde the Lesse, Lesser India, referred to the southern part of the Indian peninsula; for Ynde, see note 1649.

Askaloyne: Ascalon does not make sense in this context, as its walls had been rebuilt by Richard and occupied by Christians. Note, however, that when referring to Ascalon, the romancer uses Chaloyn.

Orygenes has not been identified.
Capadosy: Cappadocia is a region in modern central Turkey.
Sydones: Sidon is a coastal town in present-day Lebanon.

Barbary: The Barbary Coast (present-day Maghreb) was so called after its Berber inhabitants, some of which were the privateers known as Barbary Corsairs (Ottoman Corsairs or Barbary Pirates). These were Muslim pirates, based in the North of Africa, who operated from the time of the crusades (eleventh century) until the nineteenth century.

polaxe: A knightly staff weapon, it was a combination of spear and axe. It developed early in the fourteenth century, but only in the late fourteenth and fifteenth centuries was it adopted as the chief weapon for the knight on foot (DeVries, 30-2).

deuyl or ells a saynt: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, but note that, on this line, a change is introduced, the possibility of his being a saint; cf. l. 6371 when he is said to be an angel.

For by nyghte he thoghte to take Kyng Richerde: IP (Bk 6 Ch. 19, 359) and Ambroise (ll. 11314-77, trans., 182) record that some Mamluks and Kurds boasted that they would capture Richard.

ane angelle of heuen: Paris 1897, 384, regards the angelical intervention as the best possible excuse for abandoning the crusade; cf. notes 3768, 5637.

With Saladyn the byhoues to make pese: The chronicles report the terms of the truce (IP, Bk 6 Ch. 27, 370-1; Ambroise l. 11718 ff; trans., 186-7). Caluarye (Calvary or Golgotha) refers to the site, outside the walls of Jerusalem, where the crucifixion of Jesus is believed to have taken place.

His oste he myyte noyte for haste ordeyne ... Wanne into the cite of Jafes: The final episode describing a fierce battle of Jaffa partly agrees with the chronicles
Als thikke flyes / Als fra the hyves dose the bees: Whiting B167; see note 68.

A mirre was there withowten Jaffe Castelle: This incident does not feature in the chronicles.

Pay dранke of Kyngis Richerdis cope: Note the ironic way of expressing that they were killed by Richard, which may derive from an older expression: 'drinken dethes drinche' (to drink Death's cup, i.e. to die; MED); for the romance use of irony, see notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399. See also note 4445.

Als it was in the Franche romance yfounded: The French source alluded to here cannot be Ambroise; see note 6796.

His eme, Sir Henry of Champayne: The chronicles say that it was Robert of Leicester who was dismounted (IP, Bk 6 Ch. 22, 363; Ambroise, l. 11489-92, trans., 184).

the Patriarke he taken es: Heraclius or Eraclius (c. 1128-1190/1) was Archbishop of Caesarea and Latin Patriarch of Jerusalem. After Saladin captured Jerusalem (1187), Heraclius took refuge in Antioch and participated in the siege of Acre, where he died during the winter 1190-1.

Sir John the Nele... See note 2826. Sir Willyam of Arsour & Sir Gerarde: Neither of these names can be identified; they are not mentioned in the chronicles.

Sir Bertrame Braundis, pe gud Lumbarde: See notes 3964, 4985.

For pay slewe Fawelle vndir hym ... The chronicles do not mention the death of Richard's horse; see note 2342.

as we wretyn fynde: This reference to a written source might point to either IP or Ambroise (see note 6671); however, more often than not the romancer uses references to sources formulaically. Cf. notes 5482, 5849.

With that come Saladyne sonnes two: The chronicles do not mention Saladin's sons.

Pat his hede fell euen in two ... now am I sekire: Note the ironic speech of Richard who, after cutting the Saracen's head in two, says that now he is sure of him; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.

The rhyme Glorye ... victorye recalls the opening of the romance, ll. 1-2.

Sir Robert Sabuelle: Robert de Sabloel was one of Richard's vassals, a commander of Richard's fleet and one of the treasurers of the crusade; he was
one of the knights who took part in the negotiations with Tancred in Sicily. He became Lord of Cyprus (1191-2) and Grand Master of the Templars (1191-3); he is frequently mentioned in the chronicles (*IP*. Bk 2 Ch18, 165; *Chronica*, 36, 42, 45, etc.; Ambroise, l. 882, trans., 43) but he has not been connected with the negotiations with Saladin.

6955-6973 *thre yerre, thre monethes, & thre dayes ... Withowttene harme or any damage*: The formula – three years, three months and three days – brings to mind terms in other romances. For the terms of the three-year truce agreed with Saladin on 2 September 1192, see note 6749.

6975 *Torned hamwarde into Ynglande*: After the truce with Saladin, the romance ends in five lines (except for the version in A, see Textual Notes, and vol. 1 ‘Manuscripts’, p. 29 ff). Ambroise and Richard of Devizes also end after the truce has been agreed but *IP* concludes with Richard’s release after his captivity in Austria.

6978-6979 *Sythyn was slayne ... At the Castelle Galyarde*: Richard died from a wound sustained at the siege of Chalus castle, near Limoges, in 1199 (*Chronica*, 82-3; *Polichronicon*, 168). The erroneous location of castle Gaillard is understandable, as Richard designed and built this famous castle in a single year (1197-1198). Like the romance, Walter of Guisborough’s chronicle, which ends in 1346, places Richard’s death at Castle Gaillard. Moreover, Walter states that the truce between Richard and Saladin lasted for three years, three months, and three days. These coincidences may suggest that either both the romancer and the Guisborough chronicle have drawn upon the same source, or that the romance may have influenced the chronicle; see vol. 1 ‘Sources’, pp. 111-12. For a longer version of the end of the romance, see Textual Note.
Textual Notes

The following notes are designed to show how the text was established in case of emendations (the reading of the text appears as the lemma, followed by the readings of other manuscripts according to their sigla, with ‘MS’ indicating B). They also provide significant variant manuscript readings so that the reader can judge the differences and similarities between the versions; however, there has been no attempt to record every variant. Finally, these notes draw attention to interesting linguistic features in the text and record the scribe’s self-corrections, with \( \text{\textasciitilde} \) indicating that the letter/word crossed out is illegible. The sources for these notes are my own transcriptions of ABCDEH and, for L, King Richard in The Auchinleck Manuscript, eds David Burnley and Alison Wiggins, National Library of Scotland, July 2003, http://www.nls.uk/auchinleck/mss/richard.html.

1 Apart from B and C, the only other witness in which the opening lines have survived is L; they are reproduced here in extenso because they show noteworthy differences. For example, lines 1-24 are two tail-rhyme stanzas -- aab, aab, ccb, ddb – instead of rhyming couplets. L fol. 326\(^{1}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Lord Ihesu, kyng of glorie,} & \quad \text{& of Danys le fiz Oger;} \\
\text{Swiche auentour \& swiche victorie} & \quad \text{Of Arthour \& of Gaweyn.} \\
\text{Dou sentest king Richard,} & \quad \text{As his romaunce of Freyns wrou\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)t,} \\
\text{Miri it is to heren his stori} & \quad \text{Pat mani lewed no knowe nou\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)t} \\
& \quad \text{In gest as-so we seyn;} \\
& \quad \text{\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)is lewed no can Freyns non;} \\
& \quad \text{Among an hundred vnnejJe on,} \\
& \quad \text{In lede is nou\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)t to leyn.} \\
& \quad \text{Nopheles, wip gode chere} \\
& \quad \text{Fele of hemwald yhere} \\
& \quad \text{Noble gestes, ich vnderstond,} \\
& \quad \text{Of dou\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)t kni\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)tes of Ingland.} \\
& \quad \text{Perfore now ichil 3ou rede} \\
& \quad \text{Of a king douhti of deede,} \\
& \quad \text{King Richard be werrou\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)r best} \\
& \quad \text{Pat men finde\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)p in ani gest.}
\end{align*}
\]

5 & of him to han in memorie Pat neuer no was couward.

10 Boke men make\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)p of Latyn, Clerkes witen what is perin Bope Almaundes & Pikard; Romaeunce make folk of Fraunce Of kni\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)tes pat were in desaunce Pat dyed purth di\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)nt of sward: Of Rouland \& of Oluer & of pe oper dussepe, Of A\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)sander & Charlme\(\text{\textasciitilde}\)n & Ector pe gret werrer

15

7 nowe\(\text{\textasciitilde}\) C newe

The abbreviation of with is expanded in conformity with the spelling of the word elsewhere in the MS.

\(^{1}\) Karl Brunner’s edition gives a complete listing of all variants.
L. A Freyns kniȝt, pe douke Miloun (cf. l. 1277 in this edition); L passes from the introduction directly to preparations for the crusade.

From this line to the end of the column the MS is damaged.

fane] MS ſff...ſe; C ropes.

MS And they answerd righte sone at- with

MS To wyde landes hafe we ſeent ment

ewre] MS owre

MS And when they had mere nerehand etyn

turn] C tour

cornen] C iſcorn.

MS And tolde the kynge alſe per in resoun

Than] MS That

The] MS Bhe

228-446 Not in C due to missing folios; 228-269, unique to B.

this] MS pis this


gaffe too] C gaue hym to

wyfe] C lyfe

D starts.

D fol. 1:\n
On his scheld a dynt he sette
That top ouer tayl to grounde he ȝede,
ffor al ſhe strenthe of his stede,
Bothe hors and man he fel to gronde,
Wel ſhe hadde his dedes wonde.
Anoder knyte, hardy and goode,
Vpon a stede rede so blode,
He dede hym arme wel ſe pat tyde.

And thowe ageyne ſhe kyng to ryde.
A goode spere on hende he bare, 10
Kyng Richard of hyme was ware,
In to ſe felde he thowe to ryde
Ageyne ſat knyte wip mekyl pride.
Trompis hegonne forth to blowe,
And Kyng Richard in a throwe 1:
Met with in the iſfeld.
325 renkes] MS renk[...]; end of the word illegible, but it appears to be the standard abbreviation for -es.

330 forthe] MS for thi forthe

349 ff Note that, in D, it is Richard who strikes Multon; D fol. 1r:

384 MS And in the thride attire hit he dide hym do

395 ff Note that, in D, Richard strikes Doly; D fol. 1r-2r:

* H starts.
**A starts.**

441 ff

A fol. 252:\n
They hyden yerne in her way
And come to hym vpon a day.
Tho they come they kyng was glade,
And muche joy wip hem he made.
And seide to hem in mery soune:
‘Ye bene welcome, by Scynt Symoun!’

450

MS Tellis me he sothe nowe I sow praye

463

swart[)] MS smarte; C swart.

470

MS A course for his leman h lufe
leman lufe: There are a number of examples of inflectionless genitives in the romance; cf. ll. 1760, 2141, 2253, etc.

527

wherever] MS wherever

574

MS For xx come thou esfe one this manere

Between

606-607

ADH narrate the episode inverting the order of events: When Richard summons Multon and Doly, he first tells them they will go to the Holy Land disguised as palmers, and then he asks them about the tournament at Salisbury; A fol. 252:\n
Whan her covenant was ymade,
The kyng spake with hert glade:
‘My leue frendes, with gode entent,
How ferde ye atte tornament?
Cam any strong knyght to your play?
‘Ye!’ they seiden, ‘parma[yay.
An aventures knyght ther cam ryde,
In dyuers atyre, with muche pride.
He felde both hors and man,
Hym ne myght non withstond þan.’

610

610. Weren] MS Are weren

613-614

Unique to B.

653 ff

The episode of the capture of Richard and his barons in Almayne presents some differences in the A version; A fol. 252:\n
And he that in Almayne was kyng,
Hated Kyng Richard ouer all thing.
Richard and his felawes tooo,
Into a towne they weren agoo.
They toke her inne a Sebelie,
And yede o toune her mete to bye.

He swor his othe by heuene kyngge,
The minstrell that hath do this dede,
fful well he shall have his mede.
The kyng comauded his knyghte þo,
Blyue to the cite for to go
‘And nyme the palmers al three.'
They bought a gas to her mete,  
Hem longed sore soche flesch to ete.  
Kyng Richard the fer bette,  
ffouk Doly to the spite him sette,  
Thomas of Multron stamped the woxe,  
Wel dere they aboughte thulke gos.  
Whenne the gos was rosted well,  
In ther cam a mynstreel,  
And if hit hure will were,  
Of his myrthe for to hure.  
Richard hym answerede and seyde: ‘Nay,  
We mot eten and go oure way.’  
‘Ye bushe vncurteys, so me thenke,  
Ye ne biddeth this mynstrelel  
no drynke.’  
Ye were well better by this day!’  
Thus hymselpe he gan to say.  
His way he taketh faire and wel,  
Tille he com to be castell,  
Ther the kyng of Almayne was,  
And to the porter he made his pas,  
And seyde: ‘Wende in an hyyng,  
And sey pus to my lorde the kyng:  
Ther buth ycom upon his londe  
Thre palmers, Ich understonde,  
The strongest men in Cristiante,  
And ic wol telle whiche pey be.  
Kyng Richard that is so grym,  
And if barons that beþ wip hym:  
Sir fhouke Doly of renoune,  
And Sir Thomas of Multron. ’  
The porter yede into þe halie.  
And tolde the lorde thes wordes all.  
The kyng was glad of þat tythyng,  
And bryngeth hem all byfore me.’  
Sfforth thor way they nomen,  
To Richardes ytthey comen,  
And axed: ‘Ho is at june here?’  
Kyng Richard answerede with  
mylde chere:]  
‘We bost here palmeres three  
Oute of hethenesse now come we.’  
The kyghtes seyde on hyying:  
‘Ye shall speke wip oure lorde þe kyng,  
ssfor tythyng he wold hure fayne.’  
They toke the palmeres and went agayne.  
Whenne he kyng sey King Richarde,  
He seyde: ‘This is he, so Deue me garde!’  
This is my dedlich foo.  
He shal abigge or that he go!’  
The kyng axed the palmeres three:  
‘In my lond what seche ye?’  
He seyde to them: ‘Wij felonye  
Ye bene ycome my londe to spye,  
And some tresoure meto done.’  
Than seide Kyng Richard withe sone:  
‘Wes rmm palmeres, for sothe to sey,  
And wenden here in Goddes way,’  
The kyng named hym kyng by name,  
And c1eped him taylarde, and seid hym  
shame:)  
‘Blit as mycllcll as thou art kyng,  
And thes thy barons, wit/lOute le.yng,  
Ne semeth nought thus to he  
Therfi)r iell saye þat hit is right,  
Ye shull hene in a prison,  
And that is skelc and resoun.’

[pam] C hym. With pam, the line means that Richard’s words cause their sorrow (i.e. their imprisonment); C gives an ambiguous reading; Richard’s words may cause either him (i.e. Richard himself) or him (i.e. the minstrel) sorrow.

679-796 Not in C.

704 MS Of Ynglande þai seid Sir forthe forsothe bene wee

707 thou] MS þou thou

733 At the bottom of fol. 129, a later hand added: the king commanded them. See also note for lines 1117-1120.

742 ff A fol. 253b.  
He thought to do Kyng Richard shame.
ffor he was Holden, lc vnderstonde,
The strongest man of pat londe.
To the porter than seide he

751-752 Note the rhyme anone:nobleman; on:an rhymes are frequent and suggest that both vowels were interchangeable in NME. See vol. 1, p. 91.

778-780 The sone schane bothe clere and brighte] AD And toke wax clere and bryghte; W Waxe he toke clere and bryght.
And waxid his handis agayne þe fire] A And waxid his handis agayne þe fire; D Be þe fere he waxid his honde; W And wexed his hondes by the fyre.

Between A fol. 253va: And þus he yaf his buffet, / God yeue his sowle in heuen part.

827-828 In ABDHW but not in C.

857-858 Note the rhyme smate:rade; rhymes formed with both voiced plosive alveolar consonants appear elsewhere in the text, cf. ll. 1281-2, 3967-8, 4367-8, 6844-5.

874 vnwreste] MS vnpreste; C vnwrest

903 MS The mayden therof hade þer grete pite

Between C p.11a

918-919 Tyl þe seuenth day, sykyrly / He 3ede and com fol priuly

923 ff This passage is abbreviated in ADH; A fol. 254b:

Thanne was the kyng sore amayde.
'Alas,' he seide, 'Ich am betrayed,
That traitour hath my sone aslayne,
And my fayre daughter forlayne.'
Smertly the kyng, wipoute faille,
Let of sende all his counseill,
And of hem he axed rede
How he myght do Richard to rede.
He tolde hem all hough he had done.
The barons radde him also sone.
He hadde a lyon ina cage,
A wilde best and a sauage.

Men seide, were they togeder steke.
On him wolde his best awreke.
All they seiden hit shu/de he so.
15 Thanne was the kynges doughIer wo;
Whenne everych man slepte in the castell,
The mayde wente to the gaylere,
Her bedde she hadde therin ydight.
Bi Richard she lay all the nyghte.
20 And al togoders she tolde hym tho
How they hadde dampned hym to slo.

1008 MS Pat he solde dya thus thurghe false tresoune

1016 ther] MS the

1028 na] C now
In ADH Margery also gives Richard an Irish knife; A fol. 254va:

_and a scharpe Irissh knyf / As thow wolde saf my lyf_

MS What hym was beste and to hym sterte

Note the rhyme _slaynte:ane_, where a diphthong rhymes with a single vowel; this frequently occurs in the text, cf. ll. 1843-4, 2129-30, 2167-8, 2485-6, 2513-14, 2697-8, 3804-5, 4027-8, 4889-90.

Quere de Lyoun] A Quere de Lyon; C Coer de Lyoun; D Queor de Lyon; H Conquer de Lyoune.

In this short passage, the romancer uses historical present to inform the audience about King Moderd’s sorrow.

In the margin, next to lines 1117-1120, the same hand as in note 733 has added: _King Richard sones_. Evidently, the anonymous glosser misunderstood the passage, as the narrator is not referring to Richard’s son but to Moderd’s.

MS There _ ii _ twa chaleces in be

C p. 14b:

_Anf'ziff her bee moo þen þoo / þe haluyndel schal come me too_

Although the abbreviation of the the word ‘lettir’ – _lre_ – may suggest that the expanded form should read _lettre, lettir_ is used in conformity with Thornton’s spelling; see l. 1199.

MS And in no manere þat þe ler lre faile

MS To London he rapede hym onene onone

C p. 16b:

_pey pankyd God al so blyue / þat þey sey3 here lord on lyue_

Unique to B.

MS _paire childre paire londis or paire lyf fe wyfe_

C p. 17b:

_ffond he no man hym to myssay, / Ne wip euele hondes on hym to lay_

Note the _–d:–t_ rhyme; cf. note 857.

MS _And the erle hym grauntede hym in þat stownde_

so says þe cronkylls] C so says our tale
MS And fled awaye with his wyffe lyffe; C Wyff.

L fol. 326\textsuperscript{th}:
King Richard fenge his dignete
\textit{Bope} he kinges 3erd & he croun.
At Winchester, in he gode toun

Final four minims of bygun subpunctuated.

kynges ] C kny\textsuperscript{3}tes; C appears more accurate, see Explanatory Notes.

Unique to B.

Between C p. 18\textsuperscript{th}:
\textit{Erchbiseek Erchbishop Bawdwyns}

A fol. 255\textsuperscript{va}:
To Marcellly he wente ful right
With barons and many a knyght,
With schippes, galies, grete and smale,
Ne couthe no man but God that talc

Unique to B.

day] MS \textit{be thirde hythyn 3e schall bam sene}; C \textit{be thirde day}.

Unique to B.

MS And talowe ande and grese amang also

Wannowe fadir, now what] MS Wannowe, ffadir, what now what;
C What now fadyr hou is pat.

gentill ] MS gentill gentill

3ow] MS Giffe pat wille be mylde of mode; C zyff 3e wole be mylde off mood

MS Pat it redy; C Ready is it I off be took / Redy is al by tresore. It is evident that the repetition of redy is not Thornton’s error; the duplication must have happened earlier in the manuscript transmission, as C suggests.
1622  MS *pan*  &[ ]
1654  Thefe] C *ffyr*
1675  wynd] MS *wynde wynd*
1685-1686  Unique to B.

Between 1704-1705

C p. 24a:  Hou Kyng Richard was come fro ferre, / Wip gret strengpe on hym to werre
In ACH but not in BDL.

1705  MS Kyng *Richard* Rogere smote pese with his gloue
1720  Pys] C Rys; L Riis; see Explanatory Notes.
1732  MS *For to slee in heythnesse faste of be blode of be panym*
1745-2476  Not in C due to missing folios.

1767  swyne] MS *swyne swynne*
1808  MS *Now luflu lorde now takes youre freere gere*
1825-1826  Unique to B.

1835-1836  The rhyme *zatis: therat* seems wrong; the mistake may be in the use of the
plural, instead of the singular *zate*; cf. ll. 4303-04, 4393-4, 6628-9.

1842  MS Righte *ber* sall men garre 30w habide
1851  MS *At morne he sent 10 his conselers*
1852  MS *And of the see 10 his maryners*
1861  sere] DHL *sex; W syxe."
1864  men] MS *me*
1866  Matte Griffoun] A Mau de Griffoun; C *Mate Gryffon; D Mat de Grifone;
H Mawnge Gryffoune; L M. Griffoun
1867  Legible part of E starts.

1929  Here] MS *He; DL Her; W Here."

Between 1944-1945  D fol. 11":

Wip a swerd oone hond ydrawe Many a Grefone he has yslawe
The following passage, in ADEH, mentions Richard’s historical mother, Eleanor of Aquitaine, and his marriage to Berengaria of Navarre; cf. notes 2052, 2070, 2464, 6034. See also Explanatory Notes 37-229.

A fol. 258th:
His moder sent hym a faire present.
Elianore brought him Beringer,
The kinges daughter of Navere.
Kyng Rogeris wife cam wip here than,
Jhoaue sche hyghte, a flayr woman.
Kyng Ric the precyous Beringer he shulde spouse,
And he sayde: ‘Nay, not in hat sesouns!’
He nolde her spouse amonge pe Griffouns.
After Ester, uf he hade lyf.
He wolde her spouse to his wyf.
Alianore her leue toke,
And wende home, so sef pe boke.

A fol. 258th:
Johan and Beringer his wyf
Dude him byfore to arif.
Kyng Ric. come after, so seith pe boke,
All his grete nawes for to loke,
ffor the tempeste, and for the wawes,
and eke for the maistres outlawes
Also in DH.

MS Towarde Cipirs als het with fynde pe wynde

Launson] ADH Lymatoun; C Lymosowne.

Therin was Johan and Beringer, / That folke hat was Kyng Ric. dere
Also in DH.

Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

MS At pe hauen to do

Unique to B.

he tofrappede] MS he to for frappede; A he tofrapede; W tofrapped

Bihete] MS hete; A byhote; D beheyt; H behight.
On fol. 139v the name ‘Nettylton’ is written several times along the right margin; cf. fol. 49r where ‘John Nettleton his boke’ is written on the margin.

The rhyme vs:Jhesu (cf. ll. 2881-2, 2887-8) suggests that, although the abbreviation is not explicit, the final –s in Jhesu was understood.

MS And that he come arely to more morowe

MS And homage to me by yeld by sire tome or bere

MS And there he fande may many a full grete sire

Inverted in MS.

MS And I the saye wordes with wordes fewe balde

MS And keste hym into a galaye galy

werne] error for were (war); the rhyme requires –erne and the word werre on the next line suggests that Thornton intended to write werne; ADH werre.

ADH include Richard’s historical marriage with Berengaria of Navarre:

A fol. 260v:

There Kyng Ric spoused Berenger,
The kynges daughter of Nauuer,
And made ther the richest spousyng
That ever make any kyng,
And coroned himself emperour,
and her emperice wip honoure.
And thus Kyng R. wonne Cipres,
God graunte his soule heuene blys!

[pis Kyng Richerd] MS pis Kyng pis Richerd

Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

Thornton, or his exemplar, probably failed to copy these lines because of an eyeslip, mistaking the second occurrence of chafer four lines below the first.

ADH include Richard’s historical marriage with Berengaria of Navarre:

A fol. 260v:

There Kyng Ric spoused Berenger,
The kynges daughter of Nauuer,
And made ther the richest spousyng
That ever make any kyng,
And coroned himself emperour,
and her emperice wip honoure.
And thus Kyng R. wonne Cipres,
God graunte his soule heuene blys!

[pis Kyng Richerd] MS pis Kyng pis Richerd

Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.
MS Pat pay Sarazenes; C Pay were Sarezines.

that] MS theire; ADH that.

axe] MS with myn I schall; C myn axe.

MS Than his auxe als tite was to hym broghte hym.

MS Pat Kynge Richerd was neuer his dede so new

wane] AH entred; D came; E come.

Between C p. 26°:
2580-2581 For non armour wipstood hys ax / No more pan a knyff dos he wax.

2593 MS Hoked and quarelle arowes & quarells

Between C p.27ª:
2605-2706 bus Kyng Richard wan be drowmound / porw3 Goddes help & Seynt Edmound.

Between D fol. 20ª:
2636-2637 He carf be chayne pat bei myth se, / pat bothyn endys fellyn in pe see.

Between C p. 27ª:
2648-2649 Taboures & hornes Sare3yneys / be see brente all offfyr Gregeys.

A fol. 261ºb:
The Saracenes were in Acres toune
To be walles rone wip gret randoun
And of pe fare pey hadde wonder;
For wilde fer brent aboue and vnder
And alle Cristen kinges and pages
Erles barons and bondages
To be see wente afterward
To see the comyng of Kyng Ric,
ffor to see the galies saile
His mynstrallsye and his apparallle,
ffor they ne sey neuer suche a comyng
Into Acres of no Cristen kyng.

2673-2677 Unique to B; but ll. 2673, 2674 and 2677 in W.

2697-2698 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

2722 dedly] MS dedy

2747 The word ‘And’ has been written outside the ruling, then crossed out and re-written further on the right.
Between 2785-2786

AE They saye pe Sarazenes weren prowde; C Seyjen; D They seydyn;
L pai seyje.

Ill. 979-998 (fol. 131) have been mistankenly copied and then crossed out. A possible explanation is that Thornton inadvertently started copying from a quire he had used before.

2812

And comen afftyr ffaste fflyn ging] missing in B, supplied from C p. 30b; also in ADL. Thornton, or his exemplar, must have failed to copy the line.

2830

baroun] MS broun

2831

Ynglange] MS Ynglane

2881-2882

The rhyme Jhesu:vs (cf. ll. 2307-8, 2887-8) suggests that, althouth the abbreviation is not explicit, the final -s in Jhesu was intended.

2898

areryde] MS areryrde

Between 2916-2917

C p. 32a:

And hydde hem in a deep seler / pat non off hem durste come ner

2919

Final word illegible through binding.

2935

In] MS I

2958

seene] MS men myghte it pe contre; A se it; C it sen; D hem sen.

2981

depaintede] MS departede; AD ipeynted; C depayntyd; E peynted.

3010

C Suse Seynours has armes lost; also in ADE.

3028

C hou3 his pauyloun hadde be on fere; similar in ADE.

3070

men] MS giff pat his solde; C his men scholde.

3077

slyke] C swyche; missing in B through trimming.

3088

C Openyd & hys hyde off fflayn

3106

Three folios, which have been torn out, are missing in B; their text will be supplied from C. The same editorial decisions apply to the transcription from C. See vol. 1, pp. 43-5.

3126

MS And hadden ny3 entryd in be comoun
Gage] A Gage; D Solage; W Cage.

MS When Kyng Richard hadde restyd a whye

MS Pat ye neuere 3it dede amis

styrte] DW vnderfonge

Final letters in ‘fable’ not visible through binding.

MS And into presoun toke hem jare

MS brouȝt

MS Stylly goo you to he presoun

MS Priuylly lat slee hym hem withinne

Final letter in ‘born’ illegible through binding.

MS Anon dede he kynges bre heste

Final letters in ‘welcome’ not visible through binding.

First letter of each line illegible through binding.

E pey hadden all grame

MS Off here kynde blood pey we’re

Final letters illegible through binding.

Kyng] MS Kyn

tables] E Richardes table nyȝe; MS damaged.

MS An hed soden off Sareȝyn

on] MS non

Note the group of five lines with the same rhyme; cf. ll. 6952-6 and 6147-9.

Between C p. 43b: Ne eete off flesch baken ne brede

MS damaged; first word illegible. C 3e schole gon in saff condyte; E 3e shal go hoome i. s. c.
3660-3681 Unique to B.

3668 sippttede] An example of metathesis.

3677 MS Why soffre \textit{jeou} pam thus to done vs this schame

3691 C Geue hym siphe he wole no golde

3713 MS And also in were to \textit{xx} bee bolde \& wysse

3715 lyffes] MS lyffves

3716 Saladyn] MS Ssaladyn

3726 Bogy] A Auboge graundre; C Bogye; D Bossye; E Libie; W Voygre.

3732-3733 Unique to B.

3753 wote] MS wote wote

3768 Sayntours] A seynours; C seynyours; D sargnures; E seignour.
tues tues] A tweys tweys; C tuez tuese; D tues tues; E touz touz.

3773 ff The upper part of fol. 145 has been torn out; as a result, the first eight lines of fol. 145r and 145v are either incomplete or missing (cf. notes 3811, 3851, 3877). These lines are supplied from C p. 45b ff. The incomplete lines in B fol. 145a are transcribed below:

\begin{quote}
And ...
And thus ...
God graunte ...
\textit{Mery es} ...
When leues ...
And flourys spryngen ...
And smalle birdis syngen ...
\end{quote}

Between 3775-3776 C p. 45b:
\textit{Hys dougty dedes whoso wyl lere, / Herkenes now, \& ze mowe here.}
Also in ADE.

Between 3793-3794 C p. 46a:
\textit{To herawdes, \& to dysours,}
\textit{To taboures, \& to trumpours}

3800-3801 Unique to B.

3804-3805 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

3811 The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145b are supplied from C p. 46a (cf. notes 3773, 3851, 2897); l. 3818, the only partially legible in B reads:
Pat ... this townn to wynn

3819 MS To ride forthe forthe and we begynn; C To ryde ffourth lat vs begynne.

3851 ff The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145a are supplied from C p. 46b (cf. notes 3773, 3811, 3897); l. 3859, the only partially legible in B, reads: Als Kyng Richerd ...

3860-3861 Unique to B.

3887 Toborett] MS Roborett; C Taburette. Note that on ll. 646, 4760, and 4801, Thornton spells it as Taboret (vr. Taboreth).

3897 ff The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145b are supplied from C p. 47b (cf. notes 3773, 3811, 3851). Only ll. 3901-03 are legible – albeit incomplete – in B:
...
yralle
...erryabaut
...de or pou gyff vs assaute

3905 C Profere hem to knele adoun

3911 C Grauntip pe wip herte ffyn

3945 vnryde]} C gan ryde

3971-3976 Unique to B.

3975-3976 Note the rhyme hundrethe-wondre, which suggests that the final –the in hundrethe may have been voiceless.

4018 MS Gaa to w pe walles

4027-4028 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

4030 MS And Kyng Richerd sent of his folkes

4031 C On hey3e laddres for to gon in

4048 MS Kyng Richerde ne sall "- neuer saffe -\textemdash pam-"

4051 C ffor scorn he gan to law3e schrylle

4055 MS Sarazenes ther ful strongly kyd per myghte; C Pe Sarazynes kydden here my3t.

4069-4070 C Sauely pou schalt in come / In lytyl whyle it schal be nome.

4088 C Al so mekyl as \textit{bye} wolde haue.
And in the prys toure an heghe pay sett; C But in a tour on an heyr schaffite.

To sla hym and his folke bede to be dere to lede

Unique to B.

Unique to B.

Salle suffre his dedis dayes

Unique to B.

Stryke] MS Sryke

MS and lystenys newe how

MS Couerde full full close

Unique to B.

tydandes] MS tydanes

sayd be Sarayyne] MS sayd be said be; puta[ile] trimmed.

Into the sfynge a stane grete; C Into be toun pou sfynge a ston grete

C Stondynge hous wil he non lete

MS sethe their flesche & reste roste

Unique to B.

yschewede owte] C wenten out

3ate] MS strete; C yatis; Ynglys] C Cristyn

Ynglys] C Cristene

Unique to B.

MS be riche yng ynoghe perone

Unique to B.

Unique to B.

Note the –d:–t rhyme; cf. note 857.
amountte] MS a m mountte

C but fewe Sarazynes

Unique to B.

Note the unusual rhyme threve:ynoghe; the most frequent rhyme-word for ynoghe is another word ending in -oghe (cf. ll. 55-6, 1043-4, 2147-8, 2675-6, 4741-2, 6744-5). Note, however, ll. 4433-4 where ynoghe rhymes with abowte, which suggests that the final consonant may have been rendered voiceless when reading aloud or performing.

gromme] C grut

C pe archers al off pis lande

toun folk ne gaff no tale

And when Sir-.was warre of hat ilke case

Note the unusual rhyme abowte:ynoghe; cf. note 4387.

[peche] MS ȝett; C ȝach.

dore] C ȝach

beuerage] MS buerage.

Inglys slewe alle that they toke; C Pe Ynglyssche.

Unique to B.

Unique to B.

Amanges pe townn folkes her was gamen; C Among pe toun ffolk was no game.

es grete & this fire

Pe sop to say in sertayn tales

MS & pe holy gaste goste

Thurghe Sir sydis and thurgh throte

Unique to B.
4619-4620 Unique to B.
4627-4628 Unique to B.
4635-4636 Unique to B.
4681-4682 Unique to B.
4684 C In every lane & in every strete
4686 ...MS By nyghte & day were for to make; C warde to make.
4707-4710 Unique to B.
4716 MS Pay pat pay broghte
4725-4726 Note the rhyme fishe-Ynglis, which suggests a change in pronunciation from the alveolar (s) to the post alveolar (sh) fricative.
4733-4734 Unique to B.
4747 MS -oste. Myn.-pay slewe alle there als pay forthe 3ede
4766-4769 Unique to B.
4774 C Cursyd be he pat by werk alowe
4792 jitt] Probably an error for 3ede; however, 3itt is more appropriate to rhyme with wiete.
4836 Thornton self-corrects by superimposing ff (of ffuke) on an illegible letter.
4847 MS Pou gaffe lyfe for oure tresoure; C Pou gaff vs lyff for tresore
4868 C Certes Phelyp pou art nouȝt wys.
4883 C He glouryd & gan to syke
4889-4890 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.
4900 MS At no neede thynge to be oste solde faile
4906 MS By a faire neu ryuere pat highte Chalyn
4921-4922 In BDE but not in ACW.
4927 be Cristyn] AD Kyng Richard.
Between 4934-4935

And gan to crie with voy of mownde:
'Sleith downright thes hethyne hounde!'
Thus he gan to his men calle,
Abouten hym they comen alle.

4935-4936 In BDE but not in ACW.

4936-4942 In ABDEW but not in C.

4941-4942 In BDE but not in ACW.

4951-4952 In BDE but not in ACW.

4959 swerde| CDE fawchoun; W swerde.

4964 MS -pay- Pat-selle down dede one the sandys

4972 wretyn] unique to B.

4979 MS And alle pat he smate pan in that stownnde

4980 Sir Brawndisiche] A Bertram Braundirs; C Bertram Braundys; D Sir Brandyse; E Sir Braundys.

4995-4996 Inverted in C.

4999 MS Sone at xxx mornne pan let he crye

5001 Palatyne] AE Palastyn; C Palestyn.

5002 MS And aye one faith forthe by pe maryn

5005 vetaile] MS vetalle; the emendation is based on the usual spelling of the word throughout the text – vetayle (vr. Vitaile, vytaille, vytayle) cf ll. 1320, 1642, 1659, 2590, 2805, 3534 – which renders it more suitable to rhyme with fayle.

5022 Jasare] A Offere; C Lafere; DE La3are.

5023 Seynt George] MS Seynt j George

5024 Part of fol. 152 has been torn out; as a result, the best part of recto a and verso b, and all of recto b and verso a, are lost. The missing lines are provided from C p. 64ff. Line 5024 is transcribed from B despite being incomplete because it does not appear in C. The incomplete lines of B fol. 152 are transcribed below:
Between 5057-5058

Pay felled dow ... He wolde mete hym the ...  
Be walles also ... Bot Kyng Richerd ne made ...  
And the walles ... Bot for fat tythynge fas ...  
Bot Maydenys ... And swythe lete lete thorow ...  
And the castel ... In the name of the hege h ...  
And by fat coste ... Pat pay scholde alle with ho ...  
Pat pay ne we ... Lygge alle fat nyghte by sore ...  
And alle this he ... And digthe theym alle redy ...  
Pat Kyng Richerde ... Pat with pe sowlane come the ...  
And when he hade ... One Saynt Marye even, pe ...  
Kyth Richerd than ... This ilke batelie done sch ...  
And sayd pe her wolde ... Full many was the hey ...  
Mete hym in the feld ... Pat with pe sowlane come the ...  
And with a launce aga ... Off Ynde, of Pers, and also of Bab ...  
Giffe so were fat he dor ... Off Araby, of Egipt, and of Sessoy ...  
Vndir pe cite of Arsoure ...

Between 5057-5058  

C p.64b:  
Off Grete Grece and off Tyre / And off many another empyre

5060  
Final letters of Arsour are illegible owing to damage; see note 5024.

5062  
hym] MS And with ther was; C wif hym her were.

5067  
Fol. 152th and 152ta are missing and supplied from C p. 64b ff; cf. note 5024.

5108  
ze] MS penne (a possible eyeslip as penne occurs on the following line);  
AE there nere; D was here nere.

5144  
had] MS He non help; AE had no help.

5154  
Owing to the damage of fol. 152, only part of recto a and verso b have survived (cf. note 5024). The missing part is supplied by C p. 66. The incomplete lines of B fol 152th are transcribed below:

...wiste of this  
...de Nys  
...range  
...le to lange  
...rrres of golde  
...euer wolde  
...he helde  
...ale in pe felde.  
...thyth manes hert,  
...sore smarte.  
...nde withdrewe  
...a kyng he slewe  
...amyralle  
...withowtten fayle  
...nce itselfe  

...his for Arsoure gan hynge  
...hen Richerde oure kyng  
...one the scholdre bane  
...d hym to pe sadill oneane  
...parede so the crownn  
...and heide helme felle per ryght dow.  
...one armours wroghte with hande  
...te Kyng Richerd axe withstande  
...ale ne bese noyte awoundrede  
...unce men sware he slewe ten hundrethe  
...als this es owte into Ynglys ydrawe  
...he ristede hym any thrawe  
...wed hym many a doughetey knyghte  
...helped full manly for to fyghte  
...layde one faste als pay were wode
...heytheyn kyngis twelue. ...pat pe valays rane alle one blode
...chyn he kernede ...Sarajenes sayde in their panylouns
...braste & pe Sarajene steruede

Between 5175-5176 E fol. 20v:
And of some he pared so pe crown
Put helme and hed fel adounce
Also in AD.

5179 be Frensshe says] A The French say; B [Fra]unce men sware; D The
romance seth.

5198 euer newe] C jnowy; A ynoghe; D inow.

Between 5199-5200 C p.67a:
He pouyte rescue Jakes de Nayn
And ar he come he was jslayn
ffor he & his sones anon
Were toffrusschydflesch & bon
He ledde hym to hys payyloun
In despyt of here god Mahoun
Also in ADE.

5209 bakwarde] A adounward; CD dounward.

Between 5241-5242 A fol. 268r:
Bacon, carcois, and veneson
Oure Cristene hadde so gret foison
That ther was nother more ne lasse
That wiste where hure good to tasse;
Also in DE.

5258 5258. ryste] ACE cheste; D reste.

5262-5263 Unique to B.

5272 MS And thane myghte -safely gange and ryde -we-

5278 Toke] C Odok

5285 nynete] C seuenize

5309 C And slo3 many an hepyn hounde

5314-5315 Unique to B.

5320-5321 Unique to B.

5322-5323 C Nynyue agayn þoo / þefore was Kyng Richard woor
5386-5389 Unique to B.

Between

5439-5400 And hys on arme pertoo / penne was hys floytyng doo

5458-5459 Unique to B.

Between

5461-5462 Of alle pat he wip hym brozte / Betere myzte pay serue hym nouyte

5462-5463 Unique to B.

Between

5465-5466

| Therfore Ric. without distaunce  | 3if he wolde without essoyn, |
| Sent after pe kynge of Fraunce  | Wende with him to Babylony; |
| He sojourned in Acras citee      | ffor had he pat citee woon |
| Pat tyme, as y telle it bec.     | Panne had we wel oure game bygonne. |
| He com to Ric. without faile,    | The sawdan ful of couetis, |
| And he him asked consaile.       | Peder he is fled, forsoth wyys, |
|                                  | As Ric. and Philip peder gon wynde, |
|                                  | Be sowdan sent faire and hende |

5494-5495 Unique to BW.

Between

5495-5496 There was no Sarazyn so stoute / That ouyr pe walles durst loken oute
Also in E.

5497 Pat] MS At

5506 MS Pare hade neuer with scapede thane

5526-5527 Unique to B.

5635 gud] CE Goddes

5638-5639 Unique to B.

5662 MS Thane full -agayne to heuen he went -suythe-

5666 crowchis] C arsouns

5672 crowche] C arsoun

Between

C p.74b:
And affyr stey3 vp into heuene / Now God for his names seuene

Unique to B.

Unique to BW.

Kyng Richerde] CE Kyng Phelyp & Kyng Richard

And alle of:-hayyn powere .pe-

And scholde the fourte party.filladoun

Unique to B.

Between
C p. 75h:
And forstopyd pe lande wayes
hey myfye nowf flee in pe countrayes
Ne no socour to hem come
But jiff hey were slayn or nome

Unique to BW.

tellde] 'error for beten; possibly to rhyme with felde.

Unique to B.

[significacyoun;'] 'In significacyoun’ recalls lines 281, 339 and especially 391-92, where the same suymbolic meaning for a white dove is given.

In sygnysfycacoune ] C Significacyoun; E hat signified; ‘In significacyoun’

Between C p.76h:
God hymselff, Marye and Jhon / As he was naylyd pe roode vpon

MS At their wille euere ilk ilkane

Between C p.77h:
And hys peytrel & his arsoun / free myle men myjten here pe soum

Between C p.77h:
Hys gerfes & hys stropes alsao / His mere to be grounde gan goo

And* hundreethe

Unique to B.

Between C p.78h:
Kyng R. Wente be wode nere / He doutyd of encumbred

storye] C jeste; E bataile.

Unique to B.

MS This was appon - Jhones daye - Sayne -

Both] MS Bot

Between E fol. 28v:
And fonde yf you have grace
Of Saladyne to gete purchace
ffor by Seynt Thomas of Inde
Of my purchase you art bihinde

Between C p. 79h:
pat was in signyallnce / Jhesu Cryste to honouraunce

Between A fol. 268^va:
Therinne Kyng Richard dude Berynger
His quene that was hym leofand der
And Johane of Sisile, his suster-quen
For the myghte atte seo bene
Also in D; cf. notes 2048, 2052, 2070, and 2464.

Between C p.80^a:
chedyr myyte come be pe see
Off every good gret plente
He made here warde of noble knytes
Stoute in armes, stronge in fytes

Unique to B.

Between C p. 80^c:
Kyng R. Dwellyd wiþ honoure / Tyl þat Jaffe was maad al sure.

A fol. 268^va:
To Turrien they dude hem by Drem
flour myle fro Jerusalem.
Tho made oure Cristen ost gret blisse,
For they wende wel ywys,
Whemen þey had winne Jerusalem citée.
þey shuld haue gon homward a þen in her iournej
So they hadde do withoute faill
Ne had be Gauteris counsaile,
Sir Gauter of Naples, þe hospitiler,
Ther was he no good consailer
‘Kyng Richard’, he seide, ‘and thugh winne.’

That God was on to dethe don
High and lowe, sweyn and grom,
Smarty than wille wend hom
Ac turne ayen to Chaloyne
The wey lith toward Babiloyne
And drawe the yp to the paynym
And thugh shalt wel bisette thy tym.
Saladyn, the heygh soudan,
Thugh shalt hym sle or al quyke tan.’
Kyng Richard to his consaile hast,
They hit nere with the beste.
Many earles and barons bothe
For that consaile were wrothe,
Jerusalem with thy gynne
And wente hom to hurte contre
Alle the folk shal seeche the stede anon
And left Kyng Richard stille be.

MS I ne schall helpe neuer helpe ham to make

The first ‘s’ in byssege has been written over a letter that looks like a ‘g’.

Between C p. 81:
be duke awaye prekyd þenne / For ire his herte began to brenne

Between C p. 83:
be Longespay. be Eerl off Rychemound / Wolde spare non hepene hound.

E fol. 31:
Longespay and be Eerl off Rychemonde
They wolde spare non hepene hound
Al pat euer her swordes raunt
They cleuyd at the fyrst draunt
Ther dyed mony a Cristen man

do] MS for to soo; A do so; C to don soo; E so do.

MS And pay myghte suffre that no langere thrawe

MS Till payed be 3oure rauensoun

Between C p.81:
Or elles þe schole ryȝt there sterue / Lord þey sayde we schole þe serue
Also in AE.

In ABEW but not in C.
Between 6303-6304

E fol. 32v:

Herkeneth, lordynges, at pis tyme
Now cometh pe best of pis ryme
These lines also occur in D.

6309

MS For to ensege that ilk eite cite

6312

Above qwaynte, a later hand wrote: 'for lye was en[...]'.

Between 6317-6318

C p. 81b:

ffor he was fallen into elde / pat he myyte non armes welde
Also in ADE.

6319

Above wyse a different hand wrote: 'for þer'.

6326

MS Pat pay na noper lorde- of dignyte -hade.

6344-6347

In ABDEW but not in C.

6371

angelle] also in CE; W deuyll

6397

MS Pay dorste *** noghte byde

6399

MS Kyng Richerde withowtten dynt; ACE K. R. wan w.d.

6404

A stain obscures the last word of the line.

Between 6427-6428

C p. 86b:

I wole me so off hym bewreke / pat al þe world þeroff schal speke
Also in D.

Between 6433-6434

C p. 86b:

jis certes quod þe messangere / He wyl soo do by Seynt Rychere

6443

MS þe crown at Pasche, he bi gane to swere

6455

Thornton leaves the second column of fol. 160v blank and resumes on fol. 160v. Thompson (Robert Thornton, 68) suggests that 'the fragmentary nature of his exemplar is ... the most likely explanation for the deficiency in Thornton's copy at this point'. The missing passage (which deals with Richard's returning to Acre in order to sail for England, and Saladin's learning of this and attacking Jaffa) occupies about three hundred lines in C, but Thornton left only one column blank, which suggests that he did not know how much of the text was missing from his exemplar. Some questions arise; for example, if his exemplar was a booklet which ended before the missing lines, what happened when he found a new exemplar? If his exemplar had the missing lines but they were illegible, why did he leave only one column? It is possible, however,
that his exemplar had a blank column, probably to be completed at a
later stage, and Thornton followed it. For the missing lines, as supplied by
C, see Appendix 2.

enkerli] MS Schowse for the enberli my Barly gal; A Grethe smartly;
C Schewe me quickly; E Take me quickly.

The list of heroes also occurs in ACE; see Explanatory Notes and vol. 1,
‘History versus Fiction’, p. 139 ff.

C p.93b:
Hadde l be tyme comen hedyr / I myzte haue sauyd al togedyr

MS And pipede a note wondirly welle schille

In ABEW but not in C.

MS Pat was wroghte in mery ¥g Ynglande

MS And thurgh the of Godes grace of God in Trinylte

The only occurrence of gatis, instead of the usual spelling zatis.

MS And fullmany come owte

Inverted in ACEW.

girdille-stede] MS girdille stille

MS That vn tw to the sadill

no] MS mo

Twa hundreth] MS Twa C hundreth; C Twoo and brytty; EW Sixty thousand.

Not in C due to a missing folio.

Unique to B.

The word Amen, which is separated from the end of the sentence, might
have been added by Thornton himself, as it is not part of the rhyme;
cf. l. 6981.

Ynglande] W thyn owne lande

MS fra the thby dede flee
6712-6713, 6714-6715
Inverted in AE.

6781
MS Wele Wolde hafe had hym

6788-6789
In ABEW but not in C.

6804
C What pere were drownyd & what were slawe

6808
in the Franche romance] ACE In (the) Frensche yfounde

Between 6811-6812
C p. 95b:
Now he was pere now he was here / To gouerne hys hoost wip his powere

6819
A blot obscures the first letters of fande.

6823
MS Helpe now lord god and the holy croyce

6839
dales] unique to B.

Between 6843-6844
E fol. 43f:
he King of Marrok met him in pe felde,
Wip a sperc he smot him in pe shelde
pat he tumbled, samfaile,
Top saile ouer his hors taile
pat on his hed he lyt
He brak his nek I sowe plyt.

6844-6845
Note the –t:-d rhyme; cf. note 857.

Between 6905-6906
C p. 97a:
here halff pe body fel adoun / And pat oþir halff leffle in pe arsoun

6923
MS Bot thase fyve - sone hade he slawe -dukes.

6936
playne & den] A variation of the expression ‘doun and den’, here used to emphasize the number of corpses, which covered all plains and valleys.

6940
Glorye rhyming with victorye (in BCEW) recalls the opening of the romance, ll. 1-2.

6944 ff
C p. 97b:
And Sere Wylyam Watewyle,
Huberd & Robert Tourneham,
Gawter, Gyffard & Jhon Seynt Jhan
And bad hem...

6952-6956
Note the rhyming group of five lines instead of two couplets; cf. ll. 3629-33 and 6147-9.
The end of the romance in the A version is unique on two counts; first it is longer than the other versions, and second, it combines verse and prose. Note that the words 'prose' and 'verse' were written by the scribe in the same way as they appear in the following transcription.

A fol. 275c:

The duk of Ostrich in the castel
With his ost was dight ful wel.
The wedur was hot in someres tide,
King Richard thoghte ther to abide
At Gailard, vndur the castel,
He wende he myghte haue kelid hym wel
And bysegid the castel Gailard.
Bysyde Lemoes & strongly assailed it
so that the vii kln of Aprile, as the
kyng went aboute the castelle to
avise hit — unarmed — a knyght eleped
Peris Besile, sodenly bende his
arblast vpon the walles and haply with
a gayn smot the kyng in the lifte
shuldre & made dedelu wondere.
Kyling Richard tho let his men calle
And bad hem dighite alle,
& swor by see and sunne,
Til that castel weren wonne,
Sholde mete ne drinke
Neuere in his hody sinke,
He set vp Robynet in that tyde,
On that on castel side,
& on that othur half of the toun
He let arere the Maude Griffoun;
And to the castel hit throw stones
& breke the walles for the nones.
And withinne a litel tide
Into the castel he gan ryde
& slogh bfore & bihinde,
That he myghte to fore hym fynde.
And euere byleued the quarell
Stikynge faste in his sheldr
And when the kyng sey that he was
in perile of deth he let ofsende iij
abbotes of Cisteaux ordre, that is of grey ...[ends abruptly]
Appendix 2

The following lines, supplied from C (Gonville & Caius College Library, MS 175/96), complete the gap of two hundred and eighty-nine lines in the text between lines 6455 and 6456. The same editorial decisions apply to the transcription from C.
And as he pouȝte in hys herte,  
A stout Sarȝyn gan in sterte  
Þat ouȝte Kyng Richard raunsoun  
For þe wynnyng off Daroun.

5  
He spak to þe kyng apertelyche  
Among þe peple þore & ryche:  
‘Sere, þou schalt aqyte me here,  
And alle oure oþer hostagere,  
þorwȝ my queyntyse & my gynne,

10  
I schal doo þe greet tresore wynne.  
More þen an hundyrd þousand pounde  
Off floryns boþe rede & sonde  
Off Saladynes cheeff tresore,  
And mekyl ryhchesse of here store.

15  
Þerto I laye in hostage my lyff,  
And my chyldre and my wyff.  
But ȝiff I dooþe to wynne þat preye,  
One euele deþ do me to deye.’  
Quod Richard: ‘þou myscreaunt,  
Tel me now what folk it is,  
I wene it is but al feynys.’

20  
‘þou þat lede þe tresore, saunt fayle,  
Sere, þey are þre þousand chamayle,  
And fyue hundyrd þer are alsoo

25  
Off asses & mules & ȝit moo  
Þat leden gold to Saladyn,  
Tryyd sylvyr & tresore fyn,  
Flour off whete & spysory,  
Cloþis of sylk & gold þerby.’

30  
Sayde Kyng Richard: ‘So God þe deme,  
Is þer mekyl peple þe tresore to þeme?’  
‘ȝe, sere,’ he sayde, ‘þer are before  
Knyȝtes rydande syxty score,  
And afftyrward þousandes ten

35  
Off swyþe stronge heþene men.  
I herde hem speke in rownyng,  
Þey were afferyd off þe, Sere Kyng.’  
Quod Kyng Richard: ‘þey schal it fynde  
Þowȝ þer were syxty þousynde,

40  
And I were but myselfff alone,  
I wolde mete hem euerylkone.  
Doo now sey me anon ryȝt,  
Where may I fynde hem þis nyȝt?’  
þe Sarȝyn sayde: ‘I þe telle

45  
Where þou wylt abyde & dwelle,  
Here be souþe, mylys ten,  
þou may fynde þe heþene men.

1 One line of the couplet is missing.
be ye wole resten & abyde
Tyl more folk come be per ryde.'

be kynghymgraypid, & wente anon
Hys barouns affyr euerykon.
Al bat nyzt wip fayrcouey,
be ye rede forp by be wey.

Penne sayde be spye to be kyngh:

`Sere, make here by restyng,
be ye are loggyd in his toun.
I wyl goo & aspye be per roun.
Anon I wole to hem goo,
And brewe hem a drynk off woo,

And saye to hem bat Kyngh Richard
Is at Jaffe to Yngeland ward.
be ye wole leue me with he beste,
Penne wole be ye gon to reste.
Penne may bou to hem wende,

And slou hem alle faste slepande.'

`Fy, a debles!' quod be kyngh,
God geue be now an euyl endyng.
I am no traytour, tak bou kepe,
To sloo men whyl be ye slepe.

And ryzt now her I wole abyde,
Tyl I see be Sara3ynes come ryde,
Be cleer day vpon be feeldes,
be ye schole see clouen helmes & scheldes.
Be be dukes, prynces, or kynges,

Here schole be ye make her endynges.'

be Sar3yn be kyngh answerde:
`By pere is nouzt in myddylerde,
Ne non so mekyl off renoun,
Weel may bou hote Coer de Lyoun.

per are off Sara3ynes twoo so fele
As bou hase folk in his cuntree,
Certaynly, I telle beee.'

Quod Kyng Richard: `God geue be care!

perfore is nouzt myn herte sare,
For on off my Crystene men,
Is wurp Sara3ynes fyue & ten.
be moo per be, be moo I schal sloo.
And wreke Jhesu off hys foo.'

Forp wente be spye wip be
To aspye be hepene men.
Al he spyyd here compassyng,
And tolde it Richard, our kyng.
He gan crye: 'A3 armes, 3are!

Coer de Lyoun, loo now bey fare!'

Anon leeb Kyng Richard
Vpon hys goode stede Lyard,
And hys Ynglyssch & his Templers
Lyȝtly lopen on here destrers,
In the name off þe Holy Goost.

As þe Sareȝynes wip here nobelay
To þe sawdon were in here way,
Kyng Richard smot hem among.

þere aros no blyssful song,
But to Termagaunt & Mahoun
þey cryede faste, & to Plotoun.
Kyng Richard a kyng gan bere
Porwȝ þe herte wip a spere.

Aftyrward hys ax he drawȝ,
And many an heþyn hound he slowȝ.
Some he cleuyd into þe sadyl,
It bewepte þe chyld al in þe cradyl.
A kyng he cleff vnto þe arsoun,

þat hym halp nouȝt hys god Mahoun.
Many an heþene Sareȝynne
He sente þere to helle pyne.
þe Templers & þe Hospytalers
Wunne þere manye fayre destrers.

So longe þey fouȝte, so says þe story,
þat Kyng Richard hadde þe vycþory.
Porwȝ help off hys gode knyȝtys,
Stoute in armes & stronge in fyȝtes.
And manye scapyd wip dedly wounde,

þat ne leuyd nouȝt no stownde.
þey wolde affytȝ no more mete
Kyng Richard be wey ne strete.
Now may þe here þe wynnynȝ
þat þer wan Richard,oure kyng.

Hors off prys & gret camayle,
Fyue hundryd & ten, saun fayle.
Syxe hundryd hors of grete coursours
Chargyd al with riche tresours,
þat were in coffres bounden ferlye

Wip fyn syluyr & gold ful trye.
þer were þre hundryd mules & moo
þat penyys & spyses boren þoo.
þer affytȝ fyfflenþ hundryd asse
Bar wyn & oyle, more & lasse.

And als manye wip whete brede,
It was to Richard a gracyous dede.
When he al þis tresore wan,
Home he wente to hys men þan,
Into þe cyte off Bethany þe noble

Wip þat tresore & þe moble.
He gaff þe rychþ & þe lowe
Off his purchase good inowes;
He gaff hem destriers & coursours,
And delte among hem his tresours.

So Richard partyd hys purchas,
Off al Crystyndom belouyd he was.
Perafter in a lytyl stounde,
Come messangerys off mekyl mounde.

Pat opir þe Abbot of Seynt Albon,
Pat þe barouns scle,
Pat tolde hym his broþir Jhon
Wolde doo corowne hym anon,

At þe Pask, be kommen dome,
But he þe raþir wolde come home,
For þe Kyng of Fraunce wiþ enuye
Haþ aruyy whole in Normandy.

QUod Kyng Richard: 'Be Goddes payne,
Deuyl has to mekyl mayne.
Al here bost & here deray,
þey schal abeye it sum day.'
And þere he dwellyd tyl Halewemes
And þenne he passyd to Jaffes.

For seuen þer & þit more
þe castel he gan astore.
Fyftene þousand, I fynde in boke,
He lefft þat cyte for to loke,
For to kepe weel þat land

Out off Saladynys hand,
Tyl he agayn come myȝte
For to Yngelond, he has tyȝte.
And þenne he wente to Acres ward
 þe douȝty body Kyng Richard.

Now off Saladyn speke we
What dool he made & pyte,
Whenne he wyste off þat caas,
 þat hys tresore robbyd was,
And for hys men þat were slawe,

He waryyd hys god & cursyd his lawe,
And swor he wolde awroken be,
Myȝte he euere hys tyme isee.
Soo þat tyme a spye come in,
And sayde þus to Saladyn:
‘Lord,’ he sayde, ‘be blyþe off mode,
For I þe brynge tydynges goode,
To þyn herte a blyþe present:
Kyng Richard is to Acres went.
For ouyr he wole to Yngelonde,
For hym is come swylke a sonde
Pat Jhon hys broþer.  I þe swere,
Wole elles hys corowne bere.
Jaffes was astoryd aryȝt
Wip many a baroun & gentyl knyȝt.

200
Fyftene þousand, I wot ful weel,
Schal kepen wel þat castel,
Jiff he may so weel spede,
Tyl he come from his thede.
But see, lord, wipouten fayle,
Fro his body kyttes þe tayle.'
Oft was Saladyn wel & woo,
But neuere soo glad as he was þoo.
þe spye he gaff an hundrid besauntes
þat bouȝte hym þat presauntes.

205
And alsoo a fayr destrere,
And a robe iffurryd wip blausdenere.
þenne wolde he no lengere abyde,
He sente aboute on ylke a syde,
Vpon lyeme & vpon lyff. 2

210
Vpon chyldryn & vpon wyff,
þat þey come to hym belyue
To helpe hym out off londe dryue
Kyng Richard wip hys grete tayle.
To hym come many an amryayle,

215
Many a duke & many a kyng,
And many ful grete lordyng
Off Egypte & off Arabye,
Off Capados & off Barbarye,
Off Europ & off Asclauoyne,

220
Off Ynde & off Babyloyne,
Off Grece & Tyre alsoo,
Off empynes & kyngeomes manye moo,
Off alle þepene land, I fynde,
Fro þe Grekyssche See to Grete Ynde.

230
Charles kyng ne Alysaundre,
Off whom has ben so grete slaund[r],
He hadde neuere swylke an hoost.
In þe cuntre þer he lay a coost,
Fyue myle it was off brede,
And more I wene, so God me rede,
Twenty myle it was of lenghe,
It was an hoost off grete strengþe.
To Jaffe cyte þey come skete,
þe Crystene men þe ȝates dede schete,
þer was withinne a lytyl þrawe
On bope halff many man slawe.
So strong & hard was þat batayle

2 iyeme] MS lyȝe me
As it hadde fro heuene it ferde, wipouten fayle,  
Among þe swerdes þat were so bryȝt.
And euere þe Crystene ful weel fæȝt,  
And slowe Sareȝynes but it semyd nauȝt.  
For it ferde thar no man axen,  
As þey out off þe ground were waxen.

Þat no slauȝtyr off swerdes kene  
Myȝte þere noȝtyn þe sene.  
Þe Crystene fledde in to þe castel,  
And kepten þe ȝatys swyþ þe wel.  
Þe Sareȝynes haue þe cyte take,

Þe Crystene men þey þouȝte to awake.  
Þenne began þe Sareȝynes  
Vndir þe wal to make mynes.
Þe Crystene men for þe nones  
Al toffrusschyd hem with stones.

Þe Sareȝynys þede aboute þe wal,  
And þrewe & schotten in ouyr al;  
Many a brennande scharp quarel  
Þey schotte into Jaffe castel.

Þey souȝten where þey myȝte beste,  
Oure Crystene men agreue meste.  
At þe laste a ȝate þey founde  
Nouȝt faste schet at þat stounde.
þere þey fond strong metyng,  
Wip swerdes & speres ful greuyng.

To wedde þey lefft a þousynd men  
And off þe Crystene were slayn ten.  
Þe Sareȝynes þouȝ þey were stoute,  
At þe ȝate men putte hem oute.  
þe Sareȝynes for no nede

Þat day ne myȝte þey nouȝt spede.  
At nyȝt, þe þe mone cler,  
þe Crystene sente a messanger  
To Kyng Richard to Acres cyte,
And prayde þe kyng for Goddes pyte  
Þat he scholde come to hem þan,  
Or ellys þey scholde ben alle itan.  
Þey told þym þe harde caas  
Off þe sawdonys hoost hou it was,  
And but he come to hem anon,

þey were forlorn euerylkon.  
Kyng Richard answeryd anon ryȝt:  
"Weel I knowe þe sawdonys fyȝt,  
He wole make a lytyl deray,  
And al so tyt he wole hys way."

3 MS Myȝte þere noȝtyn
Glossary

Much of Richard Coeur de Lion’s vocabulary is open to a range of interpretations. Since it is not feasible to give all possible meanings in the side-glosses, their fuller range can be found here. Most of the words in the text are included in the glossary; the exceptions are words which have both the same spelling and the same meaning as in modern English (MnE), those whose only difference with MnE is that they are spelt with a final ‘–e’ (e.g. playe or saye), those which are spelt with a ‘y’ instead of the MnE ‘i’, or vice versa (e.g. bryng, hym, bi), and those which are easily recognisable. In the alphabetization, initial v is listed separately as vowel and consonant.

All variant spellings of the same word found in the romance are shown in bold at the beginning of the entry, separated by commas. Different meanings are given, sequentially numbered. Infinitives are the main entries for verbs, and its different forms (e.g. past, imperative) are shown in bold at the end of the definition, except for gerunds functioning as nouns and past participles functioning as adjectives, both of which appear in separate entries. The Middle English Dictionary and the Oxford English Dictionary have been the main sources of this glossary.

Abbreviations:
2sg. second person singular
3sg. third person singular
adj. adjective
adv. adverb
AN Anglo-Norman
arm. arms & armour
art. article
aux. auxiliary verb
coll. collective
comp. comparative adjective/adverb
conj. conjunction
dem. demonstrative
ecl. church, ecclesiastical usage
fig. figuratively
gen. genitive
ger. gerund
her. heraldry
impers. impersonal
inf. infinitive
int. interjection
intr. intransitive
mil. military usage
MnE Modern English
n. noun
naut. nautical
num. numeral
obj. object
OF Old French
ord. ordinal
p. past tense
phr. phrase
pl. plural
poss. possessive
ppl. past participle
pr. present tense
prep. preposition
pron. pronoun
refl. reflexive
sb. somebody
sg. singular
sth. something
subj. subjunctive
v. verb
abasched *pl.* be upset or perplexed (as by fear, shame, surprise); be afraid, embarrassed, surprised.

**abate** *v.* to put an end to or do away with sth.; stop; *pl.* abated.

**abawnn, aboffe, abouffe, abounne, abownn** *prep.* directly over; in the upper part of something, above.

**abore** *adv.* (?error for abere) bring to an end, cause to die.

**abowte** *prep.* in the vicinity of, near to; alle ~ on all sides of, surrounding.

**aby** *v.* to pay the penalty for a crime or an offense; to pay a penalty, suffer, be punished.

**abyde** *v.* to wait, be patient; to remain in a place; to face sb. in combat; to dare to do battle.

**accorde** *n.* 1) friendly sentiment, attitude, or disposition; goodwill; 2) agreement in sentiment, harmony of minds, unanimity; be at one ~, be of one and the same opinion, be agreed or unanimous; by one ~, by mutual agreement.

**accorde** *v.* to come to agreement or an understanding, to agree; *p.* accordide.

**acownnte** *v.* to count things.

**actoun** *n.* arm. also known as ‘acton’ or ‘aketon’, a padded and quilted garment worn under armour or as armour by itself. See Explanatory Note 373.

**adoun** *prep.* down.

**adrade, adred, adrede** *pl.* afraid, frightened.

**afferde** *pl.* frightened, terrified.

**affire** *adv.* & *prep.* after.

**afterwarde** *adv.* afterward.

**agaste** *v.* to frighten, terrify sb; *pl.* agast.

**agayne, agaynes, agene** *adv.* back or away from something; back to a place, back where one came from, again, homeward.

**agayne, agaynes, agene** *prep.* in front of, facing toward; against.

**agramede** *pl.* annoyed, provoked, enraged.

**agrefe** *v.* to disturb, trouble, or harrass sb.; 2) to distress or grieve sb.; *pl.* agrefede, agreued, agreuede, incensed, resentful, angry.

**agryse** *v.* to shudder with fear, awe, or dread; be frightened, terrified; feel awe or dread.

**agu** *n.* acute fever or an attack of it.

**ake** *n.* oak wood or timber.

**aknawe** *v.* to recognize sth. as a fact, acknowledge, know; ben ~, to acknowledge or admit sth.

**alblaste, alblastire** *n.* arm. a weapon for discharging bolts, stones, etc., consisting of a bow set crosswise on a shaft; a heavy type of crossbow, sometimes used to refer to oversized mounted crossbows meant specifically as siege weapons; an arbalet. ~ of vyce (or devyce), a heavy crossbow drawn by a screw mechanism. See Explanatory Note 1830.

**alblasterers** *n.* pl. mil. those who fought with crossbows or arbalets.

**alde** *adj.* old.

**alkyns** *adj.* of every or any kind; of all kinds; for ~ case, by all means, at all costs.

**allanly** *adv.* only.

**alle jife** *conj.* even if, even though, although.

**allere** *adj.* followed by a noun, denoting the total number of entities in a class or group: all; all without exception.
als, als, as conj. in clauses: in the way that, in the same way as, just as, as; how, as if, as though; used in comparative sentences, als ... als, e.g. als brighte als þe sonne dose thorowe þe glasse (l. 76); als whitte als floure (l. 138).

alswa adv. connecting sentences: in addition, moreover, also.
althir pref. with the superl. of an adj. or adv., of all, very; ~ laste, last of all.
amang, amanges, emange, emanges prep. 1) amid or among (people); in the presence of; 2) in or among (a crowd, a group); 3) between (two parties, persons, or actions).
amel see bee
amendement n. improvement in health, recovery.
amendide ppl. corrected, rectified (a wrong, an injustice, an error) put right.
amendis n. sg. or pl. reparation, retribution, amends (as for an offense or crime, or for harm done); make ~, make amends, compensate.
amis, amys, omys adv. in a wrong or mistaken manner; wrongfully, wickedly, sinfully; with evil intent; don ~, do wrong, commit an offense.
amyde prep. & adv. in or near the center, in the center, in the middle.
amyrall n. prince or emir under the sultan; any Saracen lord or chieftain.
amys see amis
ande, hande, honde n. the human hand; vntil hande, close by, handy, available, ready; come to hande, to come, become available.
andys n. the act of breathing.
anum n. as n. (remaining uses are adjectival): the number one.
anes indef. art. a, an.
anes adv. one time only, once; at ~ at once.
angyus n. anguish, agony, torment; suffering.
akire n. a ship’s anchor; ryde at ~, to wait on board ship.
amonnerde ppl. numbered.
anoghe, enewe, enoghe, ynoghe, ynough, ynowe adj. & adv. 1) plentiful, generous, abundant, great, plenty of; 2) sufficient, adequate, satisfactory, enough.
anone conj. & adv. at once, instantly, immediately.
anoye v. 1) to disturb, annoy, offend; 2) displease, irritate, provoke; ppl. anoyede.
apayde ppl. ben (wel) ~, be content or satisfied.
apere n. martial equipment or accoutrements, such as armour, engines of war, weapons.
apertly adv. openly, in public.
apairen v. to injure a person’s reputation or well-being, to slander.
aparelle v. to prepare sth., make preparations for sth.; make ready.
appon, vpon prep. & adv. upon.
apostoille n. 1) one of the twelve apostles of Christ; 2) the Pope.
aqwaynttes n. elegant clothes or costume.
aqwite, aqwitte v. to give sth. in return, pay for a service; repay.
ar conj. or; before.
araye v. 1) to put sth. in order, arrange; to get sth. ready, prepare; to marshall (men for battle); 2) to plan or plot sth., make plans for an action or occurrence.
are, ayre n. an oar; oars.
arere v. 1) to erect, set up a building or an engine of war; 2) place or set on high; raise (a banner) aloft; p. areryde.
arghe adj. of a timid nature, cowardly; afraid to do sth.; ignoble, worthless, contemptible.
arme n. 1) the human ann; 2) a weapon; pl. armes, the weapons of a warrior; arms and armour; as armes, arm yourselves, prepare for battle, to arms!; dedis of ~, deeds of arms; man of ~, an armed soldier (either mounted or on foot), a man-at-arms.

arme v. to equip oneself with weapons and armour, to arm oneself; armed at alle rightes, completely armed.

arsoun n. the uptilted front or back of a saddle, saddlebow; fore ~, pommel.
arte see bee

aschamed ppl. filled with shame or a feeling of disgrace; ashamed, disgraced.

aschappe, skape v. to escape; p. skaped.

aspye v. 1) to make stealthy or covert observations upon a person, place, or action with hostile intent; to scout out a territory; to spy upon; 2) to seek to discover or discover sth. by spying; 3) to catch sight of a person, thing, etc.; to notice visually; 4) to find out, discover, detect (sth.) with the mind; to perceive; p. aspyede, asspyede.

assawte v. to attack with arms, assault a city.

assaye v. 1) to try, test; 2) to engage sb. in combat; to assail or attack sb. or sth.

assayle v. to attack or assault an enemy, a city, a person.

assent n. 1) consent, approval; formal endorsement; 2) mutual agreement (of two or more parties).

assent v. to express agreement, agree.

assoyle v. to absolve sb. of sin by divine or sacerdotal authority.

atten n. intent, purpose; in ~, for a purpose.

athe n. a statement or promise made with an oath.

atire n. 1) the whole equipment of a knight, i.e. armour, weapons and mount; 2) attire, clothes.

auentayle n. arm. a piece of chain mail protecting the lower face, neck, and part of the upper chest

aughtyn ord. num. eighth in order.

aunntirs see aventure

availe, avayle v. to be successful; to be sufficient for a purpose; do good to sb., benefit.

avawnced adj. advanced.

aventure, aunnter, aunntir n. 1) a venture, an enterprise; a knightly quest; an adventure, an exploit, a daring deed; 2) a tale of adventures, an account of marvelous things; 3) fate, fortune, chance; pl. aunntirs, aunnters; in ~ 1) in danger, in jeopardy; 2) perchance, perhaps.

avisyou, vesyoun n. a supernatural manifestation, a vision.

avyse v. used as refl. to bethink oneself, consider, take thought.

avysyad}. well-advised, discreet, prudent.

awe n. fear, terror, dread.

awe to modal v. used to show when it is necessary, desirable or advantageous to perform the activity referred to by the following verb, ought to.

awen, awun adj. (their, his, its) own.

awnten, awntenrs, awntenir see aventure

awnterous, awntenrows, awntenrous adj. adventurous, wandering in search of exploits; ~ knight, a knight-errant.

awoundre v. to be astonished, to marvel, wonder; to be struck with awe or amazement; feel wonder about sth.; p. & ppl. awoundrede, awundryd, woundrede.
awtire n. the altar of a church; heghe ~, the high altar, the altar on which the Eucharist is offered.

awun see awenn

awundryd see awoundre

awunterous see awnterous

ay, aye adv. all the time, always, constantly, unceasingly; every time, in every case, on every occasion, again and again; for ~, for ever.

ayer, ayere n. 1) air, the atmosphere; 2) vigour, vehemence, haste.

ayle v. to trouble, afflict, or harm sb. or sth; what deuyU hym ayled at me? what the devil has he against me?

ayre see are.

ayther pron. both (of two), both things, both persons.

ayther, aythere, aythir, aythire conj. either (of two), either (alternative); either ... or.

azoure n & adj. the colour azure; blue.

babill n. a cutting, hacking, or grubbing implement: a falchion, halberd, pike, gisanne. See Explanatory Note 4619.

bacenett n. open-faced helmet with a rounded or pointed skull, often worn with an aventail and visor, basinet; see Explanatory Note 401.

bachelere n. 1) a young man, a youth; 2) one who has taken the lowest degree (in a particular subject) conferred by a university; 3) an aspirant to knighthood; a novice in arms, a squire.

bad, badde see bede

bake n. the human - or other animal - back; pl. bakkes.

balain n. whalebone, baleen.

balde, baulde, bolde adj. 1) bold, courageous; 2) confident, assured, certain; be thou ~, you may be sure.

bande see bende

bane n. 1) one who destroys life; slayer, murderer; 2) destruction of life; death, doom.

bane, bone n. a bone of the human body; pl. bonys; thee ~ thigh bone; schouldere ~ shoulder bone; cheke ~ cheek bone; swire ~, nekke ~, neckbone.

banere n. the distinctive banner of a lord or country, carried as a rallying-point in the van of battle, flown by a ship, or displayed on state occasions.

banne v. to curse or condemn; 3sg. bannys.

banne v. to pray for sth.

bannys see banne

barbycane, berbycane n. an outer fortification of a city or castle; a fortified gate or bridge; a fortification.

bare v. see bere v.

barme n. lap; breast, bosom; in our lady ~, at Mary’s bosom, in Mary’s arms.

baroun n. a member of the nobility, a lord; specifically a feudal tenant of a king or other superior, holding by military or other service.

barres n. pl. bars for bolting a door or gate.

barst see berst
batayle, bataylle, batelle, baytaile n. 1) armed conflict, warfare, combat; battle; 2) a body of warriors, especially as ready for battle; an army or a division of it; troop, company, battalion.
bate n. a boat.
bate v. see bette v.
bate v. see byte v.
batel v. 1) to engage in combat or warfare, fight; beset by an enemy; 2) of an army: to line up in battle formation or for an assault; p. batelde.
batelle see batayle
batellynge ger. combat, fighting; an assault.
bauld see balde
bawdkyn n. oriental cloth woven of silk, shot through with gold (or silver) thread, or brocaded; brocade.
bay adj. reddish-brown, bay; ~ stedis bay horse.
baytaile see batayle.
be prep. of location: near, close to, next to.
bedde n. a bed; pl. beddis.
bedde n. one who shares another's bed, consort, spouse.
bede v. 1) to offer sth., to give; 2) to demand, prescribe, or order sth., bid sb. to do sth.; 3) to make a request, beg for sth.; 3sg. biddys; p. bad, badde, bedde.
bedene adv. with n. or pron. as a group, one and all, all together; alle ~, in all, all told.
bee, ben v. to be; 1sg. ame; 2sg. arte; 3sg. es; imp. bese; p. ware, weren, weryn; ppl. ben, bene.
begyle v. to deceive or delude sb.; be false to, betray.
bekerryng ger. fighting, warfare; a skirmish or battle.
bekir, bekire v. to make an attack or assault; enter into or engage in combat.
bekyre n. a martial encounter or engagement; a skirmish, a battle.
bellys n. pl. bells.
belyue, belyve error for belyues, adv. quickly.
bemys n. pl. wooden beams used in the framework of a building, a ship, etc.; timber.
ben see bee v. sg. ame; 2sg. arte; 3sg. es; imp. bese; p. ware, weren, weryn; ppl. bene.
bende v. to turn, go, hasten; p. bande.
bendelle n. her. a narrow diagonal stripe, a bendlet.
benys n. pl. beans.
benysoun n. act of invoking a blessing on someone; the words used in blessing, a prayer of benediction.
berbycane see barbycane
bere n. outcry, clamor.
bere v. 1) to carry away; to carry sth., bring; to bear (weapons); 2) to push or thrust sth. or sb.; strike sb. hard; 3) to wear clothing, armour, carry on one's person; to endure sth., to bear; to ~ witnesse, to testify, bear witness; to act as witness; p. bare; ppl. borne; imp. beres.
berst, brest v. to be broken, fall apart, break, shatter; p. barst, brast.
besaunt, besaunte n. 1) a gold coin of Byzantium; 2) any of several similar coins minted in Western Europe.
beseke v. to beg, entreat, or pray sb., beseech; p. besou3te, bysoughte.
besett see bysette
bestis n. pl. beasts.
beswyke v. to act deceitfully, deceive.
besygewe n. arm. besagew, small round shield that was laced to the mail at the shoulder to defend the armpit; see Explanatory Note 321.
betake, bitake v. to give or grant sth., hand over, bestow; surrender; p. bitoke.
bete v. to kindle or replenish a fire.
beten see bette
betide, betyde, bityde v. to happen, come to pass.
bette, betyn v. 1) to beat, whip; 2) to strike sth., buffet sb., smite, slap; 3) to bombard sth. with missiles; p. bate, bett; ppl. beten, bett, betyn.
bettire comp. adj. better.
betyn gold n. also known as 'heuen gold', gold hammered into a thin sheet or leaf.
beynge [?error for begyne], bygynn v. to begin; p. bigane.
bidden v. to ask, beg, or plead for sth; p. bad.
biddys see bede.
bifalle, byfalle v. to come to pass, come about, happen, occur; p. byfelle.
bihelde, byhelde v. to observe or notice sth.; p. byhalte.
biheste n. a promise or pledge; a commandment.
bihete v. to promise sth.; promise to do sth.
binden v. 1) to tie sth. up, as with a cord; 2) to wrap sth., as in or with a cloth; envelop, cover; 3) to edge or trim (a chest, a shield, a wagon) with metal, reinforce; ppl. bowndyn.
bischoppes n. pl. bishops.
bisyde prep. beside.
bite see betake
bitoke see betake
blawe v. to blow a horn, etc., play a wind instrument.
blenke n. a pass, a thrust; maken a ~, to play a trick.
blenke v. to move suddenly or sharply; jerk, twist; flinch, wince, dodge.
blere v. to have watery or rheumy eyes; ~ eghe, to befuddle, hoodwink, delude (sb.).
blethily adv. gladly, willingly, eagerly, readily.
blissede ppl. blessed; gladdened, full of joy, joyous.
blithe, blysse, blythe n. joy, bliss.
blithe, blysse adj. joyful, happy, glad.
blode n. blood.
blode v. to cease doing sth.
bluye see blythe n.
bluyssynge ger. ritual sanction or blessing; benediction.
blythe see blythe n.
bode n. an edict or command, a prescription, a request.
bofete, bofett n. a blow delivered with the fist or flat of the hand; a cuff, slap.
boke n. 1) a book; 2) the Bible.
bolde see balde
bolles n. pl. drinking bowls or cups; goblets, tankards.
bolne v. to swell, become distended; swell from infection, poison, etc.
bone n. a petition or request; to ask a ~, ask sb. for a favour, make a request, petition or beg sb. for sth.

bonys see bane

boost, bost, boste n. 1) a brag, a boast; bragging, self-praise; maken ~ (of), brag (of, about); 2) arrogance, presumption, pride, vanity; fallen ~, cast down sb.'s pride, overcome sb.; 3) a band of soldiers; withouten any ~, a) without bragging about it; b) (in a narrational self-referential use) indeed.

borde n. 1) a table; a dining table; pl. bordis; 2) on ~ on board a ship, on deck.

borne v. see bere v.

borthe, bothe n. & adj. two together, both.

bost, boste see boost

bot conj. 1) but; 2) unless, ~ gif, ~ if, unless; 3) and.

bote n. 1) advantage, help, profit, good, benefit; 2) relief, deliverance; remedy; the cure of a disease or a wound, healing, recovery from illness; salvation, redemption.

boughe n. a branch of a tree or bush; a main branch; wode ~ forest boughs, the forest canopy.

boun, bownn adj. ready, prepared, armed.

bourre n. a lady's chamber; a suite for ladies, the women's quarters.

bowespret n. naut. bowsprit: a large spar or boom running out from the stem of a vessel, to which the foremast stays are fastened.

bowndyn see binden

bownn see boun

brade, brayde, brode adj. wide, broad.

brade adv. of position or extent: over a large space, so as to be extended or spread out, so as to spread sth. out, widely.

brake, brakke see breke

brande n. 1) burning fuel, a fire or flame; 2) a sword; a blade; pl. brandis; 3) a blow or stroke with a weapon; 4) an upright timber (usually carved or otherwise ornamented) at the bow of a ship, beak.

bras n. copper (ore or metal).

brase v. to make sth. of bronze; to cover with plates of bronze.

brast see berst

braste see breste

brayde adj. see brade adj.

brayde n. 1) a rash or hasty act; a move; 2) a deceptive act; a stratagem, trick, or trap; 3) an unusual occurrence or event; 4) a blow or stroke with a weapon.

brayne n. the brain.

bred, brede n. 1) bread; sour ~, leavened bread; 2) food.

brede n. 1) the shorter of two dimensions of a surface, area, or object; width, breadth; in ~, in width; one ~, abreast, far and wide; 2) a unit of linear measurement equal to the width or thickness of something specified; straa ~ thikke the thickness of a straw.

brede v. to cook meat by roasting or frying.

breke v. to break sth. into parts; dash to pieces; p. brake, brakke.

brekyng ger. wrecking of a ship.

brende see brennen
**brennen** v. 1) to be consumed by fire; burn, burn down; 2) to shine, glitter, sparkle, glow; 3) to treat sth. with fire or heat; *p. & ppl. brende; brende gold*, gold refined by fire, pure gold.

**brest** see berst

**breuste** *n.* 1) the breast; 2) a breastplate; the part of a garment or armour covering the chest.

**breuste** v. to break sth., shatter, crush; spring forth, burst; *p. braste*.

**brethire, brothire** *n.* brother.

**brigged** *ppl.* bruised.

**brithe** *n.* wrath, anger, vengeful spirit.

**brode** see brade

**bruke** v. 1) to have the benefit of sth., enjoy; 2) to possess sth., get, take, keep.

**bryme** *n.* a body of water, such as the sea, a pool, spring, river.

**brynge of lyue** *phr.* to kill.

**brynte** v. to be consumed by fire; burn, burn down.

**bulle** *n.* a papal edict.

**burgays, burgesse** *n.* 1) a freeman of a town, a citizen with full rights and privileges; an inhabitant of a town; 2) city merchants and master craftsmen in the guilds.

**burghe** *n.* a small village.

**buse** see byhoue

by and by *adv. phr.* one by one, one after another, in order; on and on, continuously.

**byonde** *prep.* beyond.

**byde** v. 1) to request, beg, or beseech sb.; 2) to address a prayer or entreaty to God or a saint; supplicate, pray.

**byde** v. 1) to stay, remain (in a place); tarry, linger; 2) to wait expectantly, or patiently, to await sth. or sb.

**bydene** *adv.* 1) completely, entirely, utterly; 2) immediately, forthwith; 3) as an emphatic, or for rhyme's sake: indeed.

**byfalle** see bifalle

**byfelle** see bifalle

**byfor, byfore** *prep. & adv.* before.

**byforene** *adv.* in front of, ahead.

**bygane** see bygon

**bygon** v. 1) to cover sth., as with blood; 2) to trim or ornament sth., as with gold, jewels; *ppl. bygane*.

**bygynn** see beynge

**byhalte** see bihelde

**byhelde** see bihelde

**byheste** *n.* a commandment, request.

**byhoue** v. 1) to be needed, required, requisite, or necessary; 2) to need; 3) to be constrained, compelled, or obliged; 4) must, should; *pr. buse; p. byhouede; imp. byhouys*.

**byhynd** *prep.* behind.

**bylaye, bylaide** see byligge

**bylefte** see byleue *v.*

**byleue** *n.* faith or devotion.

**byleue** *v.* 1) to depart from or leave a place; 2) to remain in a place, stay; *p. bylefte*.

**byligge** v. to besiege a stronghold, an enemy; *p. bylaye, bylaide*.
bymene v. to signify or mean sth.
bynommen see nine
byrefe v. to deprive or rob sb.
bysekynge ger. as n. entreaty, supplication, prayer.
bysette v. to invest or besiege a stronghold, an enemy, etc.; ~ aboute; p. & ppl. and p. besett,
bysett, surrounded, enveloped; wele ~, well directed.
bysoughte see beske
bystedde v. to beset or overtake sb; ppl. bystadde.
bystrade v. to mount a horse, ride a horse; p. bystriden.
bystwedde v. to deceive, delude, mislead sb.; betray, defraud, cheat.
bytaken v. to be a symbol or emblem of sth., represent symbolically, symbolize; p.
bytakenyde, bytakyned.
byte, bytt v. of a weapon: to pierce, penetrate, cut, slash; make a dent; p. bate.
bythynke v. to think, reflect, meditate, ponder; p. bythoughte; ppl. bythought, thought out, planned.
bytrappe v. to close in upon an enemy on all sides, especially by surprise or a ruse; catch as in a trap.
bytraye v. to commit an act of treason against sb., to betray.
bytt see byte
bytwene prep. between.
cabille n. the lines or ropes of a ship collectively; pl. cabills.
care n. 1) sorrow, sadness, grief; annoyance, vexation; 2) fear, dread.
carole n. a kind of round dance accompanied by singing; a group of people dancing and singing in a circle.
carolen v. 1) to dance and/or sing in a carole; 2) to sing for the dancers in a carole.
cart n. a cart, a wagon.
cartare n. the driver of a cart or coach; a carter, coachman.
case n. state of affairs, circumstances, situation; predicament, fate; an event, incident, occurrence; case; way, manner; for alkyms ~, by all means, at all costs.
caste, keste v. 1) to throw sth. to a distance, fling, hurl; 2) to hurl missiles with a siege engine; cast (stones, fire, etc.) with an engine; cast with a sling; shoot (an arrow); 3) to knock sth. to the ground; 4) to place sth., to put; p. caste, keste; ppl. casten, ycaste.
castell, castelle n. 1) a castle; 2) a movable tower used in sieges.
catelle n. 1) a large ship, a principal ship; 2) property of any kind; goods, treasure, money.
cawdroun n. a kettle or pot for heating water or cooking, a caldron.
caytyle adj. unhappy, miserable, unfortunate.
certeyne adj. for ~, with certainty, for sure, in fact, certainly.
cesse v. 1) to take possession; seize sth. by force; 2) put sb. in legal or formal possession of sth., give sb. possession of sth.
chafare n. 1) trade in goods, buying and selling, commerce; 2) goods, merchandise.
chalece n. the cup or goblet for administering the sacramental wine; pl. chaleces, chalessis.
chambir, chambire, chambre n. a room or apartment for personal use; a private room or suite; chamber, bedroom.
chancelere, chancellor n. the Lord Chancellor of England, in charge of drawing up, scaling, issuing, and enrolling such documents as charters, letters patent, and letters close while exercising certain equitable jurisdiction.

charbocle n. a precious stone, any of the gems called carbuncles; especially that carbuncle which shines in the dark.

charege, charge v. 1) to load a ship, a vehicle, a pack animal with, of sth.; stock a ship with provisions; 2) to order, request, instruct, or direct sb. to do sth.; to urge; p. chargede.

charge n. the cargo or freight of a ship, a wagon, a pack animal; a load.

charynge n. transportation of goods, a transport; burden.

charite n. pur ~, as an act of kindness, for the sake of charity.

chase n. the hunting of game; a hunt or chase.

chastelett n. 1) a small castle; especially a tower forming part of a larger fortification; 2) a small tower, a turret.

chasty v. to punish sb. for an offense, chastise.

chaunce n. 1) something that happens or takes place; an occurrence or event; by ~, by chance, accidentally; for ~ that may byfalle, no matter what happens; 2) one’s luck, fate (whether good or bad); euyl ~, bad luck; 3) an adventure or exploit in arms.

chayere n. a chair.

chepis n. grete ~ abundance, plenty, large numbers.

chepynge n. a market or market place in a city or town.

chere n. 1) the face as expressing emotion, attitude, or character; facial expression; 2) a gesture or act indicative of an attitude or intention; heuy ~, sorrowful of countenance; myld ~, gracious manner.

chese v. to select or choose sth. or sb.

chesse n. the game of chess.

chide v. 1) of birds: to screech; 2) to engage in an argument or dispute; to quarrel.

chiltrone n. a group of soldiers or an army in fighting formation; a tight battle formation or phalanx.

chyne n. a chain; also a chain of metal links used to raise and lower a drawbridge or portcullis or to bar a passage; pl. chynes.

cite n. a walled town or city, with its political organization.

clafe see clefe

clarre n. a sweet liquor consisting of a mixture of wine, clarified honey, and various spices, as pepper and ginger; clary.

clede ppl. dressed in a certain way, clothed in a particular garment or kind of clothing.

clefe v. to split sth.; cut open or apart; to break sth. up; dismember; to slash sb.; ~ doun, slice from top to bottom; p. cleude, clafe, cleff.

clene adj. 1) clean; 2) complete, entire, full, thorough; great.

clenly adv. completely, fully, wholly, entirely; thoroughly.

clere adj. clear.

cleude see clefe

clos, close adv. tightly, firmly, securely (fastened, closed, held, surrounded).

clos, close n. 1) an enclosed area: a walled or otherwise fortified place; stronghold; a courtyard or court; a close; 2) a wall or other fortification surrounding a city or castle; ~ dyke, a moat.
clothis n. ~ of golde, a piece of gold brocade; also, a garment, hanging, etc., made of cloth of gold.

clowte n. a blow or slap with the fist or hand; an ere ~, a box on the ear.

cofirs n. pl. a trunk, chest, or case of any size for storing or carrying valuables of any kind.

cogge n. naut. a ship of some kind (apparently of medium size and used in military expeditions). See Explanatory Note 60.

cole n. charcoal, or a piece of it; ~ black as black as coal.

cole v. to become cool or cold; to refresh oneself, cool off; p. colyde.

com see comen

comande, comaunde v. to command.

comandement n. an order, request, or instruction.

comen v. to come; 3sg. commes, commys; p. come, com; ppl. ycomen.

comon v. to discuss sth.

comonde v. (?error for comende) to compliment or praise sb.; to approve of or praise sth.

comonyng, comonynge n. the action of conversing, discussing, conferring, negotiating.

complexyoun n. constitution or general nature resulting from the blending of the four ‘humours’ in varying proportions; temperament or character as produced by the predominance of one of the four ‘humours’.

conqueroure n. one who wins a country, subjugates a people, or defeats an adversary.

consaille, consayle, conselle n. 1) a body of advisers to a ruler; an adviser, a counselor; 2) the act of discussing or conferring; 3) counsel, advice, instruction; 4) a meeting, conference, council; 5) a decision; a plan, scheme; 6) a secret, private matter, a secret plan.

consellers n. pl. counselors, advisers.

conteke, cuntck n. dissension, discord, conflict, strife; quarreling, brawling; the action of engaging in a physical encounter, in combat, or in warfare.

contre, contree, countre n. any geographic area or physiographic province, whatever its size: region, district, area, place.

conysable, conysance n. knowledge, understanding, information; any device, emblem, or badge by which a knight’s allegiance, a sovereign’s identity, etc., are made known.

cope n. drinking vessel; a bowl, goblet, cup; pl. coppis.

coronalle n. frontal; the frontal bone.

coronen v. to wear a crown.

corownnde ppl. ~ kyng, a king that has been duly crowned.

corse n. 1) a dead body, a corpse; 2) the body of a living person.

corst e ppl. under a malediction or imprecation; condemned to misfortune or misery; condemned to hell; damned, accursed.

cortaisely adv. in a courtly manner; courteously, politely.

cortays adj. noble, courteous.

coste n. 1) shore, coast; 2) a boundary, limit; an outlying district, border region; 3) location with reference to direction, side; bi a ~, in a certain direction.

costrells n. pl. flasks or bottles; wine-skins.

cote armour n. arm. an overgarment with heraldic arms.

couande, couaunde, couaunt n. an agreement, a contract; a promise.

couere v. to recover, regain (one’s health, strength, courage).

couertoure n. covering for the body; a garment, vestment.
course n. a charge in battle or tourney; a passage at arms; a charge with blunted weapons or with weapons of war; ride a ~ make a charge.
course n. (?error for courser) a swift spirited horse serving as a mount in warfare, tournament, or parade; charger, steed.
couthe see kan
cowntir v. 1) to meet sb. in battle or combat, attack, fight with; 2) to encounter; p. cowntirde.
craffe v. to ask for sth., beg, pray, request.
craft n. strength, force, power.
crack v. to utter words, speech; say; speak, talk, especially speak loudly.
creaunt adj. defeated, vanquished; crye ~, to cry ‘(I am) vanquished’, ‘I surrender’.
creste n. the crest on a helmet; a decoration, distinguishing mark, or heraldic device fixed to the top of the helmet; see Explanatory Note 275.
Cristundome n. 1) Christian faith and doctrines, the Christian religion; 2) the portion of the earth ruled by Christians, Christian countries or territory, Christendom.
Cristyante n. the Christian faith or doctrines, Christianity.
Cristynmesse n. Christmas Day; the season of Christmas.
cronykll n. a chronicle, a history.
cropour n. cover for the hindquarters of a horse, or a crupper.
crose, croyse n. a / the cross.
crossede adj. as n. one who has taken the cross, i.e. who is going on a crusade.
crown of thorne n. the crown of thorns, one of the Passion relics.
crown, crowne, n. 1) the top of the head, crown, skull; the head; 2) a crown.
crowche n. saddlebow; pl. crowchis.
crowppe n. the hindquarters of an animal, rump, haunches.
croysery n. a crusade against pagans.
cry n. 1) an announcement, a proclamation; 2) a public command, ordinance, decree, edict.
cry v. 1) to make public announcement of an event; 2) to command publicly that sth. shall be done, decree, proclaim; 3) to make a proclamation, declare sth. publicly.
cumpanyable adj. sociable, hospitable, kind, friendly, courteous.
cungir n. a large marine eel.
cuntek see conteke
curtaise, curtayse, adj. courtly or refined in manners, well-bred, courteous; considerate, kind; ~ and hende.
curtaisy, curtasye n. 1) refinement of manners; gentlemanly or courteous conduct; courtesy; 2) courtly ideals; chivalry, chivalrous conduct.
custome n. traditional or customary practice of a nation or group; established usage; a tradition or custom.
dale n. 1) distribution of alms or gifts; alms; 2) a valley.
dale, dele v. 1) to separate things or persons; to divide sth., divide into parts; 2) to give sth. to sb.; give sth. away, distribute as alms; p. dalle, delte.
dange see dinge
dare v. to have the courage to do sth., dare; p. dørste, durste.
darte n. mil. a metal-pointed missile, such as a javelin or spear, hurled by hand (perhaps also by the crossbow).
dasche v. to beat or roll drums; of drums: to roll, reverberate.
dawe n. death.
dawe v. of the day: to dawn.
dawnnyng n. the dawn.
dawnse v. to dance; p. dawnsed.
debonaire n. gentleness.
dede adj. dead.
dede n. death; for dede dowte, for fear of death.
dede n. 1) deed; 2) a heroic deed, military achievement; ~ of armes, a feat of arms; 2) a military action, battle, encounter, fight, tournament; ~ of armes, a passage of arms, a fight, combat; pl. dedis.
defawte n. responsibility for evil or failure, fault; for ~, for lack of sth.
defende v. 1) to defend; 2) to forbid.
defe n. a division, part, portion.
defe v. see dale v.
delte v. see dale v.
delyuerede ppl. released from prison, captivity.
demayne v. to rule sb., control, govern, command.
demene v. to use.
demyde v. to sentence sb., impose a penalty upon sb.; condemn sb. to death.
dene n. a valley; down and ~, hill and dale.
departen v. to separate persons, things; ppl. departede, her. separated palewise (i.e. following the line of a pale; vertically).
depe n. 1) deep water, sea, river; 2) the bottom of the sea, a ditch.
deraye n. confusion, disorder, disturbance.
dere adj. 1) excellent, fine, valuable, precious, prized; 2) costly, expensive, high-priced; dear.
dere v. 1) to dare; 2) to hurt, injure, damage, wound or grieve sb.; p. deryde.
des, desse n. a raised platform, dais, high table; the place occupied by a king, councilors, judges, etc.
dester, destere, dextere (?errors for dester) n. riding horse of noble breed, steed, knight’s mount.
dett n. debt.
deuers n. do ~, 1) to do one’s duty; 2) to do one’s best, do all one can.
deuysede see devyse
devoyde v. to leave, go away, abandon.
devyce n. intent, desire; at ~, at (one’s) pleasure or discretion.
devyse v. 1) to inspect sth., observe; inspect secretly, spy out; 2) to array a fighting force; make ready; p. deuysede.
deynte n. 1) excellence, elegance; dignity; 2) a luxury; a precious thing.
dighte, dyghte v. 1) to make preparations, get ready; prepare sb., marshal an army for oneself; refl. prepare oneself, get ready; 2) to give sth. to sb., assign, render; 3sg. dightis; ppl. ydighte.
dinen v. to make a loud and confused noise, resound; fill (a place) with noise; p. donyd.
dinge v. to beat sb., scourge; overcome in fighting, defeat; ~ doun, to knock sb. or sth. down; intr. to deal blows; p. dange.
disayse, disgyse n. disguise.
dishes n. pl. dishes.
dishonoure, dissaynour, disshonour n. dishonour.
dispitt, dispytte n. an act designed to humiliate, insult, or harm someone; humiliation, insult, injury, outrage.
dispoyle n. spoils, booty.
dispytte see dispitt
dissaynour see dishonoure
dissayte n. the action or practice of deceiving; concealment of the truth in order to mislead; deception, fraud, cheating, false dealing; deceit.
dishonoure see dishonoure
disspyse v. to speak ill of sth. or sb., disparage; insult, revile; chide.
distance, distaunce n. disagreement, discord, strife; do ~ to cause trouble, quarrel; withowtten ~, 1) indisputably, certainly; 2) without delay or hesitation; instantly, forthwith; 3) indistinguishable.
distroye v. to destroy.
doande see don
dofe n. a dove.
dogge n. 1) a dog; 2) as a term of abuse or contempt: a worthless or contemptible person; wretch, cur; 3) said of the Devil.
doghetir, doughetir, doughtire n. daughter.
dole n. pain, suffering, torment.
doloure n. pain, sorrow, ache.
dome n. the Last Judgment; the judgment of the soul at death.
don, doo v. to perform an action, do sth., carry on an activity; ~ comauadement, obey sb.’s command; ~ to (the) dede, to put sb. to death; 3sg. dose; ppl. ydo; ger. doande; the best doande, the best-doing, most accomplished.
donyd see dinen
dore, bore n. a doorway serving as entrance and exit of a building or an enclosure, doorway, gateway, door, gate; pl. dores.
dorste see dare
dose see don
doste n. dust.
doughetir, doughtire see doghetir
doughty, doughety adj. brave, valiant.
dounrighte, dounryt, downrighte, downn-righte adv. straight down; right down (to the ground); downright (often used as a mere emphatic).
douten v. to be anxious, fearful, frightened.
dowe n. of actions or things: to have worth or validity; be useful, profitable, helpful, or effective; avail.
down n. 1) a hill or elevation; 2) grass-grown upland; 3) open country; ~ and dene, hill and dale.
dowtaunce n. 1) uncertainty, doubt; 2) perplexity, wonder; 3) fear, awe.
dowte n. anxiety; fear, fright.
dowtous adj. unpredictable, uncertain.
drafe, draffe see drife
drauen v. 1) to pull, tug, draw; pull in harness; 2) to remove the entrails from (a fowl, a fish); 3) to punish sb. by dragging (behind a horse, on a cart or sledge); to be drawn; p. drewe, droghe, droghie.
drede n. fear, fright, terror; v. ppl. to be afraid, become frightened; see also adred.
drewe see drauen
drife v. 1) to chase sb. or sth., pursue, drive; 2) to propel, push; 3) to hurl a missile, shoot an arrow, cast a stone; 4) to go or move rapidly; hasten, dash, rush, charge, plunge; p. drafe, draffe, drofe; ppl. dreuen.
drisse v. to place sth., lay, put, set; to arrange sth., put in order; put (a shield, spear) in position; 3pl. & imp. drisses; p. drissed.
drofe see drife
droghie, droughe see drauen
dromounde n. 1) a very large medieval ship with rowers and a single sail used both in war and commerce; a dromond; 2) a dromedary.
droune v. 1) to drown; 2) to sink a ship; ben drounede, be sunk; be lost at sea.
dubbler n. a plate, a platter.
duele, duelle v. to dwell, stay; p. duellede, duellid, duellyde, duelte.
duggepere n. twelve peers, one of the twelve peers or paladins of Charlemagne; one of the twelve great peers, temporal or ecclesiastic, of France at later times.
dure v. to continue, go on, last, hold out.
durste see dare
dy v. to die; p. dyed.
dyche, dyke n. an excavation narrow in proportion to its length, a long and narrow hollow dug out of the ground; a ditch used as the boundary of lands or fields, as the defence or part of the defences of a camp, castle, town, or other entrenched place; clos ~, a moat.
dyghte see dighte
dynge see dinge
dynt, dynte n. the blow of a weapon or combat missile; stroke of a sword or lance, strike of a shot or arrow, thrust of a spear; withouten ~ without striking a blow, without a fight; ~ of hand, a blow dealt by a weapon in sb’s hand; the dealing of such a blow; assault by arms.

efte adv. a second time, another time, once more, again.
eftsone adv. a second time, another time, again, the next time.
egere, egre, egree adj. fierce, impetuous, grim, bitter, enraged, angry, irritable; bold, spirited; with ~ mode, impetuously, angrily.
eghe n. the organ of vision, the eye; blere the ~, to hoodwink, deceive, make a fool of sb; pl. eghne, ygh.
eggre, egree see egere
ekte adv. conj. also, too, in the same manner.
eldre adj. old.
emange, emanges see amang
eme n. 1) an uncle; 2) an ancestor; 3) a nephew.
emonge see amang
emyddes prep. & adv. in the middle.
enchesoun n. that which produces an effect; a cause.
encontre v. 1) to meet (an adversary) in hostile or armed conflict; to fight or do battle; 2) to meet sb.; p. encontrede.
ende n. end: word and ~, beginning and end, everything, all; from start to finish.
endite v. to write or compose a book, poem, letter, etc.
endlange adv. from end to end, lengthwise, longitudinally; ouerethrowte and ~, crosswise and lengthwise; in all directions; everywhere; in every way.
endynge ger. 1) a coming to an end; the final part; the ending or end of life, death; 2) The result or consequence (of an action); upshot, outcome; make ~, to result (in sth); 3) ultimate, ordained, or true purpose or significance; destiny, fate.
eneewe see anoghe
engyne n. a mode or manner of construction; design; gude ~, good design or construction.
engynours n. pl. engineers.
engynous adj. ingenious, clever, cunning, skilful.
enhongrede ppl. starved.
enkerli adv. eagerly, boldly.
enoghe see anoghe
enparelde ppl. decorated, adorned.
enpayren v. to make worse; to injure the quality of sth, or lessen the worth or power of sth.; p. enpayrede.
enseyne n. a flag or standard; a symbol.
entayle n. the cut, fashion, or style of clothing or armour.
entent n. purpose or intention; aim or object; reason for doing sth.; with gud ~, with good will or intention, kindly; in good faith; cheerfully.
entire v. to enter; p. entrede.
entre n. the act or fact of entering physically; entrance.
entrede see entire
envenomede ppl. poisoned.
erande n. a petition or prayer, especially as presented through an intercessor.
erbischoppe n. archbishop.
erre v. to make one’s home or abode, dwell, to inhabit a place.
erle, erlle n. earl; baron; pl. erelis, erles, erlles.
erln n. an eagle; a representation of an eagle.
erroure n. deviation from truth, wisdom, good judgment, sound practice, or accuracy made through ignorance or inadvertence.
es see bee
es e n. rest, a break.
este n. east.
ett v. to eat; p. etc; ppl. etyn.
euenyng, euynn, euynyng n. evening.
euerylke, euerilkaman, euerilkane, euerilke, euerilkman, euerilkone, euerylkon, pron.
every one, every single one; one and all.
euyll adj. 1) wicked, depraved, sinful; 2) harmful, hurtful, painful; 3) miserable, wretched, unfortunate; ~ deth, a miserable death; ~ ende (endynge), a wretched end, a bad end; in ~ time, in an evil time, unluckily.
euyll n. 1) moral evil, wickedness; a vice, a sin; a state or condition of being wicked; 2) misfortune, trouble, suffering; punishment; a harmful action, an injury, a wrong; make ~, do harm.
euynn adv. straight, directly; due.
euynn n. see euennyge

faa, foo n. foe, enemy; pl. faase, fase, fose.
faamen, famen, fomen n. pl. personal enemies, foes; enemies of God.
faase see faa
fadir, fadire n. father; gen. fadirs.
faire adj. highly to be approved of; splendid, excellent; fine, good; comp. fayrere.
falle v. 1) to fall; 2) to be proper, suitable, or necessary under the circumstances; 3) to happen; 4) suffer misfortune; 3sg. fallés, fallis, fallys; p. felle.
falowe adj. 1) reddish or brownish yellow colour; bay horse; 2) sallow, dusky, pale, faded; 3) (of land) arable land, tilled or untilled, lying idle; a fallow.
falssede, falsehede n. deceitfulness, infidelity, disloyalty, perfidy, treacherousness.
famen see faamen
fande see fynd
fane n. 1) a flag, standard, banner, or emblem; 2) a long, narrow pennant or streamer flown from the mast of a ship.
fange v. to grasp or seize sth., take hold of sth.
farde see fare
fare n. provision of food, entertainment, hospitality; feasting.
fare v. 1) to travel, journey; go on one’s way; 2) go about, wander to get along, fare; to behave; ~ aboute, busy oneself with an activity; p. farde, ferde; fure; it ferde, it went, happened, turned out.
fase see faa
faste adj. 1) strong or firm; 2) firm or stable in purpose, belief, behaviour; steadfast, constant, faithful; 3) quick, speedy.
faste adv. stoutly, vigorously; intently, hard.
fates n. pl. closed containers for liquids; casks, or barrels.
aughte see fighte
fawcheoun n. mil. a large, broad sword with a curved blade, a falchion.
fawe see fayne
fawkon n. the peregrine falcon, especially the female of the species as used in falconry.
fay n. faith; in ~, under obligation of fealty.
fayne, fawne adj. joyful, happy, pleased, delighted, glad.
fayne adv. willingly, eagerly.
faynt adj. deceitful; unreliable; false.
fayrere see faire
faytour n. a deceiver, imposter, cheat; false ~, often used as a term of abuse.
febilnesse adj. weakness.
fechid, fechide see fett
fede v. to feed.
fekien v. to move quickly or restlessly; hustle, struggle; to retreat hurriedly; p. fekyde.
fekyll adj. false, treacherous, deceptive, deceitful.
felaw n. fellow; pl. felawes, felaws, felles.
felawrede n. 1) a group of associates or companions bound by leadership or kind; a company; 2) the Christian communion or community on earth.
feld, felde see felle
felde n. 1) a field; a battle field; 2) (?error for folde) the Earth, the world.
fele adj. excellent, worthy, proper, good.
fele adj. fierce in combat; doughty, spirited, bold, audacious.
fele indef. num. many, much; ~ sythe, many times, often.
fele v. to feel; 3sg. felis.
felle adj. 1) treacherous, deceitful, false; guileful, crafty; villainous, base; wicked, evil; 2) wrathful, ruthless, brutal, cruel; 3) shrewd, subtle; clever;
felle v. 1) to knock, strike, cut, or shoot down a man or beast in combat; 2) to bring (buildings, walls, etc.) toppling or crumbling down to the ground; to demolish; 3) to fell an adversary; to overthrow, overcome, vanquish; 3sg fellys; p. fele, felled; feld; ppl. fellid, felled.
fele see felaw
fele see felaw
fen n. marshland; swamp, slough.
fende, fendy n. 1) a demon or devil which has entered into a person to cause madness; 2) Satan; the ~ of helle, the Devil of (in) hell; pl. fendis.
fensable adj. capable of defence or of carrying on warfare; armed for conflict.
ferde, ferpe ord. num. fourth.
ferde v. see fare v.
ferde v. see fere v.
fere adj. fierce, bold, proud.
fere n. 1) one who accompanies or travels with another, a companion; an armed supporter, a friend; 2) at the same time, (all) at once, together; in ~, al in ~ in a group, in company, together.
fere v. 1) to fear sth., to be afraid; 2) to frighten sb., terrify; ppl. ferde frightened; afraid.
ferly adv. 1) terribly, horribly; 2) wonderfully, splendidly; 3) exceedingly, extremely; very.
ferlys n. pl. wonderful things, adventures.
ferre adv. & prep. at a distance, to a distance, afar, far; ~ & nere, ~ or nere, ~ and hende, far and/or near.
fers adv. boldly, courageously; violently.
fese adj. fierce.
ferpe see ferde ord. num.
fesse v. 1) to drive or chase; spur a horse; incite to action; 2) put to flight, rout (an enemy); discomfit.
feste n. a feast, religious festival; v. to cause something to become firmly fixed together, or in position.
fete n. pl. feet.
fetirs n. pl. shackles or fetters, especially a foot shackle.
fett v. 1) to bring, to fetch; 2) to send for or summon sb.; p. pl. fetten, p. fechid, fechide; ppl. fett, fetten, fochede, fochtede; ~ forth: to bring someone out. In the ME and Early MnE period fett is gradually replaced by fecchen, hence the variant spellings of the p. and ppl. forms.
fighte v. to fight, engage in combat; p. faughte.
fightis n. pl. battles.
 fille n. an amount sufficient to satisfy need or desire; plenty, abundance; one's ~, one's heart's desire.
flaes see flane
flane v. to strip the skin from a person, or a part of someone's body, to flay; qwike ~, to skin someone alive; imp. flaes.
fle v. to retreat, run away, flee; p. frowe.
fleschely adj. belonging to man's physical nature; dominated by physical needs or desires, originating in the bodily appetites, carnal.
fley3 see fley
flies n. insects that fly, such as a fly; nought (geven) two ~ to reckon something as of the same value as a fly.
fliede see fleye
flode n. a current in the sea; a flowing body of water; river, stream.
floke n. 1) a group of beasts; 2) a group of people; 3) a troop of warriors; an army, a host.
flome n. a river, a stream of water; ?the river Jordan.
flone, floreyne n. an arrow for the long bow.
floreste adj. flourished.
floreyne see flone
florynne n. 1) a gold coin minted at Florence and stamped with the figure of a lily, a florin; 2) any foreign gold coin; 3) an English gold coin worth 6s. 8d., i.e., a noble.
flowe see fle
flyande see fleye
flye v. 1) to fly; 2) to move swiftly on land or water: hasten, hurry, rush, dash, charge; 3) to retreat, run away, flee; 3sg. flyes; ger. flyngande, flyande; p. fliede, fley3.
flyngyng ger. comen ~, to come running, come with a rush.
fochede see faa
folde n. many ~, many a time, often, many, much.
foone v. to gush or spurt forth (blood); to flood or cover with blood; ppl. fomede.
fomen see faamen
fonge v. to grasp or seize sth., take hold of sth.
foo see faa
footemen see fotemane
forbare, forbarre see forbere
forbere v. to forego, relinquish, give up, part with, or lose sth.; to become separated from sb. or sth.; to do without; p. forbare, forbarre.
forbreste n. mil. the front rank of an army in battle, forefront.
forby adv. past (in space), by; to that place, that way, nearby.
force n. 1) physical strength; power, authority, dignity; 2) account, value, worth, importance; it is no ~, it does not matter, it is not important.
forehede, forhede n. a company of people; a host; an army, a troop.
foreward, forwarde n. an agreement, a contract, treaty, terms of an agreement, bargain, promise, oath; binden ~, to make an agreement; to bind oneself by a contract, treaty; hold a ~ keep a pledge; to carry out a contract.
forfare v. to perish, be destroyed; go to ruin.
forfetoure n. the loss of rights, property or money; forfeiture.
forgetyn v. to forget; p. forgat.
forgo v. to give up sth., to surrender or part with sth.
forlayne see forlede
forlede v. to lead astray, mislead, seduce; ppl. forlayne.
forlore, forlorne adj. alone and unhappy; left alone and not cared for; abandoned.
forne adv. before (in time), formerly, previously.
forowtten prep. without, lacking; ~ly, without lie.
forsaken v. to repudiate sb., withdraw allegiance from; especially, to disavow or deny God, the saints, etc; p. forsoke.
forschippe n. the fore part of a ship or vessel, the prow.
forsoke see forsaken
forsothe adv. for a truth or fact, as a fact, truthfully.
forthe, forthi adv. 1) of motion or direction: forward, onward, ahead; 2) of time, afterward, hereafter, thereafter, later; 3) for this reason, therefore.
forthinke v. to regret having done something; p. forthoughte.
forthire adv. forward (in space), ahead.
forthirmaste adv. foremost; firstly, first of all.
forthoughte see forthinke
forthwith adv. at once, immediately.
forthwith prep. together with, along with, in company with.
forwarde see foreward
fose see faa
fotchede see fett
fote n. foot.
fote-hate adv. in haste, quickly, speedily, immediately, suddenly.
fotemane n. a soldier who fights on foot as distinguished from a knight; a foot soldier armed with spear, axe, or pike; an archer; pl. fotemen, footemen.
fothire n. a heavy weight; a burden.
foules, fowalle n. 1) a domesticated fowl, a table fowl; poultry; 2) a bird; especially a wild bird.
foundre v. of a blow: to sink in; p. foundred.
founden see fynd
fowalle see foules
fowndyn see fynd
fownte-stane n. font-stone, baptismal font.
foysoun, fuyson n. abundance of food or drink; grete ~, plenty, profusion.
fra prep. from.
fraghte v. to load a ship with goods, cargo, passengers; ppl. fraughte.
frame v. to join or frame timber; p. framide.
frappe v. to strike, beat.
fraughte see fraghte
frayelle n. a basket, especially for dry fruit.
fre adj. 1) free in rank or condition, having the social status of a noble or a freeman; 2) generous, open-handed.
frehaldande n. a freeholder.
frely adv. nobly, generously, magnanimously.
freres n. pl. a member of one of the religious mendicant orders, a friar.
frwyte n. fruit.
frythe n. 1) a royal forest, a game preserve; 2) a meadow; any wooded area, woodland; wilderness.
full adv. as an intensive particle with adj. very, quite, most; much; many.
fure v. 1) to kindle a fire; 2) set sth. on fire; 3) to burn.
fure v. see fare v.
furrour Gregis, a highly inflammable composition used in warfare; Greek fire; wild fire. See Explanatory Notes 1912.
furthe adv. forth.
fuysoun see foysoun
fy interj. an exclamation expressing contempt, disapproval, or indignation; ~ a debylls.
fyles n. pl. figs.
fyle n. a worthless person, a base fellow; a wretch or rascal.
fyn adj. excellent, of supreme or select quality.
fyn, fyne n. a money payment made in order to obtain release from imprisonment or exemption from punishment; a sum of money exacted as punishment for an offense; maken a ~, to pay a fine.
fynly adv. 1) superbly, handsomely, finely; 2) fully, thoroughly; ~ and wele, very well indeed, thoroughly.

ga, gaa, gon, goo v. to go; imp. gase, gose; p. went, pl. wentyn; ppl. gane, gone.
gadirde v. to gather; p. gadrede.
gafe see giffe
gal aye, galy n. a low flat-built sea-going vessel with one deck, propelled by sails and oars; a galley; see Explanatory Note 1433.
gale n. speech, talking.
galy see galaye
game, gamen n. joy, happiness; pleasure, delight; no ~, no laughing matter.
gamen v. to rejoice, be merry; joke, jest, play; talk pleasantly.
gan, gun aux. with infinitive, it is used as an auxiliary verb with past meaning as in the MnE emphatic construction ‘did+infinitive’ to form a past simple tense: gan eten, did eat, ate.
gange v. to walk, travel on foot, go.
gapen v. to open the mouth wide; of the mouth: be opened wide; p. gapide.
garre aux. as auxiliary or quasi-auxiliary with infinitive having a personal subject: to cause sb. to do sth., make or compel sb. to do or experience sth.
gart, garte, gerte aux. 1) used with infinitive as causative in past tense: made, caused (to); 2) used with infinitives to form phrases denoting actions or events with past meaning, e.g. garte ordeyne, ordered.
gase see ga
gate v. see getyn
gaye adj. ~ and stowte of beautiful appearance, splendidly adorned.
gere n. fighting equipment; armour, weapons.
gerte aux. see garte  
gerte v. see girde  
gerthis n. belt or strap passing under a horse’s belly to secure a saddle.  
gesse v. 1) to infer sth. from observation; perceive, find out; 2) to consider sth. to be sth., regard sth. as sth.; 3) to assume or suppose, guess; 3pl. gessis; ppl. igessyd.  
geste, jeste n. 1) a poem or song about heroic deeds, a chivalric romance; a poem or song of any kind; a prose chronicle or history, a prose romance or tale; 2) an inscription, a picture (l. 5234); see Explanatory Note 5236.  
getyn v. to get, obtain; p. gate.  
gif, giff, giffe, jiff, jife conj. provided that, on condition that, in case that, if.  
gife, gyffe v. to give; imp. giffas; p. gaffe.  
gile n. a crafty or fraudulent trick; dishonesty, treachery.  
giltyn adj. overlaid or decorated with gold, gilded.  
girde v. 1) to put a belt or girdle about sb.; wrap oneself about the middle; tie or bind sb.; 2) to cut or sever sth; p. gerte.  
girdill n. a belt worn around the waist, used for fastening clothes or for carrying a sword or purse.  
girdill-stede n. the waist, the middle of the body.  
girnyde see grinte  
girse n. grass; herbage in general.  
girthe, grythe n. a truce, cessation of fighting; absence of hostility; amity, good will, friendship, peace; pes and –, peace, law and order.  
glade see gliden  
gladi v. to make joyful, fill with joy or bliss; cheer; p. gladide.  
glent v. to move or turn quickly to one side; dodge, flinch.  
glewemen n. pl. those who entertain professionally with singing, playing instrumental music, story-telling, etc; a minstrel, gleeman.  
gliden v. to slip downward, descend, fall; p. glade.  
glose v. to obscure the truth of sth., falsify; speak with blandishment, flattery, or deceit.  
glosyne ger. smooth or deceitful talk; adulation, blandishment, cajolery, flattery.  
glotoun n. a person with an intemperate or special appetite for food or drink; a glutton or drunkard.  
gloue n. arm. glove or gauntlet used for armour.  
gnawe v. to gnaw sth. with the teeth; bite, chew, nibble; ~ the groundes, to bite the dust, die; p. gnewe.  
golde adj. golden; ~ wyre, gold thread, fine gold wire, silver wire covered with gold leaf.  
gon, gone see ga  
golde n. the metal gold; ~ fyne, pure gold.  
gorgere n. arm. a piece of armour covering the front of the neck, a gorget; see Explanatory Note 297.  
gose n. a goose.  
gose v. see ga  
gouerny v. to rule a country, people, city, etc. by exercise of sovereign or delegated authority; to command an armed force.  
grame adj. angry, furious, stern, hostile.  
grame n. 1) rage, anger, hatred, hostility; 2) grief, sorrow; 3) harm, injury, torment.
grande see grinde
grant mercy n. & interj. (OF) used as an expression of gratitude: thanks, many thanks.
granyne ger. the act of groaning or sighing, lamentation.
graunte, grawnte v. 1) to consent, assent, to grant; 2) to promise; p. graunted, grauntede.
graythe v. to prepare food. cook; p. graythede.
grefe n. 1) anger, hostility, spite; take to ~, to take sth. amiss, take umbrage or offence at sth.; 2) sorrow, mental distress.
Greke adj. Greek; ~ See, the Mediterranean, especially the Adriatic and Ionian seas.
grene n. a grassy place, a field, the ground, the green earth.
grese n. grease.
gret, grete, grett adj. 1) great; powerful; 2) numerous; superl. gretteste.
grete v. to greet; 3. pl. gretyn; imp. gretis.
gretely v. gretly adv. greatly; much.
gretis see grete v.
gretyn see grete v.
grett, gretteste see gret
Griffoun n. a Greek person; the Greeks.
grinde v. to break sth. into small particles; reduce sth. to powder by crushing or braying; p. grande.
grinte v. to grind one’s teeth, gnash; p. girnyde.
griste n. gristle; the gristle of the nose.
grithe n. mercy, clemency; pardon.
grome n. a groom; a youth.
gromme n. ?mire, slime, filth.
grote n. 1) a piece, fragment, particle, speck; euerilke ~, every bit, every single one; 2) ?error for grotes, grain hulled, coarsely ground, or crushed; oatmeal; 3) an English silver coin equivalent to four pennies; any of several small European silver coins.
grounde, grownde n. ground; bringe to ~, to strike (sb. or sth.) to the ground, overpower (sb. or sth.), overcome, subdue.
grym adj. fierce, cruel.
grymly adj. 1) terrifying in appearance, hideous, horrible; 2) dangerous, formidable; deadly.
grythe see girth

gud, gude adj. good.
gun see gan
 Gunn n. a siege engine that casts missiles; ballista, mangonel, trebuchet; pl. gunmys.
guttis n. pl. entrails, viscera.
gyle n. a crafty or fraudulent trick; a plot; stratagem, wile; a lie.
gyng n. a band of warriors, a troop; an army or host.
gynn n. 1) inventive talent, ingenuity, cleverness, skill; 2) mil. a machine or structure used in assaulting or defending fortifications, a siege machine or tower; 3) a weapon of personal combat.
gyoure n. a ruler, king; a military leader, commander.
gyse n. guise, appearance, disguise.

3aa interj. an exclamation used to attract attention.
3are adj. prepared, ready; ready for sth.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jare</td>
<td>adv. readily, promptly; quickly, soon; at once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jarme</td>
<td>v. to wail, to bellow; p. Jarmede.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jate</td>
<td>n. gate; pl. Jatis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Je, Jee</td>
<td>pron. you; sometimes, ostensibly addressing an individual but apparently referring to the group of which the individual is representative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jee</td>
<td>adv. certainly, truly, yes; sayse ~ or naye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jelde</td>
<td>v. 1) to relinquish sb. or sth. voluntarily, give up; 2) to surrender, yield; 3) to pay (tax, tribute, tithes, etc.) under an imposed obligation; ~ homage, to pay homage; ppl. Joldin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jelpynge</td>
<td>ger. the act of bragging, boasting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jemerne</td>
<td>n. taken ~, to take care of sb. or sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerde</td>
<td>ll. 1) a yard; an enclosed area around a castle or an estate, the grounds; 2) a stick, pole, rod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jersey</td>
<td>n. a year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerne</td>
<td>adv. eagerly, in a keen way; forcefully, firmly; sternly; at once, immediately, without delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jete, Jitt</td>
<td>adv. yet; ever ~, always before, always.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiff, Jife</td>
<td>see gif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jisterdaye, Jistirday, Jistirdaye</td>
<td>adv. yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jiff, Jife</td>
<td>see gif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jyng, 3ynge</td>
<td>see Jonge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habide, Habyde</td>
<td>v. 1) to wait, be patient; to remain in a place, stay, sojourn, live, dwell; 2) to face sb. in combat; to dare to do battle; p. Habade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hafe</td>
<td>v. to have; 3sg. Hase; p. Hade, Hadda, Hafed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair, Hare</td>
<td>n. 1) an individual hair of a human or an animal; the hair, fur; 2) (of horses) the distinctive type of sort or kind; of one ~, of one colour and external quality; hence, the same sort, kind, nature, stamp, character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halde, Halden</td>
<td>n. imprisonment, confinement; captivity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halde</td>
<td>v. to hold; imp. Haldis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hale</td>
<td>adj. healthy, cured; in good condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halfendele, Halfuendele</td>
<td>n. 1) a half portion of anything; 2) an arithmetical half.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hally</td>
<td>adv. completely, entirely, fully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halse</td>
<td>n. the neck; see Swire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hame</td>
<td>n. home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hande</td>
<td>see ande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harawdes</td>
<td>n. pl. heralds; Harawdes of armys.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
harde see here v.
hardy adj. 1) strong in battle, fearless of danger, stout-hearted; 2) audacious, presumptuous, rash, foolhardy.
hare see hair
harmes, harmys n. pl. mil. the weapons of a warrior; defensive arms and armour.
harnasse, harnays n. sg. or pl. 1) personal fighting equipment, body armour; armour and weapons; 2) saddle pack or bag; 3) a traveller’s baggage.
harueste n. the season of autumn, variously dated, sometimes from mid-September to November or December; it may also refer to the Nativity of the Virgin Mary, 8 September.
hastynge ger. speeding, hastening; in ~, hastily, speedily.
hat see highte.
hatten see highte
hauere n. the cereal grain, oats; the oat plant.
haule n. hall.
hawbergoun n. arm. haubergen: a shorter version of the hawberke, a shirt made of mail, usually laced down the sides; see Explanatory Note 374.
hawberke n. arm. a mail shirt, generally extending down to defend the legs; see Explanatory Note 374.
hawnte v. to do sth., carry out, execute, perform.
hayl adj. free from disease, infirmity, or injury; healthy, sound, unharmed.
hayle n. health, welfare, good fortune; euyll~., bad fortune; unfortunately.
haythyne, heythyn n. heathen, pagan; ~ men.
heche n. the lower half of a divided door; a small door, gate, or wicket.
heed, hede, heuede n. the human or animal head.
hede v. attention, notice, regard.
hede v. to behead; imp. hedis; ppl. hedide.
hedir, hedire adv. to or toward this place, in this direction, hither.
hedis see hede
hedouse adj. 1) terrifying, horrible, dreadful; 2) great in size, huge, enormous.
hed-schode n. the crown of the head.
hee, hy, hye v. to go quickly, travel rapidly, hurry to or from a place or person, to hasten; p. hied, hiede.
heghc adj. high.
heide v. to fall, sag, collapse.
hele v. to conceal sth., hide
helme n. arm. a fully enclosed defence for the head developed during the twelfth century; see Explanatory Note 351.
helpe v. to help; imp. helpis.
hem obj. pron. them.
hende adj. having the approved courtly or knightly qualities, noble, courtly, well-bred, refined, sportsmanlike.
hendely, hendly adv. nobly, in a courtly way.
hent v. 1) to receive a blow; 2) to take hold of sb. or sth., seize, grasp; 3) to encounter sth., come into contact with; find; 4) ~oute, take sb. or sth. out or away; draw a sword, knife; pull out a spear.
hepis n. pl. heaps.
herde see here v.
here poss. adj. their.
here, heryn v. to hear; imp. heris; p. harde, herde.
herken v. to listen attentively, take heed, harken.
herne-panne n. the cranium, brainpan, skull.
het n. the human or animal heart.
heryn see here v.
herytage n. something legally inherited or inheritable; inherited or inheritable property, right, office, sovereignty, etc.
hespe n. a fastening for a door, gate, chest; a hinged clasp of metal which passes over a staple and is secured by a pin; a hasp.
heste n. a command, order, bidding, instruction, admonition.
hete n. heat.
hethyn adv. from this place, hence, away.
hethyng n. a feeling or attitude of contempt, scorn; on ~ disdainfully.
heude see hed
hewe v. to cut or strike with a weapon in combat; cut sb. or sth. with a weapon; p. hewede.
heythennesse, heythynesse, heythynnesse n. 1) the state or condition of being pagan; paganism, heathenism: 2) territory inhabited or ruled by pagans, a heathen country; Muslim territory or country: heathen world.
heythyn see haythyne
hide n. skin, complexion; of ~ and ~, in skin and complexion, in every way, entirely.
hied, hiede see hee v.
highte n. 1) height, altitude, stature; 2) upon ~, a) in a high position, b) out loud, loudly.
highte v. to hope for sth.: to look forward to sth.
highte v. 1) to give sb. or sth. a specified proper name; to name sb. or sth.; refl. call oneself sth.; 2) to give a promise, make a vow; to promise sth; p. hat; ppl. hatten.
hir, hire pron. her.
hiyng, hy, hye n. haste, hurry; in (on) ~, at once, immediately, quickly, very soon; in haste.
holde adj. loyal.
holde, holden v. 1) to regard sb., sth. in a certain manner; 2) to rule a kingdom, land, city, stronghold or people, to govern; ppl. holden.
homage n. the ceremony or act of acknowledging one’s faithfulness to his feudal lord; zelde or bere ~, to pay homage.
honde see ande
hondrethe, hundrethe num. one hundred.
hongrye, hungre adj. hungry.
hool adj. healthy, whole.
hore adj. grey, greyish white especially of the hair or beard.
hose n. arm. armour for the lower legs, leg-guards, greaves; hose of chain mail.
hote v. to give a command, bid.
houe n. on ~ ?apart, at a distance.
houe v. 1) to wait in readiness or expectation; lie in wait, lurk; wait around, hang about; 2) to move onward, proceed, go; ride; p. houed, houede.
hownde n. as a term of abuse: 1) a detested or despicable person; 2) an unbeliever, infidel, pagan.

hundrethe see hondrethe
hungre see hongrye
hurda n. a hurdle used for defence in battles and sieges; a palisade, bulwark, or other structure made of hurdles; pl. hurdasse.

hy, hye n. see hlynge
hy, hye v. see hee
hye adj. high, noble.
hye n. haste, hurry; on ~, at once, immediately, quickly, very soon.
hymselfe, hymseluen refl. pron. himself.
hyngande ger. hanging.
hynys n. a household, servants collectively.
hythen adv. from this present time; after that time, later.

igessyd see gesse
ilke pron. same, very, aforementioned, given, specified; every.
ille adj. 1) deficient, incompetent, unsatisfactory, inferior, poor, inadequate; 2) diseased, ill.
insonder, insondire, insondre, insoundre adv. to pieces, into two parts.
iryn n. iron.
irynns n. pl. shackles.
ischewede see schewe
ismete see smytte
ivengid ppl. avenged.
iwisse, ywisse adv. certainly, for certain.

jauelere n. a jailer.
jeste see geste
juggement, juggment n. judgement.

kan, kane v. can, to have ability, capability, or skill: be able to do sth., know how to do sth.; p. couthe.
ken v. to tell, teach.
kene adj. 1) bold, brave, fearless, stalwart, warlike; 2) eager to do sth., ready, daring; 3) fierce, savage, cruel, bellicose; 4) sharp-pointed, sharp-edged, cutting, trenchant.
kepe n. attention, heed, notice; taken ~, to take notice, take heed.
kepe v. to keep; p. kepide.
kermohe n. a woman’s headcloth or veil, a kerchief; a handkerchief; pl. kerchofes, kerchoffes.
kerue v. to carve; p. kerued.
keste see caste
kirke n. church.
kirnells, kirnelles n. pl. indentations or embrasures in the battlement of a wall; battlements.
knafe n. 1) a servant, attendant, page; messenger; 2) a commoner, peasant; 3) a footsoldier; pl. knaues.
kne n. the knee.
kneche n. a bundle of weeds, hay, etc., a bunch, sheaf.
klen v. to kneel.
knokkes n. pl. blows.
knytt v. to fasten sth. with a thread, rope, etc.; tie sth. to sth. else.
kyd see kythe
kyn n. 1) a tribe; clan, family; a race; 2) a kinsman, a relative; coll. kinsfolk, kindred, relatives.
kynde fl. a tribe; clan, family; a race.
kyndely adj. rightful, lawful.
kythe v. 1) to make sth. known without words; reveal a fact, an idea, an action; show that sth. is true, what sth. is; 2) to exhibit, show; imp. kythes; p. kyd.
ladill n. a ladle used for pouring, stirring, etc.
ladyn v. to supply a ship with cargo, provisions, supplies, etc.; fill, load; ppl. ladyn, of ships: loaded with men or things.
lafe n. a loaf of bread.
lak n. fault, failing; misdeed, offense, sin; disfigurement, blemish (spiritual, moral, or physical); withouten ~, without fault.
lange adj. 1) long, extensive, far-reaching; 2) of periods of time: of great duration, long-lasting; a ~ houre, for a whole hour; comp. langare, longare; no langare, no longer.
laste adv. at last, finally, after all others, the last thing, althir ~, last of all.
late, latyn, lete v. 1) to grant sb. land, rights, privileges; 2) to give up sth. material, surrender sth.; 3) to leave (sb. or sth. in or at a place), depart from, leave behind; 4) to make sb. do sth., cause sb. or sth. to do sth.; 5) to allow sb. to do, have, or be sth., permit, to let; 6) to neglect sth., disregard sth.; ~ in, set sth. in, insert; put sb. or sth. in; ~ sen, to cause or allow sb. to see, know, or learn sth.; as exclamation: look here, see here, hey; imp. lates, latis.
lathe adj. unwilling, reluctant; disinclined to do sth.
lathe n. something hateful, injury, harm, misfortune.
lathe v. to urge sb. to do sth.; to incite sb.
latimer n. an interpreter, translator.
latyn see late
lauacyonn fl. the elevation of the consecrated host and chalice in the mass.
laueroke n. male lark.
lauere n. arm. a horseman’s spear; a throwing spear, javelin; a lance; see Explanatory Note 2119.
lawe v. (AN) to wash (one’s hands before a meal).
lawe adj. low; ~ and hy, valleys and hills.
lawe, laye n. 1) a rule or set of rules prescribing or restraining conduct, law; 2) a religious system, religion, faith; 3) what is right, right, justice; the legal way; bi ~, duly; landys ~, the law(s) of the land.
layde, layed see laye v.
layden see laye v.
laye n. see lawe n.
laye v. 1) to put sb. or sth., place, set; 2) to place sb., oneself in a recumbent posture, lay down; rest, lean; 3) lodge sb., provide with a place to sleep; 4) ~ in[to], to lay an oar.
into the sea, as an accompaniment of setting sail; to lay in the oars, i.e. to unship them; 5) to knock sb. or sth. down; ~ in, make an attack; ~ on, to deal blows with vigour; to make vigorous attack, assail, strike; 6) to stake sth. as a wager, bet sth.; p. layde, layed; ppl. layden; imp. lays.

layke n. 1) amusement, diversion; fun, mirth, joy; a game; sporting contest; 2) a fight, contest, battle; an encounter; an assault, attack.

leberde n. 1) the leopard; 2) one who is like a leopard in cunning and cleverness; 3) her. a lion passant guardant; see Explanatory Note 5808; pl. leberdis.

leche n. a physician or surgeon; saule ~, a priest, confessor.

lefe adj. dear, beloved.

lefe, leue n. permission to depart; leave.

lefe, leue v. to grant sth. to sb., grant sth.; to give permission; authorize.

lefe, leue v. 1) to take one’s departure; depart from sb., a place; 2) to stay, remain, tarry, dwell.

lefe, leue v. 1) to believe in God, etc.; ~ in, have faith in God, an idol; 2) to rely on sb., trust; 3sg. leuys.

legges n. pl. legs.

leman, lemane n. beloved, lover.

leme n. a flame, fire.

lepe v. to leap; p. lepped, lepe.

lered, leren v. 1) to learn; 2) to teach; p. lerede.

leryd adj. learned, educated; able to read Latin.

lese n. 1) what is false; falsehood, untruth, lying, lies; 2) a leash.

lese v. to lose, to suffer loss; p. lese.

lesse, lese adv. less; both ~ and mare, altogether, entirely.

lesse conj. that not, lest.

lesse n. 1) something that is smaller in size; 2) persons of lower station or rank, more lowly ones.

lesyngge n. the telling of a lie or lies; withowten ~, without lying, in truth, truly; often used as a rhyme tag.

lete n. obstruction, obstacle; hindrance, impediment; withouten ~, without delay, without interruption; without fail.

lete v. see late

lett v. to hinder sb., impede, delay, slow up.

leetyng ger. ~ of, hindering or preventing of an action.

leue n. see lefe n.

leue v. see lefe v.

leuen v. to live.

leuour n. a lever, crowbar; a bar used as a weapon; a carrying pole.

leuys see lefe v.

levynnynge n. lightning, a flash of lightning; a thunderbolt.

lewed, lewede, lewyd adj. uneducated, ignorant; unlettered, unable to read Latin; lay, non-clerical.

leyen see ligge

liche n. an equal, peer; was non his ~, he had no peer.

lifte n. the air; foules of the ~, birds of the air.
ligge, lye v. 1) to be in a reclining posture, recline, lie at ease; 2) to be down or cast down: lie wounded or unable to move; 3) of an army, a king: to be encamped; 4) to be lodged, reside, dwell, sojourn; 5) to be situated; 6) to be in prison or in bonds; 3sg. ligges, lyes; 3pl. leyen; ger. lyande; ppl. liggen.

lighte v. to arrive (at a place), come (to sb.), stop (in a place).

lofe n. naut. a spar holding out and down the windward tack of a square sail while going into the wind.

loge v. of an army: to encamp; return to camp; p. loged.

lo, loo interj. 1) indeed, surely, certainly; 2) ah, see, behold, look.

longare see lange

looke, luke v. to look; imp. lukes.

lore n. loss in battle, casualties.

lorne ppl. adj. 1) kept (in prison); kept at a distance; 2) lost, perished, ruined; 3) abandoned, left alone; bereft of; lonely, desolate, wretched.

lose n. reputation, fame, renown; gude ~, good reputation, fame.

loue, luffe v. 1) to feel affection or friendship for sb., to love; 2) to love God, to worship and obey; p. louede.

lough e v. to laugh.

louges n. lungs.

louren v. to frown or scowl for fear, anger or hate.

lousenegerse n. an evil or traitorous counselor; a rascal, coward.

louynge ger. praise, honour, fame, glory; praise of God; giff ~ to worship, praise.

lowde adj. loud.

lowrre v. to frown or scowl for anger or hate; p. lowrred.

lufe, luffe n. love.

luffe v. see loue

luftly adj. lovable, beautiful; ~ lorde, gracious lord, dear lord, beloved lord.

luke see looke

lyande see ligge

lyarde adj. & n. 1) as adj. of a horse: spotted with white or silver grey; also in names of horses; 2) as n. a horse spotted with white or silver grey.

lycour n. 1) a liquid; a drink; 2) a spice, condiment.

ly n. a sheltered position or condition; calmness, peace, tranquillity.

lye, lyes see ligge

lyyt adj. free of pain; relieved of an illness.

lyfe v. to live; ger. lyffande, alive.

lykynge ger. a feeling or experience of sensual pleasure, especially sexual pleasure.

lyste v. impers. hem ~ they wish, desire, choose or wished, desired, etc. (to do sth.).

lythe, lype adj. 1) gentle, kindly, friendly; meek, obedient; 2) smooth to the taste or touch, pleasant, agreeable.

lythe v. to listen, be attentive; to hear; ~ and here, pay attention and listen.

ma, mare, moo, more adj. adv. more; ~ and lesse, the greater and the lesser; all.

mace, masse n. arm. a club used in warfare; see Explanatory Notes 3804, 4619.

maier, mayere n. the mayor of a town.

make v. to make; imp. makis; p. maked; ppl. madyn.
males, malys n. pl. bags, pouches.
malental n. ill will, anger, hatred, hostility; forgiven ~, to give up one’s anger, hatred, or displeasure.
malycoly n. 1) one of the four humours, black bile; a bodily fluid which helps to form and nourish the body; 2) the complexion, or temperament, dominated by black bile; 3) a mental disorder or emotional disease due to unnatural melancholy; 4) anger, rage, hatred.
malys see males
malysone n. a curse, a malediction.
manace n. 1) the act of threatening or fact of being threatened; 2) a threat.
manchippys n. dignity, honour; hold up our ~, maintain or raise our spirits.
manne n. a man.
manners n. the way something is happening or has taken place; the circumstances.
manngonelle, mawngonelle n. mil. a machine used for hurling stones or other matter in the siege or defence of castles or cities; see Explanatory Note 1885.
marchal n. the chief officer of a kingdom, steward.
mare see ma
marke n. 1) a monetary unit equivalent to 160 pennies or 2/3 of a pound sterling; 2) a mark of gold equivalent to 6 lbs. in silver.
maruel v. 1) to be filled with wonder, surprise, admiration, or puzzlement; 2) to marvel at sth.; p. maruellde.
maryn n. the seacoast; a region or area along a seacoast.
masse see mace
mate adj. helpless, powerless; overcome, defeated; confounded, discomfited.
matyns n. eccl. matins, the first canonical hour (usually comprising matins and lauds), recited at midnight or in the early morning.
mawgre adv. nonetheless, notwithstanding; in spite of everything.
mawgre n. shame, dishonour, disgrace, blame, reproach.
mawgrethe prep. with genitive: against (one’s) will; in spite of (oneself); despite all that (one) can or could do.
mawngonelle see manngonelle
mayde, mayden n. maiden; virgin; pl. maydynes.
mayere see maier
mayn, mayne n. physical strength, vigour.
mayn v. (?error for maynt) 1) to help sb. or sth., assist, support; 2) to support an evildoer or an evil cause.
maystir n. high official, civil or military; a governor, ruler, leader.
maystry n. 1) control, dominance, rulership; 2) the upper hand, victory in a contest; 3) superior strength, force, violence; 4) special skill or knowledge, mastery of a subject or an art; a special method or technique; a master skill.
maytene v. to maintain an opinion, assert that sth. is the case.
me pron. one, someone, a person; they, people.
mede n. mead, drink in general.
mede n. 1) a gift; a material reward; compensation; ransom; reparation; for no ~, under no circumstances, by any means whatsoever; for ~, as compensation, as wages; 2) moral consequence or spiritual reward; requital, retribution; to ~, as recompense, in return.
mede n. a meadow; clearing, open field; meadowland, a tract of grassland.
medlaye v. to interfere, intervene.
megyre adj. thin or enfeebled by hunger, wasted away, emaciated.
mekely adv. 1) humbly; 2) courteously, graciously, politely.
mekil, mekill, myche, adv. much; many; adj. great; large, big.
mele n. meal made by grinding grain usually wheat.
mene v. to say sth., assert; speak, express; to mention, tell.
men3ee n. a household, household servants and officers; retinue.
ment v. to intend. plan, attempt; ppl. mynt.
mervayle n. a thing, act, or event that causes astonishment or surprise; a wonderful feat; an unnatural occurrence or circumstance; a wonder of nature or art; a monster or monstrosity.
mes n. a course or a dish of prepared food sent to, and served at, the table.
meschaunce n. 1) a mishap, piece of bad luck, calamity, injury, destruction, death; 2) wrongdoing, wicked behavior, sin.
messe n. mass.
mete v. to meet, p. mett.
mete, metis, mette n. a meal, food.
midwarde, mydwerde n. the middle of a thing, centre spatially.
mirre, myre n. bog, marsh, swampland; quagmire.
misbyleue, mysbyleue v. to hold a false religious belief; p. misbyleuyde, myshyleuuede.
missay, myssay v. to speak ill of sb.; insult, slander, abuse; p. myssaidc.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
misbyleue, mysbyleue v. to hold a false religious belief; p. misbyleuyde, myshyleuuede.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
misbyleue, mysbyleue v. to hold a false religious belief; p. misbyleuyde, myshyleuuede.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mistere n. a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
miselfe, myselven refl. pron. myself.
mon v. 1) as auxiliary in future indicative: shall, will (with inf.); 2) in constructions which some grammars would regard as subjunctive or conditional: would, should, may, might (with inf.); 3) to be compelled to do or suffer sth., must; ought to, should; 4) to be able, be permitted, can, may; could, might.
mone n. the moon.
mony adv. many.
moo see ma
more n. a larger number of things or persons.
morne v. 1) to grieve, sorrow; 2) to worry; be anxious or troubled.
morne, mournynge n. the morning.
moserde, mossaarde n. term of contempt: fool, dolt, idler, villain, wretch.
mote v. subj. to be allowed, be permitted, may.
mounde n. excellence, value; of so mekil ~, most excellent, of great value.
mountenaunce n. amount, quantity, extent.
mournynge see morne
mowe v. to be able to do sth.: be capable of.
moyle n. a mule.
myche see mekill
myddis n. middle; in ~, in the middle.
mydwerde see midwarde
myght, my3t n. 1) military might; individual prowess, courage, fortitude; 2) ability, capability, capacity; a skill, knowledge; don one’s ~, to do all one can.

myn poss. pron. mine.

mynede ppl. mil. mined.

mynstralle n. an instrumental musician, singer, or story-teller; pl. mynstralles.

mynstralsie n. music as produced on an instrument, musical sound; musical entertainment.

mynt see ment

myre see mirre

myrke adj. dark in colour; that cannot be seen.

mys n. a sin, an evil deed, a criminal act, an offense.

mysbyleue, mysbyleuede see misbyleue

mysdoo v. to do wrong or evil, sin, transgress; p. mysdide.

myselfen see miselfe

myssay see missay

mystaughte ppl. misinformed, misled.

nacyouns n. pl. nations.

naken v. to strip sb. naked or partially naked; p. nakened.

nakyn, nankyns, nanekyns, nokyns, nonekyns adv. no kind of; not any; no.

name see nime

nane pron. none.

nanegates adv. in no way, not at all.

narrowe adv. 1) closely; 2) strictly; jealously; 3) carefully; 4) harshly; 5) eagerly, intently.

nare prep. near in space to sb. or sth., close to, in the vicinity of.

Natyuyte n. nativity [of Christ], Christmas.

nauye n. a two-masted round ship; pl. nauys.

nauyll n. the human navel, umbilicus.

nayle n. nail.

nedlynges adv. of necessity, necessarily.

neghe prep. in space or physical position: close to, near to.

neck n. the human neck; pl. neckes.

nenen, nenyn v. (?error for nemnen) 1) to mention, specify, or speak of sb. or sth. by name; 2) say, speak, tell.

nerc prep. near.

nerethand, nerethande, nerhande adv. almost, nearly.

neste adj. & adv. nearest, closest, forthcoming.

nepole adv. nevertheless.

neyse prep. close, near.

nigromansy n. sorcery, witchcraft, black magic, occult art; necromancy.

nime v. 1) to take sth., draw a weapon, grab sth., grasp, to seize sb. or sth., take sb. by force; to assail sb. with violence; 2) to go, come, arrive, return; 3) to capture; 4) to consider sth., think about sth.; ~ kepe, pay attention, take notice; p. name, nome; ppl. nome,

nomyn, nommen,bynomen deprived of the power of movement, unable to move; captured.

nobill adv. noble, of noble birth.
noblaye n. 1) high rank or birth; dignity, nobility; one proud of his birth; 2) magnificence, splendor, grandeur; luxury, sumptuousness, wealth.

noghte, noughte pron. nothing, naught; none; in verbal combinations, always denoting the absence of the action referred to by the verb.

nokyns see nakyn
nome, nommen see nime
nomyn see nime
none n. 1) noon; 2) at the ~, right away, presently.
nonekyns see nakyn
nones, nonys only in phr. for the ~, for the nonce, for the particular occasion or purpose, expressly; suitably; usually used as a rhyme filler.

note v. to make use of sth., use sth.; put sth. to good use.

noper, nowthir adv. neither; ~ ... nor, ~ ... ne, neither ... nor.
nowthir adv. nowhere, at no place.

noyen v. to harm sb. or sth., injure; p. noyede.
nype adj. foolish, frivolous; ignorant.
nype n. a fool.

nye adv. near, nearby.

ny3 adv. almost, nearly.

ofdawe v. 1) to take off clothing, armour, pull off; 2) strip flesh from one’s body.
offerde n. an offering; especially an oblation.
offre v. 1) to give money, food, goods, etc., to sb.; 2) to bring sth. to sb.
ofweue v. to strike off a head, or a helmet; p. ofweuede.
onmys see amis
onane, onenone, onone adv. at once.
one prep. on; ~ hethyng, disdainfully, contemptuously.
or adv. even; before.
or conj. or; ~ elles, or else; and; whether.
ordeyne v. 1) appoint sb. to an office or position; to choose or appoint sb; 2) to prepare sb. or sth., make ready; to make preparations; get ready for sb. or sth; p. ordeyned, ordeynede.

ostage n. a person given or held as security for the fulfillment of an agreement or as a guarantee of one’s good faith, a hostage; taken to ~, take sb. as a hostage.
oste n. host, company, army; pl. ostes.
ostelle n. lodging, accommodation; a place of sojourn or residence, dwelling place.
oper, ouper, owthir, owthire adv. either; ~ ... or, either ... or.
operwhile adv. sometimes, occasionally, at times, now and then, at one time or another; at various times.
ouerethrowte, ouerethrwerter adv. across; crosswise, transversely; ~ and endlange, crosswise and lengthwise; in all directions; everywhere; in every way.
ouersaile v. to vanquish sb., overwhelm; conquer (land); ouersailed.
oughte adv. in any way, to any extent, in any respect, by any means, at all.
oughte pron. anything, whatever; for ~, in spite of anything, despite any amount, for all.
outraye n. an outrageous act, misdeed, aberrancy; sinfulness.

owthir, owthire see oper
owtrage n. 1) intemperance, immoderation; extravagance, licentiousness, wantonness; 2) injury, harm, damage; an affliction; affront, indignity.

owtraye v. 1) to overcome sb., conquer, vanquish; destroy sb., annihilate; 2) (of an army) to be out of array, be disordered; p. owtrayed.

paleys n. a fence, paling, palisade; a rampart.
palle n. 1) a fine cloth; a type of fine cloth, ?satin; fine clothing; 2) a cloak, mantle, robe.

palmer n. a pilgrim (originally a pilgrim to the Holy Land); fig. a crusader.

paynym, paynym n. 1) heathen lands, heathendom; 2) a non-Christian, pagan, heathen.

par ma faye phr. (OF) by my faith, on my honour, certainly, indeed.

paraiile n. 1) a fellow, companion; 2) a body of troops; a martial array.

par amours adv. phr. (AN par amor, par amors) through or out of love or kindness; used chiefly as a supplication when addressing someone: out of your love; as a favour or kindness: if you please.

parde interj. (OF par Deu, ~Dieu) by God; indeed, in truth.

pardone n. forgiveness; pardon of sins or wrongdoing.
pared see paren

paren v. to chop sth. off; p. pared.

parlement n. 1) discourse, communication, conversation; 2) a parley.

parten v. 1) to divide sth.; 2) to depart, leave; imp. partes.

partye n. a part, division, or section; the gret ~, the major part.

pase n. pace; a ~, 1) at a walking speed; 2) quickly, briskly; a grete ~, at great speed, swiftly.

passe v. to move, advance; travel; come, go, walk; go by, ride by, travel by; go through; p. passede.

pauelyoun n. a tent, especially a large or elaborate one used for military encampments, tournaments, hunting parties, etc; pl. pauelyouns, pauylyouns.

pautenere, pautynere, pawtener n. a rascal, scoundrel, villain.

paye v. 1) to please sb., satisfy, content; be to the liking of sb.; 2) to pay; ppl. payed; be ~, to be pleased, content, or satisfied.

pays n. weight, a weight; a counterweight; bi ~, according to weight.

paynym see paynym

peces, pecys n. pl. pieces.

pedayle, pedaylle, putaile n. mil. foot soldiers, infantry.

peesse, pes, pese, pesse n. peace, silence; smytte ~, strike silence, demand silence.

peler n. a pillar, a column.

penacle n. an architectural construction surmounting a building or structure; a spire, pointed turret.

pensel n. mil. small pennon, usually attached to a lance, often used to identify a lord and his men-at-arms.

peny n. an English silver coin, weighing approximately 22 grains, decreasing in weight and value from about 1300, equal to 1/12 of a shilling or 1/240 of a pound; 2) money, cash; 3) an unspecified coin, a piece of money.

perche v. to thrust a weapon, a horn, etc. through or into sb. or sth., part of the body or armour; to cut into skin or flesh.

pere n. 1) a peer, an equal; 2) a friend; pl. peris.

perelle n peril, danger, jeopardy; exposure to physical injury, death, or destruction.
pesane n. arm. a piece of metal or mail attached to the helmet and extending over the neck and upper breast; see Explanatory Note 323.

peytrelle n. arm. a protective breastplate or pectoral armour for a horse; see Explanatory Note 5792.

piche v. to stick, thrust, or drive; ~ his pauelyoun, to pitch a tent, make camp; p. pighte.

pilche n. a garment for a man or woman made from the skin or fur of animals, usually worn as an outer garment, a fur pelisse, coat, or cloak; ~ cloute, a ragged ~.

pipe v. to play on a pipe; blow a horn; p. pipede, pipide, piped.

pite n. pity.

plate n. arm. 1) a general term for iron defences fashioned from sheet iron or steel; plate armour worn by a knight or by a foot soldier; 2) a breastplate and backplate combination, a cuirass; 3) armour composed of overlapping plates; pl. platis, plate armour, a suit of armour; armour for a horse; see Explanatory Note 373.

platis n. pl. platters, chargers; plates, dishes.

playe v. 1) to play; to amuse oneself; 2) to play amorously; make love, engage in sexual intercourse; 3) to play martial or athletic games; joust, fight.

playne n. a flat surface, a plain.

playnte n. lament; a complaint, charge, grievance.

plene, pleyne v. 1) to complain, make moan, lament; 2) to make a legal complaint or accusation; appeal to; p. pleyned.

plente n. abundance, prosperity, wealth.

plesaunce n. satisfaction, liking, or gratification of a superior; a service or favour.

pleyne, pleyne n. see plene

pleynere adj. full, complete, total; alle ~, completely, in full.

pleynly adv. 1) in a clear and distinct manner, clearly, distinctly, exactly; 2) indubitably, certainly, without doubt.

plighte v. to promise or pledge sth. to sb.; I you ~, I assure you.

plouer n. small to medium-sized, short-billed, gregarious birds, typically feeding beside water but sometimes frequenting grassland, tundra, and mountains; any of various shore-inhabiting birds commonly known as plovers.

polaxe n. arm. a pole axe was a close combat weapon in which the main fighting part of the weapon, the axe, was placed on the end of a long shaft, typically of wood, thereby extending the user’s effective range.

portecolys, portecolysse n. a portcullis: a strong gate made of bars with points at the bottom that hangs above the entrance to a town or castle and was brought down to the ground in order to close the entrance against enemies.

posterne n. a side door or gate, small entranceway; preue ~, a secret gate or passage.

pouste n. power; authority; strength.

powdir n. ground seasoning for food, spicery.

praye n. booty, spoil, plunder; an object obtained by pillage, a piece of stolen property.

preche v. to cry out; announce sb. or sth., declare, proclaim.

preke v. to spur (a horse), cause to gallop; spur on; p. preked, prekede, prikked; ger. prekande, prikinge, prikyngye.

pres, prese, presse n. 1) a crowd, a company, a military host, an army, 2) an expedition; 3) the thick or press of combat; a battle, war; proud in ~, splendid in the throng; owte of ~, away from the multitude.
present n. the act or fact of being present in a place or together with someone, presence; in (~), present, in this or that place, in attendance; here in (~), here present.
presentyng ger: the act of presenting a gift or an offering.
preste, priste adj. 1) ready for battle, prepared, armed; 2) eager, willing; 3) prompt to act, quick, active.
preste n. priest; pl. presteis.
preualy adv. secretly, covertly, in secret.
prikinge, prikyng see preke
prikked see preke
priours, pryours n. pl. the heads or deputy heads of monasteries or houses of mendicants, priors.
pris, prys n. 1) the most noble or excellent of a class of persons or things; the paragon, the best; 2) pre-eminence, superiority; victory; distinction; 3) fame, renown; good reputation; tellen ~ of, to esteem sb. or sth.; 4) hazardous undertaking, a battle.
priste see preste adj.
profe, profer, profre v. 1) to make an offer or a proposal; offer sth. to sb; 2) to offer battle, challenge to combat; 3sg & imp. profers.
prokir v. to cause sth.; bring sth. about.
prove v. 1) to prove in practice or by test sb. worthy or satisfactory, prove sb. virtuous, false, etc.; prove oneself worthy in action; 2) to strive; undertake a combat; endeavour (to do sth.); 3) to give an explanation (to sb.), explain; declare (sth.), assert, tell; 4) taste (food, water), have experience of sth.
prowesche n. bravery in battle or combat, valor; martial vigor, might, or skill.
pryde n. 1) glory, honour; proper pride, personal honour, good repute; 2) glorious state, exalted position; 3) splendour, opulence, magnificence; value.
prye v. to ask for sth.
pryme n. 1) the first division of the day, from 6:00 to 9:00 am; a time at the beginning or end of that period; the hour of sunrise; 2) the canonical hour of prime, about 6:00 am.
pryours see priours
prys adj. good, excellent, splendid; commendable, praiseworthy.
prys n. see pris
pryve adj. secret, concealed, confidential.
puk n. an evil spirit, a devil, a goblin.
pur charite adv. phr. (OF par charité) as an act of kindness, for the sake of charity.
purchais n. booty, spoil; goods gained by pillage, plunder, or robbery.
pursuyt v. to follow, pursue.
purvey, purveye v. 1) to think beforehand, consider, reflect; 2) to make arrangements, make preparations; 3) to provide for the supply of some necessity, supply that which is needed, furnish provisions; 4) to obtain sth., procure, get; ppl. purueyede, ready.
putaile see pedayJe
pyke n. a spiked staff, especially one used by pilgrims.
pyke v. to pick or clean out by picking; his fyngirs ~, to pick one’s nails.
payment n. a sweetened, spiced wine used for refreshment and in medical recipes; ~ of clare, clary further spiced or sweetened; see Explanatory Note 2641.
pyn n. a peg of wood or metal used as a fastener, nail; bolt.
pyn n. 1) pain or injury resulting from punishment, torture, torment, persecution; 2) imprisonment; pl. pynys.

pyped see pipe

quaken v. to tremble or shudder because of strong emotion, especially fear; p. quook.

quarelle n. mil. a short, heavy arrow or bolt with a four-sided (typically square) head for shooting from a crossbow or arbalest; a quarrel.

quarter n. 1) a measure of capacity usually used for corn of approximately eight bushels (i.e. sixty-four gallons); 2) a unit of weight of twenty-eight pounds; 3) a unit of length, usually for measuring cloth, equal to nine inches; 4) one of four equal parts of a unit of measure specified in the context; 5) a side; a direction; ~ wind.

quede n. a villain, an enemy, the Devil.

quelle v. to kill, slay; p. quelled.

queme n. to ~, satisfactorily, properly.

quere n. (OF coer, coeur, cour, cuer, queor, quere, etc.) the heart.

quidden v. to say sth., speak; hold sth. true, maintain, believe; p. quod.

quyte adv. completely, altogether, entirely; unreservedly.

qwaynte adj. 1) wise, clever; skillful, able; crafty, wily; cunning, sly, deceitful; 2) strange, unusual; remarkable, marvelous; peculiar, special; ~ of gyn, ingenious; of ~ gyn, ingeniously devised, skillfully made.

qwayntely adv. cleverly, cunningly, skillfully, elaborately.

qwayntise, qwaynttes, qwayntyse n. 1) wisdom, intelligence, skill; 2) guile, cunning; deceit, trickery; 3) ornamental battle trappings for man or horse; a surcoat or mantle worn over armour and bearing a heraldic device.

qwike adj. living, alive.

qwille n. a moment, a while.

qwite, qwitte v. to pay for sth; ~ hym his mede to requite sb. ~ mede (hire, wage), pay sb’s due.

qwitly adv. completely, entirely, wholly.

qwitt adv. freely, without hindrance or harm.

qwitt v. to take revenge (on sb.), get even with, punish.

rabet, rabyte, rabytt n. an Arab horse; pl. rabittes.

rafe see refe

rage adj. mad, insane; angry, furious.

rage n. madness, insanity; a fit of madness or frenzy, an act of madness.

rape v. to make haste, hasten, hurry; p. rapede.

rappe v. to strike sb. or sth, smite; of shields: clash together; strike off a head; p. rappede.

rase, rasse see rise

rape adj. early, soon; to ~, too early.

rathe adv. immediately, quickly, at once; before long, shortly.

raughte v. to strike, strike a blow; beat sb., strike.

raunge, rawnge n. 1) a line of fighting men assembled for battle or a joust, a rank; 2) the field marked out for a tournament, the lists.

rawe n. 1) a company, group; an army; on a ~, altogether, thoroughly; in all; 2) order, succession; on ~, in order, one after the other, successively.
rawndoun n. with gret ~, with great speed or violence.
rawnge see raunge
rawnsone, rawnsoun n. 1) the release of a prisoner of war by payment; 2) the payment made for the release of a prisoner of war; 3) the payment to buy off a hostile army; schalle
gaa no ~, there shall be no lesser penalty; pl. rawnsounes.
rayke v. to go, proceed, set out; rush; p. raykede.
recet, recette n. a place of refuge, shelter, or accommodation.
recche v. to take sth. in one’s hand, lay hold of, grasp.
recche v. to take heed of sb. or sth.; p. roghte.
recches n. pl. wealth, riches.
rede, redde n. advice, counsel; man of ~, a counselor; take to ~, to decide.
rede v. 1) to read; 2) to teach; instruct; 3) to advise, counsel; 4) to relate a narrative, tell a story, recount sth. to explain something; state sth. in speech or writing; 3pl. redis,
redys; p. & ppl. red; ~ l, l advise you.
refe v. to tear sb. or sth. apart, dismember; tear up; p. rafe.
refte v. error for berefte, to deprive or rob sb. or sth.; ~ of life, put to death.
reghte adv. 1) as intensifier with adverbial phrases: exactly, precisely, just; 2) very, extremely; also, fully, quite.
reke n. haste, hurry; on a ~, in a hurry.
rekke v. 1) to describe sth.; 2) to tell, speak; speak of sth., mention; 2) to give an accounting, render an account; present an account; make up an account; 3) to impute, calculate; regard; indicate, declare; rate sth., value; 3sg. rekkes; p. roghte.
rekkenyng ger. the act or an instance of calculation, accounting; maken ~, settle accounts, usually in figurative sense.
releue v. to alleviate wretchedness, ease, mitigate; to recompense sb.; p. releuede.
reme n. a kingdom, realm; the domain under a sovereign.
remembrance n. the store of personal or vicarious experiences available to an individual’s recollection; his capacity to recall the past; haven ~ to remember.
renaye n. an apostate, a renegade.
renayyd ppl. (beliefs) forsaken.
renke n. 1) an area designated for a tournament or sport; a jousting place; 2) a row through the midst of an army; pl. renkes.
rent v. 1) to tear cloth; 2) to lacerate flesh, skin, etc.; scratch; tear sb. to pieces.
rent, rente n. 1) revenue from property, income; 2) a tribute, tax, toll, fee, or payment.
repaste n. a meal; a feast; food; nourishment.
ren v. to lift sth., raise; p. reryde.
rerewarde n. the rear of an army, rear-guard.
reryde see ren
rescowe v. to rescue.
resoune n. 1) reason; 2) a proposal, plan, scheme; in his ~, in his wisdom, wisely.
ressett n. a place of refuge, shelter.
revere, ryve n. a river; the bank of a river; a body of water; vp ryve, upstream.
rewfully adv. in a sorrowful manner, dolefully, miserably; fearfully.
righte n. 1) morally right; justice; 2) truth, accuracy, correctness; at alle ~ in the best manner, well, completely, fittingly; pl. rightis.
rise v. 1) to stand up, rise to one’s feet from a sitting, kneeling, or reclining position; get up from table; 2) to rise from sleep, get out of bed; wake up; p. *rase, rasse.*

riste n. rest.

riste v. to rest.

robbery n. plunder, spoil, booty; stolen goods.

rode n. 1) riding; a ride, journey on horseback; 2) a riding expedition of a military nature; riding into combat; 3) road; 4) eccl. the cross.

ro3ere n. naut. an oar.

rofe n. a roof.

roghte see recche

roghte see rekke

roo n. peace, quiet. repose, rest; *riste and ~.*

roste n. roast meat: roast beef; a roast.

roste v. to roast.

roune, rownn v. to speak softly, whisper; to speak about sth. in secret or private.

rowme n. a) a space or span of time. b) an extension, or area.

rowte v. to snore; snort, grunt; p. *rowtteede*

rowte, rowtte n. 1) a body of attendants or followers, retinue, entourage; 2) an army; 3) a large number of people, a crowd, an assemblage.

rowthe n. pity, compassion, sympathy, mercy.

ruelle n. ~ bone, walrus ivory.

ruyde adj. of a spear, an arrow: sturdy; capable of wounding, cruel.

rygande ger. riding.

ryt v. to cut through, split; cut open; p. *ryt.*

ryve see *revere*

sacrament n. eccl. 1) the sacrament of the Eucharist; 2) the eucharistic elements; the consecrated bread in the Eucharist, the host, and the consecrated wine of the Eucharist.

sacrynge n. eccl. the consecration of the bread and wine in the service of the mass.

sadill n. a saddle.

saferonne n. an orange-red product consisting of the dried stigmas of *Crocus sativus* now used chiefly for colouring and flavouring; formerly extensively used in medicine as a cordial and sudorific; saffron.

saff-cundyt n. (OF saf-conduit) the officially granted privilege of passing through an overlord’s domain undisturbed or under escort; safe-conduct.

saiden see *saye*

sall, schall, schull aux. with infinitive, used to form the future tense, shall.

salte n. salt; ~ flode. the salty sea.

samen adv. together, in company; mutually, with each other.
samytyn. a kind of silken cloth, often embroidered or interwoven with threads of gold or silver, samite.

sandyn. 1) envoy, messenger; pl. sandis; 2) thanke Jhesu Cristes ~, thank Jesus Christ’s ordering of events.

Sarajenes n. pl. Saracens; as medieval Christian called Muslims.

sare, sore, soure adj. characterized or attended by physical pain, painful.

sare, sore, soure adv. 1) painfully, injuriously; bitterly; 2) harshly, stringently, severely; 3) loudly; emphatically, fervently, forcefully; 4) as an adverb of degree or as an intensive: in great amount, profusely; in great numbers; to a great degree or extent, considerably; utterly. completely: boughte full ~ fig. to pay dearly for sth.

sariandis, seriauntis n. pl. servants, officials, envoys; ~ of mase, an official bearing a mace.

satyne v. a smooth, lustrous, silken cloth, satin; a piece of such cloth.

sauely adj. without harm or injury occasioned or received; safely.

sauoire n. 1) taste; 2) the flavor or taste of food; 3) smell as an inherent property of matter.

saule n. soul.

saunee faile, sance faile phr. (OF) without doubt, doubtless; certainly, truly; used as a common rhyme tag.

saue n. 1) what is said, talk, words; a speech, discourse; 2) a story, narrative; a parable; an account, a history; in (that) ~, in (that) telling.

sawser n. a saucer, dish; a saltcellar.

saye, sayne, sey, seye, seyne v. to say; 3sgl.seys, saythe; 3pl. saiden; p. sayde, seyd, seyde; imp. sayse.

sayne, saynte adj. saint.

saythe see saye

sayntours n. pl. (OF error for signeurs) gentlemen.

scathe, scape n. 1) harm, injury; loss, damage; 2) a matter for regret, sorrow, or pity; that was ~, that was a pity.

schake v. to brandish a spear, sword, etc.; wield a weapon; ppl. schakede.

schall see sail

schame n. 1) the feeling of having offended against propriety or decency; the feeling of having done something disgraceful; do ~, to cause sb. to feel shame; 2) disgraceful conduct, immoral behavior; 3) physical damage.

schane see schyne

schape v. to give sth. specific or definite shape, form; arrange; ppl. yschapede.

schare see schere

sche, scho, sho pron. she.

scheldyn. arm. a shield.

schende, schenttyn. v. 1) to do harm to sb., injure; bring sb. to ruin, overcome; damage, afflict; p. schent; ppl. shent. schent, schente destroyed; defiled, befouled; disfigured, mutilated; ben shent, to be lost, undone, ruined, confounded.

schene adj. of a person, especially a lady: beautiful, fair, handsome.

schentschepe v. to disgrace sb.

schepyn. sheep.

schere v. to cut or penetrate with a weapon or sharp instrument; p. schare; ppl. schorne.

schethyn. a holder for a sword, knife, etc.; a sheath, scabbard.

schetyn. pl. any length of cloth, especially linen; a piece of cloth used as a receptacle.
**schette** v. to lock a door or gate; fasten closed; *p.* **schett, schette, schott.**

**schewe** v. to show; to make known sth., that sth. is so, make clear, report; 2) to proclaim; declare sth. to sb.; *p.* **schewed, schewyd; ppl. yschewed, ischewed ppl.** (used as an active past) to push, shove; attempt to move sb. or sth. by pushing and shoving; do battle, charge; to drive forward, push on, press forward.

**schille** adj. loud, resounding; shrill, high-pitched.

**schille** adv. loudly, resoundingly; shrilly, with a high pitch.

**ship, schipe** n. a ship, a boat, vessel; *pl.* **schippes, schippis.**

**schippe** v. to board a ship; to sail; *imp. schippes.*

**scho** see **sche**

**schold, scholde, sold, solde** v. (with *inf.*) in sbjunctive or conditional constructions, should, would.

**schorne** see **schere**

**schott** v. *p.* see **schette**

**schott** v. to shoot; *imp. schottis.*

**schouldere** n. shoulder.

**schrafe** see **schriven**

**schrewed** adj. terrible, dreadful; adverse, bad; unpleasant or dangerous to experience; unfortunate.

**schriven** v. 1) to make confession; 2) to administer the sacrament of penance to sb.; hear the confession; absolve sb.; *p.* **schrafe.**

**schull** see **sail**

**schyde** n. a piece of hewn timber, a plank or beam.

**schydis** n. pl. 1) pieces of hewn timber, planks, beams; 2) small fragments of wood, splinters, chips.

**schyne** v. to send forth light, be bright; *p.* **schane, shone; ger. schynynge.**

**sekayre** v. to frighten sb., terrify.

**sclendre** adj. not fat or fleshy, thin, lean, gaunt; slim, slender.

**score** n. twenty, a score; *many (a) ~*, large numbers.

**scrippe** n. a bag or satchel; a pilgrim’s wallet.

**se, see** n. the sea.

**seche** v. to seek, look for sth.; to search, search about; go hunting, hunt.

**secounde** adj. *num.* second.

**see, sen** v. to see; *3sg. sees, seese, sey3; 3pl. seyen, sey3en; p. sawe, segh, sowghe; ppl. ysee, sene.*

**segge** n. the siege of a town or castle.

**segh** see **see** v.

**seke** n. sick; the sick.

**seke** n. in phrases: *for ~* (of, with personal pronoun or noun) for the benefit of sb., a person’s soul, etc.; for sb.’s sake; *for Goddes ~.*

**sekenes** n. sickness; illness.

**sekire** adj. free from danger or harm; secure, safe.

**sekirly** adv. with certainty, without mistake, definitely, assuredly; really, actually, in fact.

**selcouthe** adj. 1) marvelous, miraculous, preternatural; 2) unusual, strange, peculiar.

**sele** n. a seal.
semblande, semblaunt n. 1) gracious manner, courteousness; friendliness, hospitality; 2) the face, the countenance, facial expression, an expression, a look.

sen adv. since.

sen, sene v. see see v.

sendale, sendel, sendelle n. a thin rich silken material; a covering or garment of this material; sendal.

sengly adv. without adornment, simply, plainly; alone, on one’s own.

separe, sopere n. evening meal; supper.

sere adv. 1) physically apart, asunder; 2) a great deal, much; many.

sere n. a king, lord, ruler, patron; a person of social importance; sire, father.

sergeande, sergeaunte n. mil. a soldier; a foot soldier; an attendant of a knight, a squire; a tenant by military service under the rank of knight; ~ of armes, an officer (of a king, nobleman, etc.) commanding a body of armed men.

seriauntis see sariandis

serke n. a garment worn next to the skin, an undergarment; a shirt.

sertane adv. certainly.

seruen v. 1) to deserve sth., be worthy of; 2) to guard sb., preserve from death; to keep the peace.

seruyce n. provision of food; the sequence of dishes served in a meal, menu.

sesse v. to cease to do sth., cease to be.

sesyn v. to take possession of a country, city, land, goods, etc.; seize sth. by force; capture sth.; p. sesyde.

sethe v. to boil, seethe; of solid food: be boiled in a liquid; p. sethide; ppl. sothen.

sue, seuenn num. seven.

sewe v. to follow after; follow sb., walk behind.

sey, seye see saye

seyen see see v.

sey3, seyzen see see v.

seyne see saye

sho see sche

shyfte v. to divide, separate; share; distribute sth.

signyficacioun, signyficacyoun, sygnyfycacoune n. a symbol; in ~, as a symbol, symbolizing; symbolic meaning; 2) a sign, portent; the meaning of an omen, a dream.

siluyre n. silver.

sirris n. pl. sirs.

skape, skaped see aschappe

skathe n. harm, injury; loss, damage.

skelpe v. a blow, stroke, slap.

skete adv. swiftly, quickly; soon; immediately, without delay.

skille, skylle n. 1) that which is reasonable, fitting, appropriate, proper, correct, right; 2) a logical argument or reasoned exposition.

skomfite v. to defeat or conquer sb., in battle.

skratche v. to scratch; p. skrattede.

skynne n. the human skin.
sla, slee, slone, sloo v. to slay; to kill, commit murder; cause death, destroy; ~ up, to kill (a whole group of people), wipe out completely; 3sg. slaes; p. sla, slaa, slewe, sloo, slough, sloughe; ppl. slayne, yslayne, yslawe.

slake v. 1) to end, come to an end, cease; ~ boste, put an end to sb.’s pride; 2) to retreat; slacken an attack; cease fighting.

slawyne n. a cloak, especially a pilgrim’s cloak or mantle.

slaye see sla

slee, sley adj. 1) wise, prudent; clever, ingenious; skillful, expert, accomplished; gracious, fair; 2) crafty, cunning, deceitful.

slee see sla

slewe see sla

slike pron. a person or thing of the kind referred to.

slike, slyke adj. with sg. or pl. n.: of a kind previously mentioned, described, implied; such.

sloo see sla

slough, sloughe see sla

slyng n. a hand-held weapon for throwing stones or similar missiles, a sling; staffe-slyng(er), 1) a sling attached to a staff; 2) a soldier armed with such a sling; see Explanatory Note 3974.

slynger n. a soldier armed with a sling.

slyte v. to split sb. or sth. with a knife or other weapon, cleave, split open; p. slytt.

smale, smalle adj. small; of low estate, common.

smarte, smerte adv. in a manner causing pain, sharply, severely; fiercely, vigorously; swiftly.

smarte n. physical pain; harm.

smerte v. 1) to cause sb. physical pain, hardship, etc.; 2) to cause sb. to suffer grief, remorse, emotional distress; disturb.

smate see smytte

smeten see smytte

smote see smytte

smytte v. 1) to deal a blow, strike, beat; do battle, fight; 2) to cut off a part of the body, sever; 3) to pierce or penetrate; 4) to go, move; ~ awei, brush off; sweep away; ~ on, to strike sb. or sth.; ~ pese, strike silence, demand silence; 3pl. smeten; p. smate, smote; ppl. smyttyn, ismete.

snowe n. snow.

snelle adj rapid in movement or motion, swift; bold, valiant, courageous.

snelle adv. 1) swiftly, promptly, at once; 2) eagerly, energetically, heartily; assiduously; 3) roughly, fiercely.

snelle v. to hasten sb., urge on.

socoure n. aid, help, protection, refuge, succour.

socoure v. to help, assist, aid.

socourynge ger. assistance, help; military assistance, aid in battle; an act of deliverance from danger, a rescue.

sodeynly adv. all at once, in an instant, suddenly.

sogeourne v. to stay temporarily in a place, abide for a time; p. sogeorunyde, soiourned.

solace v. 1) to entertain sb., amuse; to please, cheer up; 2) to comfort sb., console.

sold, solde see schold
somdele, somedelle, somdelle adj. & adv. some small, a little; somewhat, to some degree or extent.
somckyns adj. some kind of; some kinds of; some.
somere n. a packhorse.
somoun n. a command to appear; a call, an entreaty, invitation.
sone adv. soon.
sone n. a son; pl. and gen. sonnes.
sone, sonne n. the sun.
songen ppl. sung.
sop n. a piece of bread dipped or soaked in wine, water, milk, or some other liquid; ~ in wyn, cloth of red color; a piece of such cloth.
sope n. soup.
sopere see sepere
sore see sare
sothe n. with def. art. or dem. adj.: the truth of a situation; the actual fact.
sothen see sethe
soure see sare
sowdane n. 1) the supreme ruler of one of the medieval Muslim states, the sultan; 2) a Saracen ruler; a Saracen knight.
sowghe see see
sowme n. 1) a sum of money; 2) the totality of something, the whole.
sownn n. sound, a sound.
spane n. a unit of length variously reckoned as corresponding to the distance from the tip of the thumb to the tip of the middle or the little finger when the hand is fully extended, a span, hand’s breadth.
specyell n. a close friend, an intimate associate.
spede n. 1) luck, fortune; gude ~, good fortune, prosperity; 2) the rate of progress or promptness in doing something; with gude ~, promptly, right away.
spede, spedde v. 1) to achieve one’s goal, accomplish one’s purpose; fulfill one’s expectation; 2) to fare, get along, do; 3) to travel swiftly; come or go quickly; depart in haste; 4) in impersonal constructions: it turns out, it happens; with ‘that’ clause: it happens to sb. that sth. be done; 5) to achieve one’s goal, accomplish one’s purpose; ~ of, succeed in obtaining.
speke v. to speak; 3sg. spekes; p. spak, spake, spakke.
sphere v. to lock or bar a gate, door, window, etc.
sphere v. to make inquiries.
sphere-hede n. mil. the pointed metal end of a spear.
sphere-man n. mil. one who fights with a spear, a spearman.
spete n. a spit for roasting meat, fish.
spill, spyll v. to kill especially in a brutal or violent fashion, slay; ppl. spilte.
splentes n. pl. arm. the metal plates making up or reinforcing armour; ~ of steel.
spronede n. to kick or strike with the foot; p. spornede.
spowrre n. a spur, consisting of either a single spiked projection or a spiked wheel attached to a rider’s heel.
spowssyng n. a wedding; the celebration of a wedding.
spoyle v. to strip sb. of clothes, undress.
sprang see spryng
sprete n. a pole used for propelling a boat, a punting pole.
spryngalles n. pl. mil. 1) siege machines used for hurling stones and other heavy projectiles, catapults; 2) the missiles thrown by such a catapult; see Explanatory Note 1838.
spryng v. 1) of grass, leaves, branches: to come up, come out; of flowers: bloom, open; 2) of the day: to dawn, break; 3) to arise, originate, begin; happen, occur, come about; 4) of fire. flame, a spark: to leap; 5) of news, fame: to spread, be reported, become known; p. sprange, spronge.
spycery, spysorye n. pl. spices.
spyll see spill
squoymous adj. easily nauseated, squeamish; feeling queasy.
sqwyere n. a squire; pl. sqwyers.
stable v. to establish or impose order; pacify (a land, town), bring order to; p. stablicde.
stadde v. to stop, come to a halt; cease, end sth., bring to a close.
staffe n. a stick of wood, rod; pl. staffes, staues.
staffe-slynger see slyng
stale see stele
stalworthe adj. physically strong, powerful; hardy, robust.
stande v. ~ awe for, to be afraid, have fear; be afraid to do sth.
stanes, stanys, stony n. pl. stones, rocks; bothe ~ and stokkes, everything.
stapile, stapill, n. 1) a short rod or bar of iron or other metal bent into the form of a U or of three sides of a rectangle, and pointed at the ends, to be driven into a post, plank, wall, or other surface, in order to serve as a hold for a hasp, hook, or bolt to secure a door or box; 2) a pillar or column.
starke adj. 1) stiff, rigid; stiff with fear; 2) strong, sturdy, mighty.
statte n. state, condition; good or normal physical or emotional condition; normal physical function.
stafles see staffe
stede n. 1) a splendid, noble, spirited horse, a steed; a riding horse; 2) a war horse, charger; pl. stedis.
stede n. a particular part of space, of definite location though often of unspecified extent.
stede v. to place sb. or sth. somewhere, situate, station; be stedde, to be beset or assailed; be afflicted; ppl. stedde.
steke v. to stab sb., an animal to death, to kill; p. stekede, stekide.
stele n. steel.
sterfen v. to die, perish; cease to exist; p. sterrff.
sterlynghe n. the English silver penny; the value of such a coin.
sterne n. an apparently luminous celestial body; a star, planet; a comet.
sterte, stirtt v. to move quickly, dart; hasten, rush; dash forward; ~ up, rush up.
stueren v. to die, perish; cease to exist.
steryn adj. strong, hardy, bold, valiant; daring, valorous.
steryny adv. harshly, severely, sternly.
steuen, steuenn n. the human voice.

stiewarde, styward n. 1) an official or a servant in charge of the domestic affairs of a household; 2) a principal officer in charge of the domestic affairs of a royal or imperial household, a seneschal; 3) the title of various high offices in royal courts held by great nobles: heigh ~, chamberlain.

still adj. meek, mild, of gentle disposition.

stille, stillly, stillyly, style adv. 1) silently, noiselessly, without a sound; without speaking; 2) meekly, submissively; mildly, peaceably; 3) secretly, covertly; privately, in private.

stirrt see sterne

stode see stonde

stodie v. to strive to do sth., endeavour, try; direct one’s efforts or thoughts toward doing sth.

stodyn see stonde

stokke n. a piece of cut timber, log, plank; a block of wood; a post or timber used as a weapon, usually in pl.; bothe ~ and stanys, everything.

stonayde, stonayed ppl. (error for astonyede) 1) stupified, stunned; insensate, unconscious; 2) overcome with surprise or wonder; surprised, amazed, astonished.

stonde v. 1) to stand upright; stand in a place, to be standing; 2) to make a stand in battle, stand and fight, resist an enemy in battle; 3) to be; exist; ~ drede of, be afraid of sb. or sth.; ~ nede, to be in need of help; p. stode, stodyn.

stounde, stownde, stownnde n. a relatively short space or length of time, a while; in littill ~, in a little while, soon, shortly; in a short time, in a moment, in an instant; at that ~, at that moment, at that time, then.

stoupe, stowppe v. to bend the body forward and downward, stoop.

stownde, stownnde see stounde

stowre n. armed conflict, combat, warfare, fighting, battle.

stowte, stowtte adj. 1) bold, valiant; skilled in battle, strong in fight, mighty; 2) noble, excellent, princely; noble in bearing or appearance, stately; gaye and ~ of beautiful appearance, splendidly adorned.

stowtely adv. 1) boldly; 2) nobly, excellently.

straa n. straw.

strake n. a blow or buffet.

strake v. see stryke

strande n. shore; pl. strandis.

strange adj. strong.

strayte adj. fierce, violent.

strekke v. to go quickly, proceed rapidly, rush; p. strekedee.

strewede v. of a place or room: to arrange or prepare for a certain purpose.

stroke n. a blow delivered with a weapon; a slash, cut; a thrust or stab.

stryfe n. 1) dissension, discord, contention; quarreling; 2) resistance, opposition; objection; withowtten ~, without hesitation, unquestionably, no doubt; with no difficulty.

stryfye, stryve v. to quarrel; p. stryuen.

stryke v. to deliver a blow; strike or slash (with a sword); fight, attack; imp. strakes; p. strake.

stryue, stryuen see stryfe

stutly adv. boldly, valiantly; with skill in battle.

styes n. pl. ladders.
style see stille
stylet n. a pause or stop in an action; withouten ~, without any delay, without ceasing, endlessly, for a long time.
styward see stierarde
suelle adv. swiftly, promptly.
suerdis n. pl. swords; gen. sword’s.
suffre v. 1) to undergo physical, mental, or spiritual distress or affliction, suffer; 2) to allow sth. to occur or continue, permit, tolerate, fail to prevent or suppress; p. suffrede.
suoghe, swougehe n. a loss of consciousness, faint, swoon; a dede ~, a dead faint.
suppe v. to drink or swallow; drink in small mouthfuls, taste, sip; 3.sg suppes.
surcote n. an outer coat or overgarment of varying style, frequently of rich material, worn by men.
surnownn n. an additional name, usually derived from a quality.
suse interj. a cry of encouragement: Onwards! Come on!
susspecyoun n. a feeling or belief that someone has committed a crime or done sth. wrong.
sustynaunce n. that which is essential to sustain life; the necessities of life; a livelihood.
suythe, swith, swithe, swythe adv. 1) as an adv. of degree modifying a finite verb or ppl., the meaning is largely contextual, depending on the verb being modified; e.g., with great physical force, violently, hard, diligently, laboriously, earnestly, devoutly, insistently, vehemently, swiftly, fast; as adverb of degree modifying an adj. or a ppl., very, extremely, much; 2) promptly, without delay, quickly; soon, in a short time; right away, at once, immediately; ful ~.
swa adv. in the aforesaid manner or way, in the way previously described, in this way, in such a way, in the same way, so.
swagates adv. in this or that manner, in such a way; thus.
swalowe n. bird of the genus Hirundo, especially the European swallow (Hirundo rustica).
swarte adj. black; dark.
swaunke see swynke
swayne n. an attendant upon a knight, a squire; a soldier below the rank of knight.
swelte v. to cease living, perish, die.
swete adj. 1) sweet to the taste; 2) agreeable, delightful, pleasing; pleasurable.
swete n. blood, lifeblood.
swilke adj. of a kind previously mentioned, described, implied; of the sort, similar, like; also, same, the same; such.
swire, swyre n. the neck of a human being; the throat; bi my ~.
swith, swithe adv. see suythe
swithe adj. great; excessive, intense.
swoughe see suoghe
swoune n. a loss of consciousness, faint, swoon; a temporary state or period of unconsciousness.
swoune v. to become unconscious, faint, swoon.
swounyng n. a state of unconsciousness, swoon; the act of swooning.
swylk adv. such.
swynke n. 1) physical labor, hard work, toil; 2) effort; trouble, difficulty.
swynke v. to engage in physical labour, work hard, toil; to struggle; p. swaunke.
swythe see suythe
syclatoun, sykelatoun n. a kind of rich silken fabric woven with gold.
sye v. to sigh, moan expressing sorrow, grief, or a troubled frame of mind; p. sy3yd.
sygnysficacoune see signyficacioun
syne v. to sin. do wrong: 2) to commit a sexual sin; fornicate.
sythe adv. afterward, after that, then; subsequently, since then.
sythe n. a span of time: a ~, one time, once; other ~, a second time, the second time.
sythen conj. 1) subsequent to the time that, after; once that; 2) because, for; inasmuch as, seeing that.
sythen prep. since.
sythen v. to go; journey, travel.

taa see tane pron.
tabrouns n. drums.
tailerde, tayliarde n. used as a term of contempt; human who are tailed, like dogs; pl.
tayllyardis; see Explanatory Note 1784.
taken v. to take; to grip, take hold; ~ to rede, adopt a course of action, make a plan; decide to do sth.; 3sg. tase; p. toke; ppl. tane.
takill, takylle n. mil. archery equipment; an arrow; equipment used in operating a mangonel; a bolt shot by a catapult or similar device; weaponry, arms.
tale n. that which one tells, the oral or written relation of an event or a series of events purporting to be true, a personal narrative, an account; bi ~, according to accounts; leten ~, leave a subject, turn from.
talent n. 1) feeling, emotion, passion; power, force; disposition, nature, character; haven ~, to have physical ability; 2) desire, will; inclination, habit, bent.
talkynge ger. 1) the act of relating a story, a recitation, narration; 2) a spoken or written narrative, a story.
talowe n. the fatty tissue of an animal.
tane pron. & adj. (usually preceded by the) 1) one, the one; 2) one of two; the ~ side, one side; the near side.
tane v. see taken
tane v. see ten
tange v. to bite sb., sting; p. tangede.
taen n. pl. 1) toes of the human foot; 2) the feet; in phrases denoting the entire length of the body: from the creste vnto ~, completely.
targe, targi n. mil. 1) a light shield, often small and round in shape; a buckler, targe; 2) a large protective cover of joined or overlapping shields or other improvised materials used in siege warfare; targis and hurdis.
tarynge, taryinnge ger. the act of delaying, the fact of being delayed; a delay; the fact of being slow to do something; withowten ~, without delay, at once.
tase see taken
taulde see tellen
tayliarde, tayllyardis see tailerde
telde see tellen.
tellen v. 1) to tell; 2) to count, reckon (money, gold); 3sg. and imp. tellis; p. talde, telled; ppl. taulde, telde.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tempre</td>
<td>v. to be mixed with sth.; combine ingredients, blend a mixture of ingredients; p. temprede.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>v. to drag sb. or sth. somewhere; draw sth. from one place to another; p. tane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tene</td>
<td>v. to do sb. or sth. harm; harass sb., annoy, oppress; p. tenyd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tent</td>
<td>v. 1) to concentrate; think intently about sth.; study sth.; focus one’s mind on sth.; 2) to take sth. into account, consider; 3) to listen; attend to someone’s words; listen to a tale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenyd</td>
<td>see tene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðaa, thase</td>
<td>dem. adj. those.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðaire, thaire, their</td>
<td>poss. adj. 3pl. their.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðam, tham</td>
<td>obj. pron. 3pl. them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðamselhe</td>
<td>refl. pron. 3pl. themselves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðan, thane</td>
<td>conj. then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thare, þer, þere, ther, there</td>
<td>adv. there; in that place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tharmes</td>
<td>n. pl. entrails, viscera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thase</td>
<td>see þaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þay</td>
<td>pron. 3pl. they.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þe, the</td>
<td>the.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þe, the</td>
<td>obj. pron. 2sg. you (thee).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þeche</td>
<td>n. straw, reeds, or similar material used in covering a roof, thatch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þedir</td>
<td>adv. with verbs of motion: to that place, there, thither.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þedirwarde</td>
<td>adv. with verbs of motion: to or toward that place; in that direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thee</td>
<td>n. thigh; ~ bane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þerappon</td>
<td>adv. with reference to an action, a circumstance, an event in a temporal sequence, next after that, subsequently, then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therby, þerby</td>
<td>adv. 1) near that place; 2) by means of that, through that, thereby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thereto, therto</td>
<td>adv. with reference to a promise, an oath, a vow, declaration of intent, etc.: to that or it; in confirmation of that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therewhills</td>
<td>conj. while, as long as, then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therewith, þerwith</td>
<td>adv. 1) from it or them; with it or them; 2) in response to that, that being done or said, at that, thereupon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therforne</td>
<td>adv. on account of that, for that reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þerin</td>
<td>adv. in that place, in it, within it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therof, þeroffe</td>
<td>adv. 1) out of that place, out of it, away from it; 2) from that or it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þerowtte</td>
<td>adv. out of that place; out in the open, outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thethyn</td>
<td>adv. from that place, from there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thyem</td>
<td>see þam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þis, this</td>
<td>dem. adj. this; pl. thies, these.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tho</td>
<td>adv. then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þofe, þoghe</td>
<td>adv. however, yet, nevertheless, though.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoght, thoughte</td>
<td>see thynke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thole</td>
<td>v. to be made to undergo a penalty for misdeeds; to suffer; p. tholed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thonour, thownour</td>
<td>n. the loud or rumbling noise often heard before or during a rainstorm, thunder; ~ dynt, a stroke or clap of thunder; a thunderbolt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þore</td>
<td>see dore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
thorghe, thorow, thorowe, thourghe, þorw3, thurgh, thurghe prep. 1) during and to the end or conclusion of a period of time, from beginning to end of a period, over the whole period; 2) by the agency of sb.: through the person of, by; with the help of.

thorowt, thorowte, thurghewote adv. & prep. throughout.
thownour see thonour
thraste v. ~ oute, to squeeze.
thrawe n. 1) a short period of time; 2) an occasion, a circumstance, an occurrence; in a ~, in a short space of time. quickly; aní ~, for any length of time, at all.

thride adj. ord. num. third.
thriste v. to crowd, throng; press forward, force one’s way.
thritty adj. num. thirty.
throte n. the throat.
thrynge v. 1) to go, come, move; rush; 2) to force one’s way forward; charge at sb., into battle.

thurgh see thorghe
thurghewote see thorowt
thusgates, þusgates adv. in the aforesaid manner, in the previously indicated way, so, as follows; accordingly, consequently, therefore.

thyn, thynke poss. adj. your.

thynke v. to think: 3sg. thynkes, thynkis; p. thoght, thoghte.
tide, tyde n. 1) time: a season, space of time; 2) an indefinite space of time, a while.
tide, tyde v. to happen, occur, come about; become of sb., happen to sb.; used as subj. or future. tidys; tyd me lyfe tyde me dede, whether I live or I die.
tighten v. to set sth. in position; ppl. tighte.
tite, tyte adv. soon. hastily; als ~, immediately, right away.
tobraste v. to burst open, explode; split open forcefully; ppl. tobraste.
tobrissen v. to injure sb., the body, or a part of the body severely, especially by a blow or by crushing: crush sb., oneself to death; p. tobrissed.
toffrusschen v. to smash sb. or sth., crush; to beat or batter sb. to death; p. toffrusschyd.
tohewe v. to cut sb., a body, flesh, etc. to pieces; p. tohewedede.
tokynyng ger. a representation through a visible object or an observable event of a truth, condition, etc.: an illustration of a state of affairs through a representative action; evidence, proof; a confirming detail.
tome adj. empty.
tomorne adv. tomorrow.
topcastelle n. mil. a platform near the top of the mast of a ship, especially one on a fighting ship, topcastle; see Explanatory Note 60..
tope ouer taile phr. head over heels, headlong.
topsayle adv. upside down, head first.
torafe, toraffe see to rive
torell n. 1) a small circular tower which is part of a castle or a wall; 2) highest point, apex, summit.
torent v. to rip sth to pieces; break sth apart. Of a person, the body or flesh: to be torn in pieces, be lacerated; of a thing: break into pieces.
torive v. to rip out part of sb.'s body; tear sb. or sth. apart; to lacerate; p. & ppl. torofe, tornaffe.
torne v. to turn, turn out to be; p. tornede, tournede.
tornys n. a denier of Tours, worth four fifths of that of Paris; a debased coin, imitative of the French silver tournois; whet ~, the French silver tournois, based on the denier of Tours and used as a money of account.
torofe see torive
toschake v. to tremble, quake; break open or apart from strong vibrations.
toschent v. to destroy sb. or sth. utterly: to undo; ruin sb; break part of the body beyond repair, shatter, smash.
tober pron. the second of two persons, things, etc., the latter.
toun n. a town.
tounnes n. pl. large barrels for wine, ale, or other liquid; casks.
tow3 adj. make it ~, to make difficulties, make things difficult; to show reluctance to do sth.
toyle n. violent conflict, battle.
trapped, trappede ppl. dressed, caparisoned; armour-clad; wele trapped.
trappour n. a ceremonial or military trapping for a horse, made of cloth when primarily decorative and of armour when defensive as well as ornamental.
trauaile, trauayle n. effort, exertion; extra work, complication.
truelle n. a journey, trip; motion, movement, passage.
truelle v. 1) to work for wages; 2) to put forth great effort, take pains.
trawly see trewely
traye v. to vex sb., annoy, irritate; p. trayede.
traysty, tristy adj. 1) faithful, loyal, trustworthy, steadfast; 2) to be depended upon, reliable.
tre-castelle n. a siege tower made of timber; see Explanatory Note 1859.
trekillede see triken
treson, tresone, tresoun, tresoune n. treason.
tresorye n. a building, repository, vault, in which wealth, precious objects, etc. are stored and protected; a treasury, storehouse.
tresoure n. a store of riches, valuable objects, accumulated wealth, spoils; a quantity of money, precious metals, or stones, etc; pl. tresours.
trete v. to engage in negotiations, seek a settlement of differences; discuss terms (of a marriage).
trew, trewe adj. true.
trewage n. payment in money, goods, people, etc. owed by one nation or its ruler to another or exacted from one nation by another by virtue and in token of the former's subordinate status; tribute.
trewely, trawly adv. truly.
trewse n. a pledge to cease hostilities for a lengthy or an indefinite period of time, a truce, usually as a preliminary to further negotiation or the formal establishment of a peace; also, the peace established through such a truce.
treytour, treytoure n. a traitor.
triken v. to hang down, fall in a flowing manner; p. trekillede.
tripgettis n. mil. a siege weapon designed to cast stones, darts, etc., with a counterweighted or man-powered throwing arm; a trebuchet; see Explanatory Note 5338-5350.
triste n. reliability, trustworthiness; trustiness, fidelity, faithfulness; of eyyll ~, faithless.
tristis n. pl. supports, usually two-legged and employed in pairs, for boards or planks serving as a tabletops, trestles.

tristnen v. to trust; p. tristede.

tristy see trasty

trompe v. to sound a trumpet, horn, etc.; call an army to assemble by blowing trumpets.

trompes, trompis, tromppes n. 1) any of several trumpetlike horns in use in the Middle Ages; 2) one who plays a trompe, a trumpeter.

trompetes, tromppettes n. 1) any of several small wind instruments used primarily to proclaim, celebrate, summon, or warn; 2) a trumpeter.

troncheoun n. a staff; club, cudgel, truncheon.

trowe v. to have trust, be trustful; rely on sb. or sth., trust in God.

trowghe n. a grain hopper, a receiver like an inverted pyramid or cone, through which grain or anything to be ground passes into the mill.

trusse v. tie sb. or sth. to or onto sth.

tues v. imp. (OF) kill, slay.

tuly, twyly adj. deep red, crimson: ~ silke a deep red colour; also, fabric of such a colour.

tunge n. the human tongue; fig. language.

twa, twaye, twey, twoo adj. num. two.

twyly see tuly

tyde see tide

tydynge, tythyngge n. 1) a report of an occurrence or event; a report brought by an official messenger; information gathered for a particular purpose, intelligence; 2) a message, an oral communication delivered by a herald; 3) an announcement; a prophecy.

tyne v. to suffer loss of a part, function, or faculty of the body, etc.; lyfe ~, lose one’s life, die; p. tynt, tynte.

tyte see tite

tythyngge n. 1) recompense, reward; 2) yielding, yielding to something.

tythyngge n. a tenth part of something, ten percent.

tythyngge see tydynge

vmbyclose v. to close in upon an enemy; surround; besiege.

vmbyssett v. to invest or besiege a stronghold, an enemy, etc.

vmbythoughte, vnbthynghtead v. p.of vmbythinke, to think about sth., consider, ponder.

vmgange n. circumference, circuit, perimeter.

vnblythe adj. unhappy; sad, sorrowful.

vnclosede ppl. surrounded or encompassed.

vncontays adj. inconsiderate, rude, ill-behaved; ignoble; as noun: one who is rude.

vncouthe adj. unknown; unidentified; alien; foreign.

vndirstande, vndirstande v. to understand; don ~, to teach sb.; give information to sb.; p. vndirstode.

vnndo v. 1) unlock; 2) to lay out (goods or wares), display; p. vnnde.

vngirde ppl. not wearing armour, not dressed for combat; not wearing a belt or girdle, with belt or girdle removed.

vnhelyde ppl. uncovered, exposed.

vnkindly adj. not in accord with the regular course of nature, unnatural, extraordinary.
vnlace v. to loosen the laces of garments, footgear, armour, etc., usually in preparation for removal from the body.

vnnethes adv. 1) hardly, scarcely, barely; 2) with difficulty, not without effort.

vnpyn v. to unbolt a gate; unbar.

vnrighete n. that which is unjust, injustice.

vuryde adv. 1) wildly, fiercely; 2) in great numbers, densely, thickly.

vnschote v. to open a door, gate, etc.

vnskille n. injustice, wrong; with ~, without regard for principle; wrongfully, unjustly.

vnthanke n. ill-will, wrath, anger.

vnwaxe v. to decrease in physical power or vigour.

vnwreste adj. wicked, immoral, depraved

vpriste n. resurrection; the act of rising from bed.

vttermaste, vttirmaste adv. outermost.

valaye n. valley.

vawarde n. mil. the foremost position or part of an army, the vanguard of an army.

velany n. a treacherous act, villany; don (grete) ~, to act wickedly or disgracefully, do a wrong, cause harm.

venerry n. the practice of hunting game animals.

venu n. attack.

venysoun n. 1) a wild animal hunted for food or sport, game animal; 2) the meat of a game animal.

verrament, verrayment adv. (AN ver(r)eiment, verraiment) certainly, truly; used almost invariably in rhyme position.

verrey adj. (AN ver(r)ei, ver(r)i, verrae) truly and thoroughly such, corresponding fully with what is implied by the name; true.

vertu n. virtue.

vesage n. the human face.

vesyoun see avisyoun

vetaile, vetalle, vetayle, vitaile, vytaile n. 1) food, drink, comestible commodities; 2) stocks of food and drink, esp. for use in warfare or travel; 3) supplies.

viage n. a journey by land or sea; a pilgrimage.

vigour n. strength, determination, military force, martial prowess, energy or zeal.

villély adv. so as to be morally offensive, wrongfully; wickedly, viciously.

vitaile see vetaile

vitylén v. to provide sb. with supplies of food and drink or other necessities; to supply.

volantyne n. coll. birds, especially those raised or prepared for consumption, poultry.

vytaile see vetaile

wake v. 1) to remain awake in a custodial, protective, or supervisory capacity; 2) to watch over (sb. or sth.), protect.

walde, welde n. 1) dominion; sphere, domain; control, authority; haue in ~; 2) keeping, possession; haue in ~.

wande see winden

wand see wonden
wane n. abundance, plenty; an abundance of something; a copious amount, an excess; ful ~, at
great speed, swiftly; with great force, forcefully; strongly; excessively.
wanne see winne
wannowe interj. contraction of: what now.
wapyne n. a weapon; weapons, battle gear, military equipment, armaments, arms, weaponry;
pl. wapyns.
warande v. to guarantee the safety of sth. or sb.
warauonde, waraunte n. one who guards or defends, a protector; a champion.
ward adv. in the direction of ; toward.
wardane, wardayne n. one who is in charge of a castle, a city, etc.; a chief officer, master, an
overseer; a city official with authority similar to that of a mayor.
wardis n. care.
ware, warre adj. aware, mindful; be ~ of, know about (sb. or sth.), have knowledge of; be
familiar with.
ware, warre n. war; v. to wage war, fight, attack, do battle.
ware, waren v. see bee
wareof adv. of whom, whose; of which.
warne conj. were it not that sth. was so, if not for the fact that.
warysoun n. a reward or payment bestowed by a superior in exchange for some service.
wasche v. to wash; p. waschede.
wassalle n. 1) a salutation used in drinking healths, offering toasts, 2) the practice or custom
of drinking healths; 3) used as an exclamation.
wate adj. rainy, wet.
wate v. see wete
wawe n. 1) misery, wretchedness; a state or condition of wretchedness, misery, or distress; 2)
torment, physical pain.
waxe n. 1) wax seal; 2) growth, increase in size by natural growth; stature.
waxe v. to coat sth. with wax; p. waxid.
waylayway n. sorrow, grief; woe, distress, affliction; singe of ~, to lament; thaire song was ~,
they expressed grief, dismay, or remorse.
wayne n. a two- or four-wheeled vehicle drawn by horses or by oxen, generally used for
conveyance of cargo or passengers, a cart, wagon.
wayte n. a military or civic functionary responsible for signaling the hour or sounding an
alarm by blowing a trumpet or ringing a bell; a palace retainer assigned to blow a
 trumpet at designated times, a herald.
wayte v. to direct one's gaze, look; gaze; 3sg. waytes.
wayttes n. pl. lookouts, watchmen, sentinels; military guards.
wayttying ger. 1) observation, surveillance; 2) an ambush, a trap; an evil machination, a
treachery design.
wedes n. pl. apparel, attire.
wee pron. we.
weite see wete
wekett n. a small door, usually set within a larger door or gate; a small doorway.
welde n. see walde
welde v. to reign, to rule.
wele adv. well; nowthir for ~ ne yete for woo: under no circumstances, for no reason.
welle v. of a liquid or semiliquid substance: well up, issue forth; flow.
wem, weme n. bodily injury or harm.
wen v. 1) to believe, opine, suppose; 2) to expect, anticipate, hope; 3sg. wenys; p. wende.
wen, wene n. withouten ~, undoubtedly, in truth (used parenthetically or as rime tag).
wende, wynde v. to go on foot, walk; to go; imp. wendes.
wende v. p. see wen
wendynge ger. 1) the act of changing direction; a turning; 2) ?a deceitful act, trick.
wenty see ga
wenys see wen
wepe v. to weep.
werde n. (?error for warde) the action of guarding, keeping watch; watchfulness, vigilance.
were n. misfortune, tribulation; woe, sorrow.
were n. a protector, guardian.
were, werre n. war.
were v. 1) to repel sb. or sth., keep away; 2) to offer resistance, resist; to provide defence; 3) to
mount or maintain a defence of a city, land, wall, etc. against actual or potential attack,
hold.
weren see bee
werke n. a discrete act performed or undertaken by someone, someone’s deed.
werken v. 1) to set (sth., a set of events) into motion, act to bring about; cause sth.; 2) to
commit (a wrongful or foolish act), perpetrate (evil, a crime), do (a harmful deed); 3) to
do construction work, erect a structure; work; 4) to exercise manual skill, work at a
craft or trade; 5) to weave (fabric); ppl. wroghte, wroghten.
werlde n. the world; gen. werldis.
werre see were
werre, were, werrey v. to wage war, go to war; fight, attack, do battle.
wrerryoure n. a warrior.
verse comp. adj. worse.
weary adj. afflicted by a sensation of physical fatigue, spent, weary; exhausted.
weryn see bee
wete, wiete, wite, wyete v. to know; to be certain; ~ (pou) wel, be assured; pr. 1sg. 1pl. 3sg,
wate; wote; p. wote, wiste, wyste, wistyn.
wethirwyns, whethirwynes n. pl. enemies, foes, adversaries.
weue v. to sever (a head or a helmet from the body); ppl. weuede.
wexe v. to increase in degree, intensify; become more fierce.
wha, whaa pron. who.
whare pron. where.
wharefa, wherefore adv. 1) for that reason, thus, therefore; 2) for what reason, on what
account, why.
whate, whatte, whatt pron. what.
whedir n. the weather.
whedir, whether adv. whether.
whedirwardes adv. in whatever direction, no matter which way, wherever.
whait see tornys
wheny v. to make various characteristic animal noises: of a horse: whinny; p. whenyed.
whereof adv. & conj. from which, out of which, of which; by means of which, whereby, with which.

whete n. cereal, especially wheat.

whethyn adv. from what place?, whence?

whi pron. why.

whilke pron. which.

whils adv. while.

whitte v. 1) to reproach sb., oneself; 2) to lay the blame on sb., oneself, or sth.; 3) hold accountable; denounce.

whyte v. to make (the hand) white (with silver), bribe (sb.); p. whityd.

wies, wiese n. 1) manner, fashion; 2) appearance, physical form; on alle ~, in every way, in every particular, in all respects, entirely.

wiete see wete

wighte adj. 1) brave, valiant; 2) powerful.

wighte n. a living creature, an animate being.

wilde fire n. a highly inflammable composition used in warfare; Greek fire; see furrou Gregis.

willen v. 1) to have desire for something; want something to occur, wish; 2) accede to an action, consent; 3) to give directions, direct; issue an order to sb.; 2sg. wilte; p. wolde.

winden v. 1) to wrap sth. in sth. else, enfold; 2) to lift or lower a bridge, etc. using some type of winch; p. wande.

winne v.1) to get up, arise; 2) to take sth. into one’s hand or under one’s control, to take possession of sth. by aggressive action, take forcefully; 3) to struggle against an opponent or opposing force, contend; engage in armed conflict; 4) to proceed, make one’s way; arrive at a place; manage to get inside a place; get access; p. wanne; ppl. wonn, wonnenn.

wirchippe n. honour, high respect, esteem; don ~, to do honor, show respect.

wirke v. 1) to work; 2) to act, behave, proceed; act; 3) to be painful, hurt, ache; cause pain.

wiste, wistyn, wite see wete

wipal adv. wholly, completely, fully; thoroughly, through and through.

within adv. ~ and withowte, in every place, indoors and out, everywhere, thoroughly, in every way possible.

withowte, withouten, withowttyn prep. without; withinne and (or) ~, in every place, everywhere, anywhere; ~ (ani) lesynge, without lying, in truth, truly.

withstande v. to oppose sb. or sth.; stand against.

witt n. a strategy, course of action, especially one showing wisdom or ingenuity.

wittirly adv. knowingly, truly, undoubtedly, certainly, indeed.

wode, wode n. wood, forest; see boughe ~

wode, wood adj. insane, mentally deranged, of unsound mind, out of one’s mind.

woghie n. affliction, distress, suffering; misery, wretchedness, grief, sadness.

wold, wolde see willen

wollewarde adj. wearing woolen clothing next to the skin, usually as an act of penance.

wunden v. to renounce; abandon; p. wande.

wondis n. pl. wounds.

wondre n. an extraordinary thing, a marvel, prodigy.

wone adj. accustomed, wont; ben ~.
wone n. abundance, plenty; full god ~, in great quantities, at great speed, swiftly; with great force, forcefully; strongly; excessively; repeatedly (the precise gloss is dependent on the context).

wonn v. to remain, stay; persist.

wonn, wonnen ppl. see winne

woo adj. sorrowful, grieved; miserable, wretched; also, distressed, afflicted.

wood see wode

worde n. word; at short wordes, in feue wordes, briefly, in a few words.

wose n. any fluid or liquid substance.

wote see wiete

wounder v. to wonder; p. woundirde.

woundrede see awoundre

wounn, wonnen ppl. see winne

woon n. 1) vengeance, revenge, retribution; 2) distress, misery, woe, trouble; 3) physical pain or suffering; harm, injury; 4) hostility, enmity; strife, discord.

wrang, wrange adj. wrong.

wrathe, wrethe, wrope adj. angry, irate, furious.

wreche adj. base, vile, contemptible; debased in character or condition.

wreke v. to avenge, punish, condemn sb.; ppl. wreken, wroken.

wrake n. 1) vengeance, revenge, retribution; 2) distress, misery, woe, trouble; 3) physical pain or suffering; harm, injury; 4) hostility, enmity; strife, discord.

wreke v. to avenge, punish, condemn sb.; ppl. wreken, wroken.

wrekenge ger. as n. revenge.

wrench n. a trick, wile; a deception; a stratagem.

wrethe n. anger, wrath; animosity, hostility.

wrethe v. to be or become angry, rage; be angry with sb.

wrightis n. pl. carpenters, builders.

writh n. anger, wrath; animosity, hostility; with ~, in a state of anger, angrily.

writt, writte n. something written; a letter, or other written communication.

wroghte, wroghten see werken

wrothe, wrope see wrathe

wyse, wysse adj. wise.

wyn n. joy, happiness, pleasure, delight; with ~, with joy, with pleasure; with enthusiasm, eagerly.

wyndas n. naut. apparatus for hoisting or hauling; a windlass or winch.

wyndose n. pl. windows.

wynke n. sleep; a period of sleep, a nap; also, a fit of drowsiness, a somnolent state.

wynke v. to sleep, doze; nod with sleepiness, be or become drowsy.

wynn, wynne see winne

wyre n. wire; golde ~, see golde.

ybette v. ppl. decorated, ornamented; covered with metal, especially with gold; see betyn gold.

ybounde ppl. tied; bound; gathered or held together.

ycaste see caste

ycomen see comen

ydighte see dignhe

ydo see don

yse see eghe
**ylade** *ppl.* of ships: loaded.

**lyke** *adv.* in like or similar manner, in the same way, without distinction, similarly, alike.

**ynde** *n.* the colour indigo.

**ynewe** *adv.* afresh, once again, anew.

**ynoghe, ynounge** see **anoghe**

**ynowe** see **anoghe**

**yschapede** see **schape**

**yschewed** see **schewe**

**ysee** see **see**

**ysruede** *ppl.* served (at a table).

**yslawe** see **sla**

**yslayne** see **sla**

**ystele** *ppl.* locked, made fast, secured.

**ystollyn** *ppl.* spirited away secretly, **awaye** ~.

**ywysse** see **iwisse**